The Society intends to complete, as soon as its funds will allow, the Reprints of its out-of-print Texts of the year 1896, and also of nos. 20 and 26. Dr. Otto Glanning has undertaken Seinte Marcerete; and Dr. Furnivall has Hali Meidenhod in type. As the cost of these Reprints, if they were not needed, would have been devoted to fresh Texts, the Reprints will be sent to all Members in lieu of such Texts. Though called ‘Reprints,’ these books are new editions, generally with valuable additions, a fact not noticed by a few careless receivers of them, who have complained that they already had the volumes. As the Society’s copies of the Facsimile of the Epinal MS. issued as an Extra Volume in 1883 are exhausted, Mr. J. H. Hessels, M.A., of St. John’s Coll., Cambridge, has kindly undertaken an edition of the MS. for the Society. This will be substituted for the Facsimile as an 1883 book, and will be also issued to all the present Members.

Feb. 1905. The Original-Series Texts for 1904 were I. No. 124, Twenty-six Political (t. Hen. V) and other Poems from the Digby MS. 192, &c., edited by Dr. J. Kail; 2. No. 125, Part I of the Medieval Records of a London City Church, edited by Mr. Henry Littlehales, who will pay for its setting, as he did for that of Part I as well as its 5 Facsimiles; 3. No. 129, Part I of the Englishing, ab. 1450 A.D., of the Deeds in the Registers of Godstow Priory and Osney Abbey, edited from the unique MSS. by the Rev. Andrew Clark, LL.D. These deeds throw much light on the early social state of England. Among the Texts for 1906 and 1907 will be Part III of the Alphabet of Tales, edited by Mrs. M. M. Banks, and Part I of the Coventry Lec Book, copied and edited for the Society by Miss M. Dormer Harris—helped by a contribution from the Common Council of the City,—and will be published by the Society as its contribution to our knowledge of the provincial city life of the 15th century. Future Texts will be Part III of Robert of Brunne’s Handlyng Swynne, edited by Dr. Furnivall, with a Glossary of Wm. of Wadington’s French words in his Manuel des Poesie, and comments on them, by Prof. Dickson-Brown; Part II of the Exeter Book— Anglo-Saxon Poems from the unique MS. in Exeter Cathedral—re-edited by Israel Gollancz, M.A.; Part II of Prof. Dr. Holthausen’s Vices and Virtues; Part II of Jacob’s Well, edited by Dr. Brandeis; the Alliterative Siege of Jerusalem, edited by the late Prof. Dr. E. Kolbing and Prof. Dr. Kaluza; an Introduction and Glossary to the Minor Poems of the Vernon MS., by H. Hartley, M.A.; Alain Chartier’s Quadrilogue, edited from the unique MS. Univ. Coll. Oxford MS. No. 85, by Mr. J. W. H. Atkins of Owen’s College; a Northern Verse Chronicle of England to 1327 A.D., in 42,000 lines, about 1420 A.D., edited by M. L. Perrin, B.A.; Prof. Bruce’s Introduction to The English Conquest of Ireland, Part II; and Dr. Furnivall’s edition of the Lichfield Gilds, which is all printed, and waits only for the Introduction, that Prof. E. C. K. Gonner has kindly undertaken to write for the book. Canon Wordsworth of Marlborough has given the Society a copy of the Leofric Canonical Rule, Latin and Anglo-Saxon, Parker MS. 191, C. C. C. Cambridge, and Prof. Napier will edit it, with a fragment of the English Capitula of Bp. Theodulf: it is now at press.

The Original-Series Texts for 1904 were I. the Macro Plays of Mankind, Wisdom, and the Castle of Perseverance, edited from Mr. Gurney’s MS. by Dr. Furnivall and A. W. Pollard, M.A.; 2. Lydgate’s DeGuilleville’s Pilgrimage of the Life of Man, Part III, edited by Miss Katharine Lecocq; and Dr. E. A. Kock’s edition of Lovelich’s Merlin from the unique MS. in Corpus Christi Coll., Cambridge, Part I. Those for 1966 and 1907 will be chosen from Lovelich’s History of the Holy Grail, Part IV, edited by Dr. Furnivall, for which Miss Dorothy Kempe has written a capital summary of the rise and development of the Legend of the Grail; Myre’s Festival, re-edited from the MSS. by Dr. Erbe; The Owi and Nightingale, two parallel Texts, edited by Mr. G. F. H. Sykes; Dr. M. Konrath’s re-edition of William of Shoreham’s Poems, Part II; Prof. Erdmann’s re-edition of Lydgate’s Siege of Thebes (issued also by the Chaucer Society); Miss Rickert’s re-edition of the romance of Euaire; Prof. I. Gollancz’s re-edition of two Alliterative Poems, Winner and Wader, &c., ab. 1460, lately issued for the Roxburghe Club; Dr. Norman Moore’s re-edition of The Book of the Foundation of St. Bartholomew’s Hospital, London, from the unique MS. ab. 1425, which gives an account of the Founder, Rahere, and the miraculous cures wrought at the Hospital; The Craft of Nombringe, with other of the earliest English Treatises on Arithmetic, edited by R. Steele, B.A.; and Miss Warren’s two-text edition of The Dance of Death from the Ellesmere and other MSS.
Dr. Eric of Berlin has undertaken to edit the prose Brut or Chronicle of Britain attributed to Sir John Mandeville, and printed by Caxton. He has already examined more than 100 English MSS. and several French ones, to get the best text, and find out its source.

These Extra-Series Texts ought to be completed by their Editors: the Second Part of the prose Romance of Mélusine—Introduction, with ten facsimiles of the best woodblocks of the old foreign black-letter editions, Glossary, &c., by A. K. Donald, B.A. (now in India); and a new edition of the famous Early-English Dictionary (English and Latin), Promptorium Paradisorum, from the Winchester MS., ab. 1440 a.d.: in this, the Editor, the Rev. A. L. Mayhew, M.A., will follow and print his MS. not only in its arrangement of nouns first, and verbs second, under every letter of the Alphabet, but also in its giving of the flexions of the words. The Society's edition will thus be the first modern one that really represents its original, a point on which Mr. Mayhew's insistence will meet with the sympathy of all our Members.

The Texts for the Extra Series in 1906 and 1907 will be chosen from The Three Kings' Sons, Part II, the Introduction &c. by Prof. Dr. Leon Kellner; Part II of The Chester Plays, re-edited from the MSS., with a full collation of the formerly missing Devonshire MS., by Mr. G. England and Dr. Matthews; the Parallel-Text of the only two MSS. of the Oak and Nightingale, edited by Mr. G. F. H. Sykes (at press); Prof. Jespersen's editions of John Hart's Orthographic (MS. 1551 a.d.; blackletter 1569), and Method to teach Reading, 1570; Deguillèville's Pilgrimage of the Society, in English prose, edited by Prof. Dr. L. Kellner. (For the three prose versions of The Pilgrimage of the Life of Man—two English, one French—an Editor is wanted.) Members are asked to realise the fact that the Society has now 50 years' work on its Lists,—at its present rate of production,—and that there is from 100 to 200 more years' work to come after that. The year 2000 will not see finished all the Texts that the Society ought to print. The need of more Members and money is pressing. Offers of help from willing Editors have continually to be declined because the Society has no funds to print their texts.

An urgent appeal is hereby made to Members to increase the list of Subscribers to the E. E. Text Society. It is nothing less than a scandal that the Hellenic Society should have nearly 1000 members, while the Early English Text Society has not 300!

Before his death in 1895, Mr. G. N. Currie was preparing an edition of the 15th and 16th century prose Versions of Guillaume de Deguillèville's Pilgrimage of the Life of Man, with the French prose version by Jean Gallopès, from Lord Aldenham's MS., he having generously promised to pay the extra cost of printing the French text, and engraving one or two of the illuminations in his MS. But Mr. Currie, when on his deathbed, charged a friend to burn all his MSS., which lay in a corner of his room, and unluckily all the E. E. T.'s copies of the Deguillèville prose versions were with them, and were burnt with them, so that the Society will be put to the cost of fresh copies, Mr. Currie having died in debt.

Guillaume de Deguillèville, monk of the Cistercian abbey of Chaalis, in the diocese of Senlis, wrote his first verse Pélerinaige de l'Homme in 1350-1 when he was 36. Twenty-five (or six) years after, in 1355, he revised his poem, and issued a second version of it, a revision of which was printed ab. 1500. Of the prose versions, one of the first version, 1350-1, a prose English, in MS. H. 1556, was edited by Mr. Aldis Wright for the Roxburghe Club in 1889, from MS. Ff. 5. 30 in the Cambridge University Library. Other copies of this prose are in the Hunterian Museum, Glasgow, Q. 2. 25; Sion College, London; and the Laud Collection in the Bodleian, no. 740. A copy in the Northern dialect is MS. G. 21, in St. John's Coll., Cambridge, and this is the MS. which will be edited for the E. E. Text Society. The Land MS. 740 was somewhat censored and modernised, in the 17th century, into MS. Ff. 6. 30, in the Cambridge University Library; "The Pilgrim or the Pilgrimage of Man in this World," copied by Will. Baspoole, whose copy "was verbatim written by Walter Parker, 1645, and from thence transcribed by G. G. 1649; and from thence by W. A. 1655." This last copy may have been read by, or its story reported to, Bunyan, and may have been the groundwork of his Pilgrim's Progress. It will be edited for the E. E. T. Soc., its text running under the earlier English, as in Mr. Heritage's edition of the Gesta Romanorum for the Society. In February 1646, Jean Gallopès—a clerk of Angers, afterwards chaplain to John, Duke of Bedford, Regent of France—turned Deguillèville's first verse Pélerinaige into a prose Pélerinaige de la vie humaine. By the kindness of Lord Aldenham, as above mentioned, Gallopès's French text will be printed opposite the early prose northern Englishing in the Society's edition.

The Second Version of Deguillèville's Pélerinaige de l'Homme, a.d. 1355 or -6, was englísted in verse by Lydgate in 1426. Of Lydgate's poem, the larger part is in the Cotton MS. Vitellius C. xiii (leaves 2-308). This MS. leaves out Chaucer's englísting of Deguillèville's 1 He was born about 1295. See Abbé Goulier's Bibliothèque française, Vol. IX, p. 73-4.—P. M. The Roxburghe Club printed the 1st version in 1893.
2 The Roxburghe Club's copy of this 2nd version was lent to Mr. Currie, and unluckily burnt too with his other MSS.
3 Those 2 MSS. have not yet been collated, but are believed to be of the same version.
4 Another MS. is in the Pepys Library.
5 According to Lord Aldenham's MS.
6 These were printed in France, late in the 15th or early in the 16th century.
ABC or Prayer to the Virgin, of which the successive stanzas start with A, B, C, and run all thro' the alphabet; and it has 2 main gaps, besides many small ones from the tops of leaves being burnt in the Cotton fire. All these gaps (save the ABC) have been filled up from the Stowe MS. 952 (which old John Stowe completed) and from the end of the other imperfect MS. Cotton, Tiberius A vii. Thanks to the diligence of the old Elizabethan tailor and manuscript-lover, a complete text of Lydgate's poem has been given. The British Museum French MSS. (Harleian 4399, and Additional 22,937 and 25,594) are all of the First Version. 

Besides his first Pelerinage de l'homme in its two versions, Deguilleville wrote a second, "de l'âme separate du corps," and a third, "de nostre seigneur Jesu." Of the second, a prose Englihing of 1413, The Pilgrimage of the Soule (with poems by Hoe cleve, already printed for the Society with that author's Regiment of Princes), exists in the Egerton MS. 615,4 at Hatfield, Cambridge (Univ. Kk. 1. 7, and Caius), Oxford (Univ. Coll. and Corpus), and in Caxton's edition of 1483. This version has 'somewhat of addicions' as Caxton says, and some shortenings too, as the maker of both, the first translator, tells us in the MSS. Caxton leaves out the earlier englihier's interesting Epilog in the Egerton MS. This prose englihing of the Soule will be edited for the Society by Prof. Dr. Leon Kellner after that of the Maen is finish, and will have Gallop's French opposite it, from Lord Aldenham's MS., as his gift to the Society. Of the Pilgrimage of Jesus, no englihing is known.

As to the MS. Anglo-Saxon Psalters, Dr. Hy. Sweet has edited the oldest MS., the Vespasian, in his Oldest English Texts for the Society, and Mr. Harsley has edited the latest, c. 1150, Eadwine's Canterbury Psalter. The other MSS., except the Paris one, being interlinear versions,—some of the Roman-Latin reduction, and some of the Gallican,—Prof. Logeman has prepared for press, a Parallel-Text edition of the first twelve Psalms, to start the complete work. He will do his best to get the Paris Psalter—tho' it is not an interlinear one—into this collective edition; but the additional matter, especially in the Verse-Psalms, is very difficult to manage. If the Paris text cannot be parallelised, it will form a separate volume. The Early English Psalters are all independent versions, and will follow separately in due course.

Through the good offices of the Examiners, some of the books for the Early-English Examinations of the University of London will be chosen from the Society's publications, the Committee having undertaken to supply such books to students at a large reduction in price. The net profits from these sales will be applied to the Society's Reprints.

Members are reminded that fresh Subscribers are always wanted, and that the Committee can at any time, on short notice, send to press an additional Thousand Pounds' worth of work.

The Subscribers to the Original Series must be prepared for the issue of the whole of the Early English Lives of Saints, sooner or later. The Society cannot leave out any of them, even though some are dull. The Sinners would doubtless be much more interesting. But in many Saints' Lives will be found valuable incidental details of our forefathers' social state, and all are worthwhile for the history of our language. The Lives may be lookt on as the religious romances or story-books of their period.

The Standard Collection of Saints' Lives in the Corpus and Ashmole MSS., the Harleian MS. 2277, &c. will repeat the Laud set, our No. 87, with additions, and in right order. (The foundation MS. (Laud 108) had to be printed first, to prevent quite unwieldy collations.) The Supplementary Lives from the Vernon and other MSS. will form one or two separate volumes.

Besides the Saints' Lives, Trevisa's englihing of Bartholomaeus de Proprietatibus Rerum, the medieval Cyclopedia of Science, &c., will be the Society's next big undertaking. Dr. L. von Fleischlacker will edit it. Prof. Napier of Oxford, wishing to have the whole of our MS. Anglo-Saxon in type, and accessible to students, will edit for the Society all the unprinted and other Anglo-Saxon Homilies which are not included in Thorpe's edition of Ælfric's prose. Dr. Morris's of the Blickling Homilies, and Prof. Skeat's of Ælfric's Metrical Homilies. The late Prof. Kolbing left complete his text, for the Society, of the Aneren Riene, from the best MS., with collations of the other four, and this will be edited for the Society by Dr. Thümmler. Mr. Harvey means to prepare an edition of the three MSS. of the Earliest English Metrical Psalter, one of which was edited by the late Mr. Stevenson for the Surtees Society.

Members of the Society will learn with pleasure that its example has been followed, not only by the Old French Text Society which has done such admirable work under its founders Prof. Paul Meyer and Gaston Paris, but also by the Early Russian Text Society, which was set on foot in 1877, and has since issued many excellent editions of old MS. Chronicles, &c. Members will also note with pleasure the annexation of large tracts of our Early English territory by the important German contingent, the late Professors Zupitza and Kolbing, the

---

15th cent., containing only the Vie humaine.
16th cent., containing all the 3 Pilgrimages, the 3rd being Jesus Christ's.
14th cent., containing the Vie humaine and the 2nd Pilgrimage, de l'Ame: both incomplete.
Ab. 1490, 106 leaves (leaf 1 of text wanting), with illuminations of nice little devils—red, green, tawny, &c., and damned souls, fires, angels &c.
5 Of these, Mr. Harsley is preparing a new edition, with collations of all the MSS. Many copies of Thorpe's book, not issued by the Ælfric Society, are still in stock. Of the Vercelli Homilies, the Society has bought the copy made by Prof. G. Lattanzi.
living Hausknecht, Einenkel, Haenisch, Kaluza, Hupe, Adam, Holthausen, Schick, Herzfeld, Brandes, Sieper, Konrath, Wilfling, &c. Scandinavia has also sent us Prof. Erdmann and Dr. E. A. Kock; Holland, Prof. H. Logeman, who is now working in Belgium; France, Prof. Paul Meyer—with Gaston Paris as adviser (alas, now dead)—Italy, Prof. Lattanz; Austria, Dr. von Fleischacker; while America is represented by the late Prof. Child, by Dr. Mary Noyes Colvin, Miss Rickert, Prof. Mead, McKnight, Triggs, Perrin, Craig, &c. The sympathy, the ready help, which the Society's work has calmed forth from the Continent and the United States, have been among the pleasantest experiences of the Society's life, a real aid and cheer amid all troubles and discouragements. All our Members are grateful for it, and recognize that the bond their work has woven between them and the lovers of language and antiquity across the seas is one of the most welcome results of the Society's efforts.

ORIGINAL SERIES.

1. Early English Alliterative Poems, ab. 1360 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 16s. 1864
2. Arthur, ab. 1440, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 4s. 1865
3. Launder on the Dewtie of Kyng, &c., ab. 1556, ed. F. Hall, D.C.L. 4s. 1865
4. Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight, ab. 1360, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s. 1865
5. Hume's Orthographie and Conqructive of the Britan Tongue, ab. 1617, ed. H. B. Wheatley. 4s. 1865
7. Genesis & Exodus, ab. 1250, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 8s. 1866
8. Morte Arthure, ab. 1440, ed. F. Brock. 7s. 1866
9. Thynne on Speght's ed. of Chaucer, a.D. 1599, ed. Dr. G. Kingsley and Dr. F. J. Furnivall. 10s. 1866
10. Merlin, ab. 1440, Part II., ed. H. B. Wheatley. 2s. 6d. 1866
11. Lyndsay's Monarche, &c., ab. 1552, Part I., ed. J. Small, M.A. 3s. 1866
12. Wright's Chaste Wife, ab. 1462, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 1s. 1866
15. Political, Religious, and Love Poems, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 7s. 6d. 1866
16. The Book of Quinte Essence, ab. 1460-70, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 1s. 1866
17. Parallel Extracts from 45 MSS. of Piers the Plowman, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 1s. 1866
19. Lyndsay's Monarche, Part II., ed. J. Small, M.A. 3s. 6d. 1866
21. Merlin, Part II., ed. H. B. Wheatley. 4s. 1866
22. Partenay or Lusignen, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 6s. 1866
23. Dan Michel's Ayenbite of Inwy, 1540, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s. 6d. 1867
24. Hymns to the Virgin and Christ; the Parliament of Devils, &c., ab. 1430, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 3s. 1867
25. The Statons of ROME, the Pilgrims' Sea-voyage, with Clene Maydenhod, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 1s. 1867
27. Lewes's Manulpus Vocabulum, a yning Dictionary, 1570, ed. H. B. Wheatley. 12s. 1868
29. Old English Homilies (ab. 1200-30 A.D.), Series I, Part I. Edited by Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 7s. 1868
30. Pierce the Ploughmans Crede, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 2s. 1868
31. Myce's Duties of a Parish Priest, in Verse, ab. 1420 A.D., ed. E. Peacock. 4s. 1868
32. Early English Meals and Manners: the Boke of Nourture of John Russel, the Bokes of Keruyege, Curtasey, and Demeanor, the Babes Book, Urbanitatis, &c., ed. F. J. Furnivall. 12s. 1868
33. The Knight de la Tour Landry, ab. 1440 A.D. A Book for Daughters, ed. T. Wright, M.A. [Reprinting.
34. Old English Homilies (before 1300 A.D.), Series I, Part II., ed. R. Morris, LL.D. 8s. [Reprinting.
35. Lyndsay's Works, Part III.: The Historic and Testament of Squyer Moldrum, ed. F. Hall. 2s. 1869
37. Sir David Lyndsay's Works, Part IV., Ane Satyre of the Three Estaitis. Ed. F. Hall, D.C.L. 4s. 1869
40. English Gilds, their Statutes and Customs, 1389 A.D. Ed. Toulmin Smith and Lucy T. Smith, with an Essay on Gilds and Trades-Union, by Dr. L. Brentano. 21s. 1870
41. William Lauder's Minor Poems. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 3s. 1870
42. Bernardus De Cara Rei Familiaria, Early Scottish Prophecies, &c., ed. J. R. Lumby, M.A. 2s. 1870
43. Ratiu Raving, and other Moral and Religious Pieces. Ed. J. R. Lumby, M.A. 3s. 1870
46. Legends of the Holy Rood. Symbols of the Passion and Cross Poems, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s. 1871
47. Sir David Lyndsay's Works, Part V., ed. Dr. J. A. H. Murray. 3s. 1871
48. The Timo's Whistle, and other Poems, by R. C., ed. by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 6s. 1872
49. An Old English Miscellany, containing a Bestiary, Kentish Sermons, Proverbs of Alfred, and Religious Poems of the 15th cent., ed. from the MSS. by the Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. 10s. 1872
50. King Alfred's West-Saxon Version of Gregory's Pastoral Care, ed. I. Sweet, M.A. Part II. 10s.
51. The Life of St Juliana, 2 versions, A.D. 1290, with translations; ed. T. O. Cookayne & E. Brock. 2s. 1872
53. Old-English Homilies, Series II., and three Hymns to the Virgin and God, 13th-century, with the music to two of them, in old and modern notation; ed. Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. 8s. 1873
55. Generydes, a Romance, ab. 1440 A.D., ed. W. Aldis Wright, M.A. Part I. 3s.
56. The Gest Hystorials of the Destruction of Troy, in alliterative verse; ed. by D. Donaldson, Esq., and the late Rev. G. A. Panton. Part II. 10s. 6d. 1874
57. The Early English Version of the "Cursor Mundi"; in four texts, ed. by the Rev. R. Morris, M.A., LL.D. Part I, with 2 photolithographic facsimiles. 10s. 6d.
59. The "Cursor Mundi," in four texts, ed. by Rev. R. Morris. Part II. 15s. 1875
60. Meditations on the Sover of our Lorde (by Robert of Brunne), edited by J. M. Cowper. 2s. 6d. 1877
61. The Romance and Prophecies of Thomas of Erceldoune, from 5 MSS.; ed. Dr. J. A. H. Murray. 10s. 6d.
63. The Blitcking Homilies, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part II. 7s.
64. Francis Thynne's Emblemves and Epigrams, A.D. 1600, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 7s.
65. Be Domes Dange (Bede's De Die Judiceti), &c., ed. J. R. Lumbly, B.D. 2s.
66. The "Cursor Mundi," in four texts, ed. by Rev. R. Morris. Part IV, with 2 autotypes. 10s.
69. Adam Davie's 5 Dreams about Edward II., &c., ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 5s.
70. Generydes, a Romance, ed. W. Aldis Wright, M.A. Part II. 4s.
71. The Lay Folks Mass-Book, four texts, ed. Rev. Canon Simms. 25s. 1879
73. The Blitcking Homilies, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part III. 10s. 1880
74. English Works of Wyclif, hitherto unprinted, ed. F. D. Matthew, Esq. 20s.
77. Beowulf, the unique MS., autotyped and transilluminated, edited by Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D. 25s. 1882
78. The Early-English Life of St. Katharine and its Latin Original, ed. Dr. Einenkel. 12s. 1884
82. Additional Analogies to 'The Wright's Chaste Wife,' No. 12, by W. A. Clouston. 1s. 1886
83. The Three Kings of Cologne. 2 English Texts, and 1 Latin, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 17s.
84. The Prose Lives of Women Saints, ab. 1610 A.D., ed. from the unique MS. by Dr. C. Horstmann. 12s.
85. Early English Verse Lives of Saints (earliest version), Land MS. 10s. 6d. by Dr. C. Horstmann. 20s. 1887
86. Hy. Bradshaw's Life of St. Werburgh (Fynson, 1521), ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 10s.
87. Vices and Virtues, from the unique MS., ab. 1200 A.D., ed. Dr. F. Hollhausen. Part I. 8s. 1888
88. Anglo-Saxon and Latin Rule of St. Benet, interlinear Glosses, ed. Dr. H. Legeman. 12s.
89. Two Fifteenth-Century Cookery-Books, ed. 1450-1455, edited by Mr. T. Austin. 10s.
91. Defender's Liber Scutillum, ed. from the MSS. by Ernest Rhodes, B.A. 12s.
93. The Old-English version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History, re-ed. by Dr. Thomas Miller. Part I. § 1. 18s.
94. The Old-English version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History, re-ed. by Dr. Thomas Miller. Pt. I, § 2. 18s. 1891
95. The Earliest English Prose Psalter, edited from its 2 MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buehring. Part I. 15s.
96. Minor Poems of the Vernon MS., Part I., ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 20s. 1892
97. Cursor Mundi. Part VI. Preface, Notes, and Glossary, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s.
98. Capgrave's Life of St. Katharine, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann, with Forewords by Dr. Furnivall. 20s.
99. Cursor Mundi. Part VII. Essay on the MSS., their Dialects, &c., by Dr. H. Hope. 10s.
100. Lanfranc's Cirurgie, ab. 1400 A.D., ed. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker. Part I. 20s. 1894
101. The Legend of the Cross, from a 12th century MS., &c., ed. Prof. A. S. Napier, M.A., Ph.D. 7s. 6d.
102. The Exeter Book (Anglo-Saxon Poems), re-edited from the unique MS. by I. Gollance, M.A. Part I. 20s. 1895
104. R. Mayson's Fire of Love and Mending of Life (Hampole), 1434, 1435, ed. Rev. R. Harvey, M.A. 15s. 1896
105. The English Conquest of Ireland, A.D. 1166-1185, 2 Texts, 1425, 1440, Pt. I., ed. Dr. Furnivall. 15s.
106. Child-Marriages and -Divorces, Truethpilnes, &c. Chester Depositions, 1561-6, ed. Dr. Furnivall. 20s. 1897
108. The Old-English Version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History, ed. Dr. T. Miller. Part II. § 1. 15s. 1898
111. Queen Elizabeth's Engishings of Boethius. Plutarch &c., &c., ed. Miss C. Pemberton. 15s.
EXTRA SERIES.

The Publications for 1867-1901 (one guinea each year) are:


II. Early English Pronunciation with special Reference to Shakspere and Chaucer, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part I. 10s.

III. Caxton's Book of Cartesye, in Three Versions. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 5s.

IV. Haveolek the Dane, Re-edited by the Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 10s.

V. Chaucer's Boethius. Edited from the two best MSSs by Rev. Dr. R. Morris 12s.

VI. Cheoveller Assigne. Re-edited from the unique MSS by Lord Aldenham, M.A. 3s.

VII. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part II. 10s.

VIII. Queen Elizabeths Achademy, &c. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. Essays on early Italian and German Books of Courtesy, by W. M. Rossetti and Dr. E. Oswald. 13s.


XII. England in Henry VIII. S time: a Dialogue between Cardinal Pole & Lusset, by Thom. Starkey, Chaplain to Henry VIII. Ed. J. M. Cowper. Part II. 12s. (Part I is No. XXXII, 1878, 8s.)

XIII. A Supplication of the Beggars, by Simon Fish, 1528-9 a.d., ed. F. J. Furnivall; with A Supplication to our Moste Sovereigne Lorde: A Supplication of the Poor Commons; and The Decaye of England by the Great Multitude of Sheep, ed. by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 6s.

XIV. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Part III. 10s.


XXII. Henry Briklow's Complaynt of Roderyck Mors (ab 1542); and The Lamentation of a Christian against the City of London, made by Roderigo Mors, a.d. 1545. Ed. J. M. Cowper. 9s.

XXIII. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part IV. 10s.


XXVII. Bp. Fisher's English Works (died 1555), ed. by Prof. J. E. B. Mayor, Prof. J. E. B. Mayor, Part I, the Text. 16s.


XXXI. The Alliterative Romance of Alexander and Dindimus, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 6s.

XXXII. Starkey's "Englond in Henry VIII's time." Pt. I. Starkey's Life and Letters, ed. S. J. Hertagg. 8s.

XXXIII. Gesta Romanorum (englisht ab 1440), ed. S. J. Hertagg. B.A. 12s.

XXXIV. The Charlemagne Romances:—1. Sir Ferumbras, from Ashm. MS. 33, ed. S. J. Hertagg. 12s.

XXXV. The Charlemagne Romances:—2. The Sege off Melayne, Sir Outewll. &c., ed. S. J. Hertagg. 12s.


XXXVII. Charlemagne Romances:—4. Lyf of Charles the Grete, Pt. II, ed. S. J. Hertagg. 16s.

XXXVIII. Charlemagne Romances:—5. The Sowdowne of Babylone, ed. Dr. Hansknecht. 15s.


XLIV. Charlemagne Romances:—10. The Four Sons of Aymon, ed. Miss Octavia Richardson. Pt. I. 15s. 1884
XLV. Charlemagne Romances:—11. The Four Sons of Aymon, ed. Miss O. Richardson. Pt. II. 20s. 1885
XLVI. Sir Bevis of Hamton, from the Auchieneleck and other MSS., ed. Prof. E. Kölling, Ph.D. Part I. 10s. 1886
XLVIII. Sir Bevis of Hamton, ed. Prof. E. Kölling, Ph.D. Part II. 10s. 1887
XLIX. Guy of Warwick, 5 texts (Auchieneleck and Cains MSS.), Pt. II., ed. Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D. 15s. 1887
LI. Torrent of Portyngale, from the unique MS. in the Chetham Library, ed. E. Adam, Ph.D. 10s. 1888
LII. Bullein’s Dialogue against the Feuer Pestilence, 1578 (ed. 1, 1564). Ed. M. & A. H. Bullen. 10s. 1889
LIII. Vicary’s Anatomy of the Body of Man, 1588, ed. 1577, ed. F. J. & Percy Furnivall. Part I. 15s. 1889
LIV. Caxton’s Englishing of Alain Chartier’s Canus, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall & Prof. P. Meyer. 5s. 1890
LV. Barbour’s Bruce, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. Part IV. 5s. 1890
LV. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Pt. v., the present English Dialects. 25s. 1891
LVI. Caxton’s Eneydos, ed. by the late Dr. Hermann Deinling. Part I. 15s. 1891
LXIII. Thomas a Kempis’ De Imitatione Christi, English ed., 1449, & 1562, ed. Prof. J. K. Ingram. 15s. 1893
LXIV. Caxton’s Godfrey of Bolyne, or Last Siege of Jerusalem, 1481, ed. Dr. Mary N. Colvin. 15s. 1894
LX. Lydgate’s Temple of Glass, re-edited from the MSS. by Dr. J. Schick. 15s. 1894
LXI. Hoceville’s Minor Poems, I., from the Philippius and Durham MSS., ed. F. J. Furnivall, Ph.D. 15s. 1895
LXII. The Chester Plays, re-edited from the MSS. by the late Dr. Hermann Deinling. Part I. 15s. 1895
LXIII. Thomas a Kempis’ De Imitatione Christi, English ed., 1449, & 1562, ed. Prof. J. K. Ingram. 15s. 1896
LXIV. Caxton’s Godfrey of Bolyne, or Last Siege of Jerusalem, 1481, ed. Dr. Mary N. Colvin. 15s. 1896
LX. Lydgate’s Temple of Glass, re-edited from the MSS. by Dr. J. Schick. 15s. 1897
LXVI. Lydgate’s and Burgh’s Sacris of Philosophy, ed. R. Steele, B.A. 15s. 1898
LXVII. The Three Kings’ Son, a Romance, ed. Miss Mary G. Colvin. 15s. 1899
LXVIII. Melusine, the prose Romance, ab. 1500, Part I, the Text, ed. A. K. Donald. 20s. 1899
LXIX. Lydgate’s Assembly of the Gods, ed. Prof. Oscar L. Triggs, M.A., Ph.D. 15s. 1899
LXX. The Digby Plays, edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall. 15s. 1899
LXXI. The Towneley Plays, ed. Geo. England and A. W. Pollard, M.A. 15s. 1899
LXXII. Hoceville’s Regement of Princes, 1411-12, and 14 Poems, edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall. 15s. 1899
LXXIII. Hoceville’s Minor Poems, II., from the Ashburnham MS., ed. I. Gollance, M.A. [At Press].
LXXIV. Secreta Secretorum, 3 prose Englishings, by Jas. Yonge, 1428, ed. R. Steele, B.A. Part I. 20s. 1899
LXXV. Speculum Gulonias de Warwyk, edited by Miss G. L. Morrill, M.A., Ph.D. 10s. 1899
LXXVI. George Ashby’s Poems, &c., ed. Miss Mary Batson. 15s. 1900
LXXVII. Lydgate’s DeGuivelville’s Pilgrimage of the Life of Man, 1426, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall. Part I. 10s. 1900
LXXVIII. The Life and Death of Mary Magdalen, by T. Robinson, c. 1420, ed. Dr. H. O. Sommer. 5s. 1900
LXXIX. Caxton’s Dialogues, English and French, c. 1455, ed. Henry Bradley, M.A. 10s. 1900
LXXX. Lydgate’s Two Nightingale Poems, ed. Dr. Otto Gunning. 5s. 1900
LXXXI. Gower’s Confessio Amantis, edited by G. C. Macanly, M.A. Vol. I. 15s. 1900
LXXXII. Gower’s Confessio Amantis, edited by G. C. Macanly, M.A. Vol. II. 15s. 1901
LXXXIII. Lydgate’s DeGuivelville’s Pilgrimage of the Life of Man, 1426, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall. Part II. 10s. 1901
LXXXIV. Lydgate’s Reason and Sensuality, edited by Dr. E. Sieper. Part I. 5s. 1902
LXXXV. Alexander Scott’s Poems, 1568, from the unique Edinburgh MS., ed. A. K. Donald, B.A. 10s. 1902
LXXXVI. William of Shoreham’s Poems, re-ed. from the unique MS. by Dr. M. Konrath. Part I. 10s. 1902
LXXXVII. Two Coventry Corpus-Christi Plays, re-edited by Hardin Craig, M.A. 10s. 1903
LXXXVIII. Le Morte Arthur, re-edited from the Harleian MS. 2252 by Prof. Bruce, Ph.D. 15s. 1903
LXXXIX. Lydgate’s Reason and Sensuality, edited by Dr. E. Sieper. Part II. 15s. 1903
XC. English Fragments from Latin Medieval Service-Books, ed. by Hy. Littlehales. 5s. 1903
XCI. The Macro Plays, from Mr. Gurney’s unique MS., ed. Dr. Furnivall and A. W. Pollard, M.A. 10s. 1904
XCII. Lydgate’s DeGuivelville’s Pilgrimage of the Life of Man, Part III., ed. Miss Locock. 10s. 1904
XCIII. Lovelich’s Romance of Merlin, from the unique MS., ed. Dr. E. A. Koch. Part I. 10s. 1905
XCIV. Lovelich’s Romance of Merlin, from the unique MS., ed. Dr. E. A. Koch. Part II. 10s. 1905
XCV. William of Shoreham’s Poems, re-ed. from the unique MS. by Dr. M. Konrath. Part II. [At Press].

EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY TEXTS PREPARING.

Besides the Texts named as at press on p. 12 of the Cover of the Early English Text Society’s last Books, the following Texts are also slowly preparing for the Society:—

ORIGINAL SERIES.
The Earliest English Prose Psalter, ed. Dr. K. D. Buellring. Part II.
The Earliest English Verse Psalter, 3 texts, ed. Rev. R. Harvey, M.A.
Anglo-Saxon Poems, from the Vercelli MS., re-edited by Prof. I. Gollance, M.A.
Anglo-Saxon Glosses to Latin Prayers and Hymns, edited by Dr. F. Holtihansen.
All the Anglo-Saxon Homilies and Lives of Saints not accessible in English editions, including those of the Vercelli MS., &c., edited by Prof. Napier, M.A., Ph.D.
The Anglo-Saxon Psalms; all the iiSS. in Parallel Texts, ed. Dr. H. Loseman and F. Harsley, B.A.
Beowulf, a critical Text, &c., edited by a Pupil of the late Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D.
The Seven Sages, in the Northern dialect, from a Cotton MS., edited by Dr. Squires.

The Master of the Game, a Book of Huntynge for Hen. V. when Prince of Wales. (Editor wanted.)

Alfred’s Rule of Nuns, &c., edited from the Vernon MS., by the Rev. Canon H. R. Branley, M.A.

Early English Verse Lives of Saints, Standard Collection, from the Harl. MS. (Editor wanted.)

A Lapidary, from Lord Tollemache’s MS., &c., edited by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.

Early English Deeds and Documents, from unique MSS., ed. Dr. Lorenz Morsbach.

Gilbert Banastre’s Poems, and other Boccaccio englishings, ed. by Prof. Dr. Max Förster.

Lanfranc’s Girurgie, ab. 1400 A.D., ed. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker, Part II.

William of Nassington’s Mirror of Life, from Jn. of Waldby, edited by J. A. Herbert, M.A.

More Early English Wills from the Probate Registry at Somerset House. (Editor wanted.)

Early Lincoln Wills and Documents from the Bishops’ Registers, &c., edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall.


Early Norwich Wills, edited by Walter Rye and F. J. Furnivall.

The Cartularies of Osney Abbey and Godstow Nunney, englishis ab. 1460, ed. Rev. A. Clark, M.A.

Early Lyrical Poems from the Harl. MS. 2255, re-edited by Prof. Hall Griffin, M.A.

Alliterative Prophecies, edited from the MSS. by Prof. Braund, Ph. D.

Miscellaneous Alliterative Poems, edited from the MSS. by Dr. L. Morsbach.

Bird and Beast Poems, a collection from MSS., edited by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.

Seire Morl, &c., from the Lichfield MS. 16, ed. Mrs. L. Grindon, LL.A., and Miss Florence Gilbert.

Nicholas Trivet’s French Chronicle, from Sir A. Acland-Hood’s unique MS., ed. by Miss Mary Bateson.

Early English Homilies in Harl. 2276 &c., c. 1400, ed. J. friedlander.

Extracts from the Registers of Boughton, ed. Hy. Littlehales, Esq.

The Diary of Prior Moor of Worcester, a.d. 1318-25, from the unique MS., ed. Henry Littlehales, Esq.

The Pore Caiif, edited from its MSS. by Mr. Peake.

Thomas Berkeley’s engliths Vegetius on the Art of War, MS. 30 Magd. Coll. Oxf., ed. L. C. Wharton, M.A.


Early Middle-English Charters, edited by Dr. W. Huesser.

EXTRA SERIES.


Sir Tristrem, from the unique AUCHINLECK MS., edited by George F. Black.

John of Arderne’s Surgery, c. 1425, ed. J. F. Payne, M.D.

De Guillelville’s Pilgrimage of the Sowle, edited by Prof. Dr. Leon Kellner.


A Compilation of Surgery, ed. of H. De Mandeville and Lanfranc, A.D. 1392, ed. Dr. J. F. Payne.

William Staunton’s St. Patrick’s Purgatory, &c., ed. Mr. G. P. Krapp, U.S.A.

Trevisa’s Bartholomaeus de Proprietatibus Rerum, re-edited by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.

Bullein’s Dialogue against the Feuer Pestilence, 1564, 1573,1578. Ed. A. H. and M. BULLEN. Part II.

The Romance of Boctus and Sidrac, edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.

The Romance of Claridus, and Sir Amadas, re-edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.

Sir Degrevant, edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. Luic.

Robert of Brunne’s Chronicle of England, from the Inner Temple MS., ed. by Prof. W. E. Mead, Ph.D.

Maundevile’s Voisage and Travaile, re-edited from the Cotton MS. Titus C. 16, &c., by Miss M. Bateson.

Awowanyge of Arthur, re-edited from the unique Ireland MS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.

Guy of Warwick, Copland’s version, edited by a pupil of the late Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D.

Awedelay’s Poems, re-edited from the unique MS. Donce 302, by Prof. Dr. E. Walfing.


Caxton’s Dictes and Sayengis of Philosophers, 1477, with Lord Tollemache’s MS. version, ed. S. L. Butler, Esq.

Caxton’s Book of the Ordre of Chyvalry, collated with Louth’s Scotch copy. (Editor wanted.)

Lydgate’s Court of Sapience, ed. by Dr. Borsdorf. Lydgate’s Dance of Death, ed. Miss Florence Warren.

Lydgate’s Lyfe of our Lady, ed. by Prof. Georg Fiedler, Ph.D.

Lydgate’s Life of St. Edmund, edited from the MSS. by Dr. Axel Erdmann.

Lydgate’s Triumph Poems, edited by Dr. E. Slaper. Lydgate’s Minor Poems, edited by Dr. Otto Glanuing.

Richard Coer de Lion, re-edited from Harl. MS. 4690, by Prof. Hausknecht, Ph.D.

The Romance of Athelstan, re-edited by a pupil of the late Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D.


Mulcaster’s Positions 1581, and Elementarie 1582, ed. Dr. Th. Klaeber, Dresden.

Walton’s verse Beuthus de Consolatione, edited by Mark H. Liddell, U.S.A.

Sir Landewal and Sir Launfal, edited by Dr. Zimmermann.

Rolland’s Seven Sages, the Scottish version of 1560, edited by George F. Black.

The Subscription to the Society, which constitutes membership, is £1 ls. a year for the ORIGINAL SERIES, and £1 ls. for the EXTRA SERIES, due in advance on the 1st of January, and should be paid by Cheque, Postal Order, or Money-Order, post ‘Union Bank of London,’ to the Hon. Secretary, W. A. Dzalzel, Esq., 67, Victoria Road, Finsbury Park, London, N. Members who want their Texts posted to them must add to their prepaid Subscriptions 1s. for the Original Series, and 1s. for the Extra Series, yearly. The Society’s Texts are also sold separately at the prices put after them in the List; but Members can get back Texts at one-third less than the List-prices by sending the cash for them in advance to the Hon. Secretary.
Merlin.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series, No. xciii.

1904.
Merlin,

A MIDDLE-ENGLISH METRICAL VERSION
OF A FRENCH ROMANCE,

by

HERRY LOVELICH,
SKINNER AND CITIZEN OF LONDON (AB. 1450 A.D.),

EDITED
FROM THE UNIQUE MS. 80 IN CORPUS CHRISTI COLLEGE,
CAMBRIDGE,
WITH AN INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND GLOSSARIES,

by

DR. ERNST A. KOCK.

PART I.

LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LIMITED,
DRYDEN HOUSE, 43, GERRARD STREET, SOHO, W.
1904.
Extra Series, xciii.

Richard Clay & Sons, Limited, London and Bungay.
**Merlin**,  
**BY LOUELICH THE SKINNER.**  
*(MS. 80 in Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.)*

Now gyneth the devel to wrath then him sore  
(as after scholen he herkene & here wel more),  
whanne that our lord to helle wente,  
and took owt Adam with good entente,  
and also Eve, and ek othere mo,  
*pat with* him he likede forto han tho.  
and whanne pe develis behelden this,  
mocche drede and herveille they hadden, j-wis.  
So, as Aftyrward longe be-Felle,  
to-gederis they conseilled, the develis, ful snelle,  
and token hem to-gederis Jn parlement,  
the maister-develis, be on assent,  
and seiden: "what mester man Js he, this,  
that doth vs here al this distres?  
we mown not azens him maken defens,  
whanne he is owht Jn owre presens,  
and bynemeth vs that we scholde hane,  
and for hym non thing mowen we kepen save.  
For we supposede, ful verrayly,  
that non man scholde be born of wommans body,  
that alle owre they weren be Ryht,  
but he hem benemeth vs be his nyht.  
Sey, how was this 30man bore,  
be whom owre Ryht js thus forlore?"  
thane anwerede anothir devel,  
and, as him thawhte, he anwerede wel:  
"we havën herd sein be prophecye  
that god js erythe here Scholde dye  
For to save the Symneris here,  
that of Adam and Eve come js fere.

30. *and Eve* added above the line.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Merlin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chap. I.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[leaf 88 c]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The devils, angry on account of Christ rescuing Adam and his race from Hell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[leaf 88 d]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold a council.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[leaf 88 e]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They wonder who he is,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[leaf 88 f]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that thus deprives them of their supposed right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[leaf 88 g]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One of the devils says that the same is the Son of God, who died to save sinners.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[leaf 88 h]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[leaf 88 i]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Consultation of devils. [CH. I.

and who, in all trials and tribulations, Anon wenten we thanne hem to prove, and evere weren they stedfast in goddis love, and the more torment we diden hem do, Evere the ferthere they weren vs fro, So that Evere in here moste peyne To hem apered he, in certeygne, and hem comforted so wondirly wel, that owre tormentes greved hem neuer a del, and enere in here moste distresse he hem deliuerede to Sikirnesse.”

comforts and helps His faithful ones. Thus talkydden they pere al in fere of things that befallen were— "That thus from vs hath he taken away things that we not kepne ne may, wel knowen 3e alle here wel everychon that in water he doth hem waschen anon, in þe Name of the Fadir and sone & holi gost, whiche that ben of nyhtes most,

through baptism and also hem anoynteth with oynement, where-thorwh owre powere js al jschent, So that oure part of hem, Jt is don, Tyl that owre Servauntes they becom.

and anointment, and thus owre powere he doth away, and so don his mynestres everyday, that in Erthe he hath left here; they don vs ful often wel mochel dere.

He and His ministers For they, oure Servauntes the[y] ben be Ryht, ȝit ouer hem han they so gret nyht, that, and they welen oure Servise forsake and onliche to Jesu thanne hem take, alle oure powere, than Js it j-don, and thus we lesen hem Everychon.

and annihilate their power over mankind. Mochie goodnesse schewed he for man-kynde, that in this world he wold hym bynde

Born of a woman, of a wommans body to ben j-bore, to Saven mankynde, that was forlore.

32. they, c corrected from y. 47. MS. þe; similarly l. 97 and often; sometimes also þadir, soþe, and the like. 57. MS. the ben. 62. MS. Evere þon with the (c)r-mark twice over ey.
and whanne that he j-boren was,
we hym assaieden ju every plas,
as moche as was ju owre powere,
and neuer gyty ne fownden we hym ju non manere,
jn hym of our wrekes neuer Ryht nowht,
For al that evere we to hym wrowht,
But that he wolde deyen to saven man,
For ju him hadde we non powere than.
Ful mochel cherte hadde he to man,
that so mochel peyne suffred for him than,
and hym forto wynnen ageyn,
and from vs hem be-reven, ju certeyn.
Ful mochel sorwe to vs he wrowhte
thorwgh mankynde, that he bowhte."

thanne anon Spoken they Jn fere
of Swiche thinges as creved hem there,
of hem that proclaimed the tydyng
Ferst ju the erthe of his comeng:
"and whanne we ony tormentes scholde hem do,
anon he deLyverede hem vs Fro.
Therfore wolde we weten ful fayn
The beste to done, Jn certayn,
how that ju the erthe a child to have
that the peple wolde aftyr crave.
For he scholde haun alle connenge
of thyng pat js past and that is comenge,
and encense the peple to oure lore,
as he dyde that was pere be-fore,
To tellen hem of thinges pat hadde be
and befalle scholden, ful Sikerle.
So scholde he pe peple to vs drawe,
For of hym they wolden ben Ryht fawe."
thanne seiden they amonges hem everichon
that swich a child, and they hadden on,
wel mochel he scholde hem profyte
and torne the peple to here delyte,
For ful wel beleved scholde he be
For his prophecyes, ful Sikerle.

94. for, f corrected from b. 95. MS. Y fholde be.
One devil declares he can make women conceive, and they form a plan accordingly, in foolish ignorance of God's wise intentions. The devil repairs who promises to help him. This woman has a rich husband; they have three daughters and one son. thanne stirte there forth a schrewe anon, and seide amonges hem everichon: "J haue power Seed forto Sowe 
 in the erthe on wommen bothe hye & lowe, and j haue on redy at myn assent, that wil Fulfillen myn talent." So concenyted they that this ilke schrewe jnto erthe scholde gon anon that threwe  
 Forto Fulfillen that ilke dede, of wheche alle the schrewes token here rede. Now, grete Foles weren they everychon, that amonges hem cowde not knowen on how that god knew wel alle thyng, bothe gynneng, midwardis, and endyng! thus departyd they from here conseylle this werk to be-gynne, with-owten faille. thanne he that seide that he hadde powere on women jn erthe to Engendren there, he taryd there non lengere thanne, but cam jnto erthe to this wommane whiche womman that dyde hym Servise. with hire he anon mette jn prevy gyse, and anon he tempted hire so, that anon sche concenyted hym to, and graunted hym, al that sche cowde ope myhte, To don him Servysse bothe day & Nyhte. and hire lord was a worthy man, & moche more good hadde thanne J telle kan.  
 This Riche man hadde moche of worldly good, more thane ony man tho vndistood, of Bestes and of other Richesse, of kamailles, of jewelis, & of ope worthynesse. This worthy man hadde dowhtren thre, The Fa[y]rest Wommen that myhte be, and a sone, that scholde ben his eyr, bothe a gentilmanly child and a fayr; and alle he hadde be this woman, that pe devil so mochel part hadde of than.  
 133. MS. ffrest.
Temptation of a rich man.

thanne this devel forgat non thing,
that Rowhte not of maunes begyleng,
and axede of this womman anon
how that Best he myhte don
hire lord to hane to his partye,
hym forto tellen he preyde hire hye.
sche answerede: "With non thing so sone, j-wys,
as only be wraththe, with-owten wys;
For ryht lyhtleche he wile wroth be,
as j the telle now ful sikerle;
and þer-for wraththe thou myht him sone
with the lest thing that thou wilt done."
thanne wente forth this cursed schrwe anone,
and slowgh his bestes alle thus sone,
a gret partye of hem jn a nyht.
and on the morwen, whanne it was lyht,
the pastour aspide that moreygne,
and to his lord he wente, ful pleyne,
and told hym of that aventure,
how his bestes deiden, J 3ow ensure.
and whanne that the goode lord herde this,
Ful wondirly wroth he was, j-wys,
and axede of the pastour tho
what Skile his bestes deyden so.
the pastour answerede him ageyn:
"Sire, j ne can not weten, jn certein!"
So belefte he stille alle that day.
and whanne the devel this knew & say,
that for so lytel he wolde wroth be,
thanne was he joyful, wel Sekirle,
and thowhte more harm hym to do,
be wraththe þe sonnere to drawen hym to.
So that he * the nexte Nyht
jnto his stable, j Sey 3ow nyht,
and there ten of his hors slowgh he,
the beste that weren jn that contre.

144. The devil asks her for the best means of insinaring her husband.
148. She answers: " Make him angry!"
152. The devil then kills some of his cattle;
156. and when the herd brings the news in the morning,
160. the man is wonderfully wroth.
164. Encouraged by the success,
168. the devil kills ten of the man's horses;
172. 155. MS. anoûc.
175. MS. agræt; similarly l. 212 (aplæwcher), and frequently.
175. The verb (wente?) is missing; cf. ll. 155, 209, and footnote to l. 1719.
and the man angrily exclaims:

"May the devil take the lot!"

Whanne that the devil herde him so seyn, thanne was he bothe joyful & fayn, 188
and thowhte to greven him moche more thanne that he dyde ony tyme before. For he made the good man thanne so wroth, that eche mannes compeny ye was hym loth. thanne wiste anon the devel ful wel that in him hadde he part a gret del, and that wel jnowgh he mylhte go jnto what partye him lykedo tho. Thanne cam the devel to his sone & his eyr, That was bothe so gentyl & Fayr; Vppon A xyht, As he in his bed lay, the devel him strangelede, the sothe to say ; and vppon the norwen hym fond ded his owne fadir Jn that same sted. thanne was he Ryht a sorweful man, For that non Recowr ne knew he than, Sethen that his faire sone he hadde lost so, thanne jnto disperaunce fyl he tho. and whanne the devel vndirstod al this, thanne was he joyful, with-owten mis. anon thanne wente he to his wyf, that began al this wo and stryf; jnto an hygh soler he dyde hire go, and abowtes a plawnehe a rope caste tho, and Sette a thing thanne vndir hire feet, & he Rope abowtes hire nekke teydde askect; thanne voided sche anon hire stondying, but so thike cursed womman þere hyre-self heng. whanne the husbonde beheld al this,
that his wyf thus ded was, j-wys, 220
and also his sone Jn Swich manere,
thanne was he of wondyr hev y chere,
that there for sorwe he deyde anon,
and thus alle thre, thanne weren they gon. Lo, thus the devel doth be hem alle
that jn his Servise ony thing don falle.

thanne caste the cursedede schrewed a wyle
how jat he myhte his thre dowhtres begyle;
and wel he wyste, Jt myhte not be
but thorwgh som man of his afynyte.
So was there a bacheler Jn the town,
that folwed his werkis bothe vpe and down;
and hym to this place he dyde propyne
these thre faire maidenis forto engyne;
and so ofte thedeyr he gan to gon,
that thussone he hadde ouercomen the ton.
and whanne be hire he hadde don folye,
the devel anon it schowede openlye,
and disclawndred it al the contre,
the more schame to hem jat it scholde be.
and jn thyke tyme was tho the lawe,
that ho so dyde avowtrye, scholde be slawe
and with stones j-browht to the ded,
For that was the lawe Jn that sted;
and thus with Stoneng scholden they ben schent,
but jif sche were commwe to alle mennes entent.

Thanne thus this womman was taken anon,
and the bereft man himself dies with grief.
and anon was browht to-forn the justice
there forto Resceyven hire jewyse.
so that of hire they hadden pyte,
Swich maner of jewyse be hire to se,
For that hire fadyr was so worthy a man,
and Jn so schort tyme was mischevyd than.
but Natheles nedis ded moste sche be,
and thanne thus acordid they, Sykerle,

220. Jn, J corrected from s; so added above the line.
The surviving daughters advised by a hermit. [CH. I.

A holy hermit, on hearing of all this, visits the grieving sisters,
and inquires about their disasters.

The girls say that God seems to hate them.

The hermit rebukes them,
casts the blame on the devil,
and exhorts them to a good life.

The elder sister likes his lore.

So that for love of hire kynrede
be Nyhtes tyme hire stone to dede.

thanne jn that contre was there a good man,
that of alle these mervilles herde than,
and to the tweyne sostren gan he gon
hem forto cowseellen with anon.

and there anon he spak hem tylle,
and axede how this misadventure befille—

"Of 30wre fadyr And modyr Ju Eere,
of 30wre brothir and joure Soster dere?"

"We nete Neuere, Sire, Ju certeyn,
but 3if that god vs hate, ful pleyn,
and this torment Saffreth vs to haue;
we knownen non othyr, so god vs saue!"

thanne seide this goodman to hem tho:
"Forsothe, 3e seyn mys bothe two,
For god hattede nevère creature,
but Js misplayd, J 30w esnure,
whanne ouy Synnere doth him hate
Owthir for ony thing with him debate.
For weteth ful wel, as j 30w telle,
that is the werk of the devel of helle;
and that joure sostre thus Js ded,
Syker it is be the develys red."

"Sire, so god now be owre helpyng,
we knewen neuere of this thyng."

"thanne kepe 3e 30w from jille werkyng,
and caste 30w to plese now hevene kyng;
for jille werk bryngeth a man to evele ende
and jn-to synne & synneres schende;
and he that hym wol not kepen from jille werkyng,
to ille ende it bringeth hym at his deyeng."

"thanne thus prechid hem this good man,
how that they scholden bope plesen an serven god than.
So that the eldste Soster of hem bothe
his teching liked wel, forsothe,
and seide that sche wolde potten al hire peyne
hys doctryne to kepen, Ju certeyne.

286. deyeng, the first e corrected from y.
CH. I.  \textit{The younger visited by a bad woman.} 9

thannew seide this goodman to hem tho:
"3if that 3e welen thus aftyr me do,
3e scholen ben bothe my loves dere
and my dowhtren jn gool, bothe jn fere.
and 3if 3e hauen xede of ony thyng
owper of ony maner of cowneseyelyng,
Swich helpe and cowneil as j kan do,
J schal it for 3ow don evere mo.
and therefore abasche 3ow ryht nowht,
but stedfastly beleveith jn hym that 3ow bowht;
and that 3e comen often-tymes to me,
for fer from 3ow j ne schal not be,"
thus hem cow[ne]eillede this holy man,
and forth his weye anon wente he than.
whanne that the devel wiste of this,
moche sorwe he made, with-owten mys,
and wiste wel bat Engyned myhten they not be
but be som woman, ful Sykerle.
So was there on, as j vndirstonde,
that jn his Servise hadde dwellid longe;
and anon it putte jn hire herte,
that to thike maidenis 3he scholde gon ful smerte.
and so sche dide anon, this wikked woman,
wente forto cownseillen with hem than,
and took the 3onest Soster on Syde,
and anon with hire cownseilled that tyde,
hire axeng anon how 3he did fare,
and what maner thing hire soster dyde thare.
"Loueth sche not 3ow wondirly wel?"
"3is, and Ellis were it a3ens resown & Skyl;
but that sche is other while hevy
For this mysaventure, trewely,
The wheche jn Schort tyme to vs is befall
of oure fadyr & modir and Frendis alle,
So that with hire is non manere of chere,
Nethir to me ne to non o3er ellis where,
but doth al aftyr a goodmannes techyng,
First temptation of the younger sister. [CH. I.

That here faste be-sydes is his dwellyng,
So that nothyng sche Wyle do,
but 3if he only consente to.”
“A,” quod this olde Bawde tho,

“thou knowest of mochet sorwe & wo,
and neuere of joye schalt you knowe, trewlye,
as longe as thou art in hire compenye.
A, my leve dowghter so dere,

3if that thou knewe what mannes compenye were,
thou wost neuere resten ne dwelle,

Tyl mannes Feleschepe 3e comen vntylle.

For better at este Seker ben we,

Jn mannes compenye whanue that we be,
although we haue but on almesse of Bred,
thanne 3e with al youre good 3n youre sted.

Fy of joye of ony womanne,
but 3if sche haue joye other compenye of man! my Fayre dowhter, to how this j seye,
for that 3e knowen not mannes compenye.

and were 3e why J thus to 30w Seye?
30wre Soster is Eldere than 3e, trewlye,
and taketh this here as hire owne good,
and the lasse setteoth be 30w, be the nood.

So that the joye of 30ure fayre Body
J$s ful clene j-lost, j sey 30w trewely.”

thanne seide this damysele to hire tho :
“how scholde j this thing thus do
that 3e to me speken offe pleynly,
whazne that my Soster was ded therby?”

“jn the name of god,” quod this Bawde thanne,

“3owre Sostyr wrowhte as a folisch wommaue! 360
but 3if 3e wile werken aftyr me
and to my conseille trosten, sekerle,
3e scholde neuere comen to FORE justice,
and 3it haue 3oure delytes Jn alle wyse.”

“A,” quod this damysele, “how scholde j do?
that j ne myhte 3ow speken more vnto!
For j ne dar not for my soster here

366. After speken another 3ow was added above the line, but erased again.
Her second temptation.

Nethir to 30w Speke ne make non chere.

Goth 3e now hens, tyl that efitt sone

that we mown Speke to-gederys alone!”

whazme that the devel herde hire so seyn,

Thanne was the schrewe jn joye, ful pleyn,

and wiste wel be hire answerwyng

that sche scholde hoppen vpon hys rynge.

whazme this womman from thens was past,

this damysele bethowghte hire atte last

often-tymes of hire wordis, pleyn,

that prevyly betwenes hem gonne they seyn.

and whazme the devil vndirstod openly

that to-eyderis scholde they spoken prevyly,

thanne sette he this maydenis herte on fyre

afthy this womman more to desire;

that so ferforth, as j 3ow seye,

atte laste sche beheld hire fayre Bodye,

and to hire-Self thus gan sche talke,

alone as sche jn hire chambre gan walke:

“Ful trewly me this good womman tolde

that this Faire Body lost ben Scholde!”

Thanne aftyr hire sche sente vpon a day,

and thus to hire anon gan sche say:

“Certes, ful trewe now j it fynde,

that my soster to me Js vnkynde.”

“that knew j, damysele, tho ful wel,

lyk as j 3ow tolde everydel,

and lasse be 3ow wile sche sette,

For sche fareth Every Day bette and bette.

for sche lyveth as sche liketh Best,

whiche is to 3ow nethir ese ne rest,

and 3e ben ordeygned for mannes kende,

and therto ben 3e bothe good and hende.”

thanne seide this damysele anon agayn:

“that joye wolde j hauen fulfayn;

3if that j wiste not To ben ded,

J scholde concenten to 3oure red.”
Fall of the younger sister.

"J sey 3ow, damysele, with-owten dwere, and 3e don as dyde 3oue soster dere, ded moste 3e thanne Nellynges be, but and 3e welen werken afthy me."

"leve dame, thanne how Scholde J do my lust to haue, and they not me Slo?"
thanne this Bawde answerid hire agayn:
"J schal 3ow tellen, Ju certayn:
3e scholen 3ow maken as 3e waren wroth, and that 3owre sostres compenye is 3ow loth, and perfore graunteth to alle men buxom to be and to leden 3oure lyf ju lechere;
thanne hath there powere non justyse 3ow forto putten to non jewyse, and thus al 3oue lust scholen 3e haue and from alle peryles to ben Save.
3it thanne myhhte there comen som good man, that for 3oure eytage wolde wedden [3ow] than."

Thanne thus behyhte 3e hire forto don, and from hire Soster sche stal anon, and bond hire a comown womman to be, be cownseil of that womman, Sikerle.

Ful mochel joye made the devel thanne, whanne he hadde thus geten this womman. and whanne the eldest Sostyr knew of this, that thus hire Soster hadde don anys, anon wente sche to this good man tho, that to-fore tymes here creaunce tawhte hem so, with sory herte and weeping chere.
Anon this goodman axede what hire were, and of hire hadde ful gret pyte, & to hire thanne anon Seyde he: "blesse the ju the Name of the Trenite, and telle me now what eylleth the."
"ha, Sire," sche Seide, "J am ful wo! my soster from me js now a-go,
and is become a common woman.

ful wo for hire am j now than!"

whanne that this goodman herde of this,

Ful sory he was and wroth, j-wys,

and seide: “The devel xyl not belynne,
tyl that he hane 3ow alle ju his cynne,
but 3if that god now be thy wardeyn,
J seye 3ow, damysele, jn certeyn.”

“Now, leve Sire, how scholde j do
That Fals thef to kepen me fro?”

thanne seide to hire this good man anon:

“J schal 3ow telle how 3e schole don.
3if that thou wylt don aftyr me,
he ne schal neuere deceyven the.”

“Now certes,” quod this damysele a-geyn,
“aftyr 3ow wyl j don, Jn certeyn,
what so evere 3e bydde me do,
whethir it torne me to wele oper wo.”

“belevest j ou not on fadyr & sone & holigost,
thre persones and on god of myhtes most,
and that crist amonges vs cam here
For mænes sowle, that he bowhte so dere,
and alle synneris to saven also
That his comawndement Wolden do,
and beleven as holy chirche,
and as good cristen folk to wirche?”

thanne answerid this damysele ageyn:

“J wil beleven as 3e wyle seyn;
and as wisly as on god j be-leve,
so from alle tormentis he mot me meve!”

“thanne more over J charge the
that ju non wyse wroth that thou be;
For that is on of the moste thing
wherthorwgh the devel doth his werkyng.
and loke thow love god over alle thyng
and thy Neyghbour with-owten grochcheng.
& so be that governaunce
pou myht the kepe from alle mischawnse.

451. Erasures after hire and good; the M came out of the muddle apparently with four downstrokes.
Holy life of the elder sister.

keep herself free from all guilt;

and loke that cowpace nevere thou be a3ens thy god Jn non manere degre,

but that thou plese hym utterly

and alle the seintes of hevene generally,

That loven god and his Servise;

loke thow hem love jn alle wyse.

she must bless herself in rising and before going to bed,

and loke, eche tyme that thou dost ryse,

that thou pe blesse be ony wyse,

and also that thow blesse the evry nyht,

Er that thou jn thy Bed lye down nyht,

jn the name of the Fadyr and sone and pe holygost,

which that is on god and of myhtes most.

and with that loke thow make a cros on the,

Jn memorye that he deyde vppon the tre

vs for to beyen from the peynes of helle.

loke thon do thus as j the telle!

and of that enemy hau e thow neure non drede,

where eure thow be Jn ony stede;

and where so evere thow lye on nyht,

Loke be ony weyes that thou have lyht,

For there as lyht is, he ne wyl not be,

For lyht hateth he most, ful Sekerle!"

Thus this holy man tawhte this mayde,

that gret drede hadde, as j have 3ow sayde,

lest that the devel hire Scholde be-gyle.

thus wente sche hom with-june a while

Jn ful beleve ful stedfastly

and to hire neygbours ful mek and lowly;

also evere hire god hadde sche jn mynde,

that so to god and to pe peple was sche good & kende.

the goode men and the goode Wyves of that conte

often to that mayden comen, ful Sekerle,

and thus to hire thanne gommen they saye:

"Jt Nis non wondyr thowgh 3e han Fraye

of the torment that is 3ow befalle

of 3oure Fadyr & modyr and frendis alle,

whiche that 3owre brothir and Sostren were.

The girl goes home, and follows the hermit's instructions.

She is reminded, by her neighbours, of her family troubles.

148. He squeezed in afterwards. 488. E through correction.
495. of added above the line. 505. MS. fulbelove.
She is visited by the younger.

here misadventure, it is to 3ow gret dere, 516
but that 3e take now som good cownsaille;
For ful niche 3e ben and of ful gret availle,
and worthy 3e ben of erytage, 520
that Som man that is of hygh parage,
that fulsayn he wolde be
3ow wedden to wyve, ful Sykerle.”
thaune seide this maiden to hem anon nyht:
“me govern & kepe god, þat is most of myht,
and in his Servise me governe & kepe
at ale tymes, whether j wake ober slepe!”
and thus twynye 3er lyvede sche fully,
That of hire power nevere hadde the fals enemy,
Ne he myhte nevere Jn non Degre 524
hire Fynden Jn non adversite.
And whanne he Sawhe that he ne myhte
that mayden engynen be day ne nyhte, 528
Nether maken hire to forgeten jn non degre
that the goodman tawht hire, ful Sykerle
(For wroth wolde sche ben jn non mauere
Ne lyhtles, where so that evere sche were),
 thanne to hire Soster he wente anon,
and to this goode mayden dyde hire to gon
vppon a saturday, whanne it was eve
(tyl sche was forthe, he Nolde not leve),
hire Soster Jn anger Foro brynge,
þat he on hire myhte werken his engynenge.
So that hire Soster thider went
& with hire many knaves, verament. 532
thanne seide this maiden jn this manere:
“A, leeve Soster, what do þe here,
þe forto comen jn Swich degre,
and with 3ow to bryngen swich compeyne?
Jt schal me maken blame to have,
and þat Nedeth me not, so god me saue!”

517. cownsaille, a corrected from e; cf. the footnotes to ll. 2051, 3281, 5707, 5855, etc.
522-524. wedden, fyde, cover chiefly blotted.
528. nevere added above the line.
530. adversite, d corrected from v. 547. þe on erasure.
548. 3ow added above the line.
She is accused, by her, of forbidden intercourse with the hermit, and bar hire good soster on haunde vppon that jn folye sche lovede that holy man. “and jf that the peple it wiste, Sekerlye, anon wolden they the distroye!”

flies into a rage, has a tussle with the disturbers,

ruses into her chamber, locks her door,

flings herself on the bed,

and forgets, in her emotion and grief,

all about blessing and light.

She is spak this cursed damysele ageyn:

“thow lyvest moche wers than j, jn certeyn!”

and whanze this maide herde hire so seyn, be bothe scholdres sche took hire, ful pleyn, and wolde han put hire owt at the 3ate, but that hire knaes wold hire not late, but setten hand on this good maiden anon, and hire to-beten bothe bak an bon, Tyl atte laste sche brak hem fro, & jnto hire chambre sche gan to go, and schitte the dore faste hire vppon, and so there-jnne dwelde al alon.

& non more peple with hire gan dwelle but a man and a maide, as j 3ow telle, and for hem nolden they not Spare, but diden this goode womman moche care. this maiden alone jn hire chambre was, and ful mochel mone made jn that plas, and wept and sorwede mochel of the nyht, so that jn hire clothes sche leide hire down ryht.

Anon as this enemy this gan asyne, that sche was so angry vttirlye, thanne made he bothe joye and game, whiche torned this maiden to mochel blame. Thanne of gret deol this maide hire thawte, So that of hire-self but litel sche rowhte.

sehe hire remembrid of Fadyr and modyr bothe, and of hire brother and Sostren, forsothe, and of that grete aventure, So was sche Sorweful, J 3ow ensure.

and thus jn morneng and wrathie sche fyl jn slepe, and al the goodmannes lore sche foryethe: bothe of hire blessyng and ek of lyht sche clene foryat that jlke nyht.

564. MS. his for hir'; cf. the footnotes to ll. 147, 320, 948, 4648. 582, 586. of, lore added above the line.
She is overcome by the devil.

Thanne was the devel ful of joye, and thowhte fulsone hire to anoye.

"Now," quod the devel, "tyme it is, for sche hath forgeten hire lore, j-wys, bothe mynde of god and of Hire maister Also, therefore it is hygh tyme that j now go. Now myhten we wel don owre dever, owre Man to putten with-junen hire her."

Anon this devel that hadde Swich myht with womme[n] To compenyen bothe day & Nyht, To this goode maiden wente he anon, and redy hym made that dede to don, and on hire he engendred, as j 30w telle, a mervelous child ful schortly and snelle. Anon as that maiden conceyved was, the devel hym wente owt of that plas; and that mayden tho awook anon, whanne that the devel hadde thus j-don.

And evene Jn hire awakyng this goodman hadde sche Jn remembryng, and took vp hire hond and gan hire to blesse, & seide : "O seinte Marye, what is thisse? and what maner of thing Js me betyd, Sethen that j leide me yppon my bed?

Me thenkyth, apeyred welsore am J, Sethen j me here leyde, ful trewly.

Wherfore, blessid lady, j preye to the, So that to thy sone thow preye for me, that on me he wolde haven pyte and from the fals enemy defenden me."

Thanne, whanne sche hadde don this dede, vpe sche ros owt of that stede, and wende han fownden that Jehe wyht that hire so hadde deveyed thike nyht.

So that to hire chamberdore sche wente anon, and it fond fast schet & not vndon, lyk as sche hadde schet yt to-fore, and non wyht ne fond sche thore.
She goes to the hermit.

and the room empty, thanne furthere to serche cam ju hire thowht, but al that avayllede thanne hire ryht nowht. thanne cam jt ju hire mynde anon that the enemy hire hadde ouergon, thanne ful mochel sorwe gan sche make, whanne that verrayly sche gan wake. sche besowhte god with humble chere that ju this world neuere schamed sche were. and whanne it was the lyht of day, the devel hire Soster thanne ladde away, At daybreak, when the intruders have left, For sche hadde wel j-sped hire arende, whefore thedyr he gan hire sende. she unlocks her door, sends for two women, and whanne that hire Sostir thens was gon, andt of hire chambr sche cam anon, and cleped hire Servaunt ful hastelye, and bad hym faste to hire hye. thanne thus to hym tho gan sche telle: "Go jnto towne, and not ne dwelle, thanne thanne hem cowde sche maken non chere, and bidde swiche two womanen to me hye, but evene with hem took the ryhte weye To hire confessour, alle thre, ju feye. thanne to hym tho gan sche telle: "Go jnto towne, and not ne dwelle, andt of hire chambr sche cam anon, and cleped hire Servaunt ful hastelye, and bad hym faste to hire hye. thanne thus to hym tho gan sche telle: "Go jnto towne, and not ne dwelle, and bidde swiche two womanen to me hye, & that they to me comen hastelye!"

Anon as they comen bothe ju fere, thanne hem cowde sche maken non chere, but evene with hem took the ryhte weye To hire confessour, alle thre, ju feye. and whanne hire confessour hire gan beholde, Jn his herte he merveillede manie folde, and to that womanne thanne gan he to say: "hyderward the aryveth som gret affray." thanne seide this woman to hym aye: "Sire, j trouse that it may ful wel be, For toforn tymes han ze me told, thowgh a body Jn synne were neuer so bold, and he be schreven, and repente also,

628.
632.
636.
640.
644.
648.
652.
656.
660.
643. tho over struck-out thanne.
650. thre, r corrected from e.
and don the penaunce that longeth pert, his Synnes forgovven to hym scholen be; Thus tolde 3e me, Sire, ful Sykerle. Sire, J hawe Synned and that ryht sore, as J haue told 3ow ferst before, For the enemy hath deceyved me, as J schal 3ow tellen, ful seker[1]e. Jt happed, my Soster cam unto, and me rowhte bothe care & wo, and how that sche wraththed me ful jille, tyl that to my chamble j wente vtynyle al ful wroth and of hevy chere, and faste my dore J schette there. and for the grete wraththe that j am june, me forto bessen J gan to blyrne, and for3at what J scholde do, which aftyr torned me to mochel wo. and whaune that J of my Sleepe awook, and remembraunce to me took, thanne fond J that defowlyd J was, and my maydenhot awye Jn that plas. thanne serched j my chamble al abowte, and non wyht ne fond, with-owten dowte, ne wiste ho it hadde me do, From that owr 3it hide-ty. And, Sire, al thus engyned am J, wherfore to God and 3ow J crye mercy, that thowgh my body J-tormentyd be, 3it that my sowle be not lost Jn non degre.” thanne herkened this good man everydel al that to hym sche scyde, ful wel, but he beleved it non thyng, For, Sekyr, he held it for a lesing, For he ne herde nevere to-fore of swich a thing speken, sethen he was bore. thanne answerid hire this good man agayn: “Ful of the devel thou art, ful pleyn, and the devel js fer with-Jnne the.

664 for those who repent and do penance,
668 she acknowledgess that she has sinned
672 by being angry
676 and forgetful,
680 which has led to her being disgraced
688 by an unknown creature.
692 The hermit, incredulous,
Penance enjoined for her disobedience

and says that confession and penance are not for liars.

how scholdest thou thanne confessed be
other ony penaunce of me take,
whanne swiche lesinges þou dost me make?
owther how scholde j ȝeven the ony penaunce,
whanne j knowe wel thou makest variawnce?
For jn that degre was neuer womman juto this day
From hire hire maydenhot taken away,
but jif she knew, Felte, other Sye,
ho that it hadde don, Sekerlye.
and thow makest me to beleve
Swich a thing as thow myht not preve.”
Thanne answerid this womman ageyn
and seide: “So god haué part on me, pleyyn,
and also kepe my body from torment,
as trowthe j haué Seid 30w, verament.”

Thanne answerid this good man to hire tho:
“And it be lyk as thou seyst me vnto,
thow schalt wel knownen, and j Jn fere,
which come fulliche the ende of þe þere.
But thou hast broken thin obedyence,
and azens me don ful gret defense,
And broken my comauïdement
that J comanded the, verament;
Wherfore penaunce thou schalt haue
Jn amendement thy Sowle to Save:
Every fryday thow most Faste
and to the taken but on repaste.
& Jn manere that thou luxvre hast do,
which that myn herte Nyl not concenten therto,
how scholde [j] þanne ony penaunce leyn on the,
but that j knew the certeynte?
For it were to lytel, al dayes of thy lyve
þif that algates J scholde the Schryve.”
thanne seide this woman to hym ageyn:
“what evere ȝe me chargen, Jn certeyn,
J schal it don with ful good wyle,
what so evere to me ȝe putten vntylle.”
thanne seide this goodman to hire ageyn:

731. MS. scholde þáne.
"To goddis mercy thou takest the, pleyn, and axest cowneley of holy chirche, only goddis comandement forto wirche, and hym to worschepen with al thy myht that aysens the devel for the gan fyht, and bowht the with his precious blood, and for the deye vppon the rood, thow seist that thou art ful of repentinaunce and forsakest alle Lecherie, with-owten variaunce, and that thou neuere dedist anys, but as jn thy sleepe behapped the this wherfrom non wyht may hem defende, but that zif god the bettere grace hem sende?" and vppon this, chast sche gan hire swere, and to him seide, zif it so were, To-Forn god hire borwgh to be, that sche be not dampned jn non degre— "For this Synne that j haue do, owt of this world whanne j go fro."

Thus hire penauence Resceyved sche thanne, that vppon hire leyde this good manne, and resceyved it ful humblye, as sche that for hire Synnes was sory. tho this goodman hire blessed anon, and forward with hire he gan to gon. "and algates in the love of jesu crist loke thou evere more that thou tryst!" So that he ladde hire forth be the hond To the halie water stope, J vadirstond, and dide hire drynken per-offen, pat he myhte se, a gret drawht jn the Name of the Trenite, and holy water caste vppon hire there, and bad hire not forgeten jn non manere— "al that j have now comanded the, loke thou it do, where so thou be. and whanne thou hast ony Nede of me, here schalt thou me fynden, ful Sykerle!"

744. MS. forthe; thus often. 746. deylene, the first e through correction.
She is censured by her friends,

and 3it he enjoyned hire more over tho alle þe good dedis that she scholde do, and thus he be-tawht hire to god almyht, and hom 3en sche wente anou nyht.

Thanne, whanne the devel aspide al this, and that his pray he scholde thus mis, thanne was the cursed schrewe wondir wroth, that he to hire was thanne so loth.

So dwelled sche there two monthes oþer thre, and ful holy lif ladde, ful Sekerle, Tyl that sche gan to barynysche ryht faste, And Was Aspied Atte laste, where-offen hire Frendes angred ful sore, and so dyde sche 3it wel more, & seyde: "so god hane mercy on me, J ne kan not weten how it scholde be."

Thanne seiden hire Frendis to hire tho: "why, han there so many men knowen 3ow so, that 3e ne weten hos Þt is? now mafe, thanne this goth amys!"

"thanne preye j god that j neuere deliuered he, 3if j knew evere of manes compeyne, othyr evere wyste of this aventure, how to me Þt is comen, j 3ow ensure."

thanne hire Frendis blessid hem echon, and to hire they seyden anon:
"this thyng ne myhte nevere be be 3ow ne be non womman, Sikirle. but on him, j trowe, 3e troste, that he 3ow excusen moste; But, Jn Sekyr, Þt wele not be, werfore vs sore Repentyth, Sekyrle; For also sone as the jvge it wot, anon, with-owten Faille, deyen 3e mot."

Thanne, whanne this woman herde this, Ful sore dismayed Þt was, J-wys, and seyde: "So god of my Sowle hane mercy, 778. MS. that sehe hadde don 3e scholde do.
J neuere ne knew ne sawh that mannes body
that me hath don this jlake dede,
as jn alle my werkis so god me sped!"

thanne wenten hire frendis from hire anon,
and for a fool these wommen helden hire echon.
"Now certes, fowle loste is 3oure bewte,
that thus han jt lost jn Swiche degre!"

whanne that sche herde these wommen thus speke,
anon to hire confessour gan sche to reke,
and tolde hym of this wommans answere,
as that to hire sche hadde Seyde Ere.
anon as this good man Sawh that sche
Qwyk with childe was, certeinle,
and mochel he merveilled of this chaunc,
& anon axede hire of that penaunce—
"that to-forn tyme the joyued j for this,
hast thow it don?" "3e, leve Sire, j-wis,
that haue j don, Syre, with-owten faille!"

"but cam he evere sethen, the owht to asaille;
owntir trespacepest pou eneve ony more,
but only that thou hast told me be-fore,
Ne neuere but onys jt cam to the?"
"No, so me good helpe, Sire, Sikerle!"

Whanne that the goodman herde hire thus telle
Of this aventure, how it befelle,
anon a book he took to hym tho,
and jps mater jn Scripture he let thrynne do.
"Now be 3e Sewr what j schal say:
anon as this child is born, jn fay,
of on thing j schal knowe, certeyn:
3if pat ony tale 3e han tolde me jn veyn.
and 3if to me 3e han mad a leaying,
Ful Siker 3e ben of 3oure hyndryng;
and 3if to me the sothe han 3e told,
Jt schal 3ow helpen many fold,
For thanne ful Syker mown 3e ben
that 3e scholen nethir deth felen ne sen.
but 3it gret drede 3e mown hauen a throwe,
For anon as the justice doth it knowe,
She is seized

Anon they Welen to-gederys conseyle, and 30w for-jyngen for here avaylle, and seyn that ded scholen 3e be,
For that 3e han trespaced Jn avowtre. 856
but that anon as they han 30w take, doth me to wetene for 30wre owne sake, and j schal comen to 30w jn Socowrenge, and god schal ben thanne 3oure helpinge;
For, Seker, 3e mown ben pert o bold, and it be as 3e han me told."
thanne sayde this good man to hire tho:
"Azen to 3oure hows hom that 3e go, and loke, good lif that 3e lede,
For to a good ende jt wyle 30w spede."
and thus wente sche hom ageyn,
as j 30w sey nowe, Jn certeyn, 868
and ful benyagnely lyvede there,
Thyl that it cam the justice to the ere.
thanne comen [they] into the Same town onliche for this Wommannes enhesown,
and per sche was taken and to-forn hem browht, to weten zif sche cowde excusen hire owht.
Whanne sche was taken and jn preson don, sche sent aftyr this good man anon,
and he thedyr cam jn ful gret hye, as faste as [he] myht gon, Sekerlye; and thider cam he Neuere so sone, that to-foren the justice sche was browht anone. 880
The justices clepeden this good man, and tolden hym how that sche seide than, For sche hem tolde, ful certeynly, that sche knew nevere of mannes company.
"Trowe 3e," quod the justice thanne, "that this myhte ben with-owten feleschepe of manne?"
thanne seide to hem this goodman ageyn:
"j sey not that j thence now, jn certeyn, 888

853. The last word was miswritten, blotted out, and written once more. 866. MS. ff.orto.
871. thane corrected from and; the pronoun omitted.
878. MS. as myht.
but and 3e welen don aftyr me, 
at this tyme juged schal sche not be, 
Neþer not as longe as gret sche Js, 
3if that 3e were don be myn avys. 
For it were Neyther Skele ne Resown 
To putten that child to ony distrocciown, 
that neuere jn non wyse deseryvd the ded, 
3if owghtes that 3e welen don be my Red.” 
“Syre, we scholen don as we 30w say : 
aftyr 30w we scholen werken this day.” 
“3if that 3e welen werken aftyr me,” 
quod this goodman thanne, “Sykirle, 
jnto a strong warde scholen 3e hire putte, 
and strong lokes vppon hire Schette, 
and putte hire jnto a strong towr, 
and with hire tweyne wommen for hire honour, 
hire forto helpen at hire deliuerance 
and hire to socowren jn that chawnee; 
and that owt from hire mown they not gon, 
No more thanne sche may from hem don; 
and that they there to-gederis be, 
tyl that child be born ful vterle, 
and tyl that it may it somewhat Susteyne; 
this js my need, j sey 30w certaygne. 
thanne scholen 3e knowen and sen more thing 
thanne 3e owht knowen at this begynneng, 
and forjuggen mown 3e thanne this wommane 
as lyk that 3e fynden resown thanne. 
This js my conseille, and 3e welen it do, 
And 3if not 3e Wylen, J parte 30w fro.” 
thus wroghten they thanne al jn fere 
aftyr that goodmannes counseyyl there, 
and putten hire jn-to [a] strong towr, 
& with hire tweyne wommen for hire honour, 
Swich as to mester scholde be 
That longeth to wommans parturite, 
and a Fenestre open be enhosown 
here vyaundes to taken bothe vpe & down, 

899. 3e added above the line.  921. MS. jn to strong.
Merlin is born

and what Necessaryes hem belonged also, vpe at that wyndowe to hem taken tho.
and whanne that thus be this goodmannes conseille in the towr they wereen browht, Sawns faille, thanne spak this good man to hem in hy, and to this damysele he soide, trewly:

"Loke that anou as thou delveryd be, that faste jt be crystened & smartle;
and to-fore the justice whanne jou schalt go, Loke anou that thou sende me vnto."

and thus in the towr abod sche there, tyl sche was deliuered in hard manere, and was deliuered of a knave child, that was bothen vnlovely & vn-myld.
and whanne this child was j-bore, they merveilleden gretly that weren thore,
For it hadde bothe wyt and knowenge aftyr the schrewed fadris engendrynge.
but, for the devel wrohte so falsly,
God to his evs hath taken jt, trewly, thorwgh the modris verray repentauce,
and for fulfylleng of hire penance,
and for hire good beleve in holy chirche,
and for the goode dedis that sche dyde wirche,
for that cawse noerde god in non degre that the devel with hym meddelid, Sikirle.
and jit the devel mad his engendrynge,
For that of al thinges he scholde hauve knowyng, bothe pet js to comen and that js gon,
For many merveiles he thoughte be hym to don.
but oure lord knew the repentance
Of his modyr, with-owten variaunce,
and wiste ful wel that azen hire wille that this aventure cam hire vntyle.
For the goode lord knew ful wel that be hire wil sche synnede neuere a del, and hym graunted bothe wit and knowenge
Of many things that weren comenge;

931. MS. an hy.
948. hir' corrected from his.
955. ad corrected afterwards from an.
thus wolde god that he scholde knowe of manye thinges vppon a rowe.
For ȝif goddis wille it hadde j-be,
the devil schold han had his partye
and to god ȝelden that was his nyht, but that it likede to this lord of nyht
hym to taken jnto his power and hollych owt of the devilis daunger.

Thus was there thanne this child j-bore,
of wheche these wommen dredden sore,
For more Rowghere that child it was thanne evere they Syen jn ony plas.
they schewed it thanne to pe modyr anon,
sche took vpe hire hond and blessed hire thussen, and Seyde anon: "so Crist me Spede, For this child haue J gret drede."
Thanne seyden to Hyre these Wommen A-geyn :
"So for hym schalt thou suffren ful gret peyn." thanne comanded the modyr there down it to leten Jn alle manere— "and that j-cristened anon it be, thus j ȝow preye for charyte."
thanne axeden these wommen of hire anon what name they scholden leyn hym vppon. anon leten they down this child there, and that anon j-cristened it were, and that jt named scholde j-be afyr his grauntfadyr, ful sekerle, whiche Goodman that hyghte merlyne, that the devele gan so engyne. and thus this child j-cristened was, and deliuered aȝen to pe modyris plas.
Thanne thus the modyr gan hym norree, tylten mouthes old he was, Sekerle; and with-jnue tho x mouthes he was so bold,

968. partye, y corrected from c. 999. mouthes afterwards crossed out and replaced by dayes.
Merlin speaks to his mother;

that thyke tyme he semede two jeres old.
and whanne xviij months weren fulliche j-past,
To the modyr seiden thes wommen jn hast:
"dame, fulfayn wolde we hennes ben
and to owre owne place hom gon azen,
For certein things we han to do;
Sykerly, dame, we wylen the fro."
thanne spak azen the modyr anon:
"3if it so be, 3e from me gon,
anon be jugement j schal ben ded,
For j ne knowe non other ned."
thanne wepte this modyr and made sory chere,
and preyde hem with hire abyden 3it there.
thanne 3it styllle they gonne abyde,
and to a prevy wyndowe wente pat tyde.
and the modir this child gan beholde,
& there jn hire armes sche gan it folde;
Anon ful tendirly wepte sche thanne,
& thus sche seide to this song manne:
"a, Faire sone," quod sche thanne thio,
"for the moste j suffre bothe deth & wo,
and to me ben j-put ful mochel hard peyne,
the wheche is wrong, god wot certeyne.
For there nis non man, but god alone,
that whot how this cause doth gone;
but this non man wil beleven, certeinle,
wherfore j moste nedis ded now be,
and thus with gret wrong j schal suffre ded."
Sore wepyng thus seide sche jn that sted.
And as the modyr this mane gan make,
hire sone on hire lokede with yyn so Blake,
and seide: "modir, dismeye the nowh,
for fore me schalt 3ou neuere to deth be browht."
whanne that the modyr hende hym so speke,
For drede sche let it owt of hire armes neke,
so that for dred the child fyl a-down,
and gan to cryen with a gret Sown.
thanne comen anon these wommen, certayn,

1001. mōthes afterwards crossed out and replaced by dayes.
and wenden, the modyr the child wolde han slayn, 1040  The mother
and they axeden hire, why the child ferde so.

"for, sekerly, j was neuer so wo,
Nethere j ne hadde neuer so gret fere;
That made hym fallen owt of myn armes here,
and that made hym so lowde to crye.
But of A xerveyl J sey 3ow, sekerlye,
that this child hath spoken to me;
3e wolde han wondred hit forto han se!"
"what, spak thanne he the vnto?"
"3e, sekerly, now dyde he so."
"what seide he thanne? telle vs now here."
"that Schal j doon with ryht good chere;
he seide j scholde neuer ded for hym be;
thus he me Seyde, ful Sykerle."

"but Seyde he ony othir thing?"
"Nay, forsothe, with-owten lesyng."
thanne gone they the child to kyssen and brase,
3if it to hem wolde speken jn that plase;
but non word of him ne cowde they gete,
thowgh they him kyste neuer so swete.

but on a day be modir calde hem hire vnto,
and thus to hem sche seide tho:
"manase 3e me for hym vppon a day,
and to hym make som gret afry,
and seith that for hym j schal be brent,
be stoned to dethe and al j-schent."
For the modyr desierede ful sere
That to-forn hem wolde he speken thore.
"a ful gret nowthe it is of the,"
Seiden these wommen, "ful sekerle,
that so fair a body as thou art on,
of hyde, of hewe, of flesch & bon,
that thou schalt for this fowle thing
ben browht so sone to a fowl endyng.
betyr it hadde have neuer be bore
thanne thy faire body for hym scholde be lore."
"Now certes," quod this merlyne tho,

1047. he added above the line.  1057. MS. hem.
1059. modir added above the line.  1061. MS. hyn,
They are frightened, and say he must be a devil.

He replies by telling them about their secret sins.

They run to the window, and inform the people.

The judge hears about it, and fixes the day for her trial.

She sends for the hermit.

"Ye are frightened, and say he must be a devil."

For dreade and sorwe they goone to awake, and seiden: "This ne may non child be: It is the devel, ful Sykirle.

that we han seid, doth it vs here telle; we supposen, it be a devel of helle."

the man aposid they him of wordis mo, and thus to hem he Seide vnto:

"Ye han don wel moche more Synne, thanne my modyr, that is here with-june."

Anow they merveyllde moche more, that he cowde tellen thinges, werea don to-fore.

"we schole gon tellen to hem that be-nethe be, how this child doth Speken, Sekyrle."

thanne he to this wyndowe comen they anone, and cleped the peple to hem fulsome, and tolden how pat the child spak there, & howgh that he seyde and ju what manere.

Thusse so wyde this tydyng strong, that to the jugge it cam er owht long, where-offen he merveillede wondir sore, that ju swich maner the child spak thore, thanne bespak the justice anon:

"Now were it tyme, juggement to don!" and sente anon to that Jayller

That ju the towre hem kepte ther, that at the ende of xi dawes to bringen hire forth to han hire lawes, whanne the modyr of merlyn herdeth this, That set was the day of hire, j-wys, Ift moche Sorwe made sche thanne, and sente anon aftyr this good manne, That Hire Was Wont to confessen before; aftyr hym sente sche to comen to hire thore.

Thus dwelde sche algates stille

1104. That through correction at the end.
the dayes of juggement to fulfille.
and whanne they weren past everichone
except viij dayes, that weren not gon,
thanne lyvede sche ju sorwe and care,
and wiste neuere thanne how sche schold fare,
but that sche scholde brend j-be;
sche knew non othir, ful Sykerle.
and al this tyme wente hire sone, ju feye,
abowte ju the towr and him gan to playe.
thanne seiden these wommen to him anon:
"Ful litel thenkest you what is to don,
and how this wyke, ful Sikerle,
thy modir for the moste nedis brend j-be."
Thanne be-spak merlyn anon
to his modir there thussone:
"Now, faire modyr, j 3ow praye,
For me non thing that 3e dismaye,
for there js non man on lyve here
that 3ow schal demen ju non manere,
Neper neuere 3ow juggen to be ded,
whiles that j lyve, ju non sted,
ne neuere non deth to suffren, j-wys,
Sauf onlich be god, that almyhty js."
whanne the modyr vndirstood this,
thanne was sche ful of joye & blis,
and seide: "this child moste nedis wys be,
Swich thynges to tellen now, Sykerle."
thus bod sche tyl the same day
that to juggement scholde sche gon, ju fay,
that owt of the towr was sche do,
and the tweyne wommen with hire also,
and hire sone in hyre arm sche bar,
tyl to-fore the jugges that sche cam thar.
thanne the justice at that tyde
thike two women token beside,
and of hem axeden, with-owten lak,
3if it were soth that the child spak.
thanne tolden hem tho wommen verrayly
Examination before the judges.

and remark that much wisdom is required to save its mother.

how that he to hem Spak apertly.

thanne seide the jugge to hem ageyn:

"ful mochel moste he konnen & knowen, certayn,
3if he schole owht his modyr Save,
mochel more konneng moste he have."

and be this jlike same tyme,
as that it happeede the owr of pryme,
this goodman to hire was comei ful nyht,
that hire thanne scholde cowneileen aryht.

thanne seide on of the jugges hire vnto:

"hast pou ony counseil, what wylt thou do ?
for martirdom thou most Suffren here ;
good counseil to the now profyt were."

thanne answerid this womman agayn:

"with this good man wolde j spoken fulfayn."

and they hire 30ven leve therto.

so jnto a chambre they gone to go,

and hire sone beleft with-owte
amonges the peple, a ful gret nowte ;
and with speche they gonehen hym asaylle,
but lytel owther nowht it dyde avaylle.

and al this while that jt was so,
his modir hire confessour spak vnto,
& whanne sche hadde told hym al hire wylle,
Thanne spak the confessour Hire vntylle,

and axede hire zif it certeyn were
that hire sone spak so there.

"3e, sire," sche seide, "certeynly,
to me hath he spoken, ful verrayly."

"In goddis Name," quod this good man tho,
"j hope, som merveilles it wele tornen vnto."

thanne comei they owt bothe jn fere,
and kommen jnto place as pe jugges were,
and took hire child jn hire armes two,
nyht so to-fore the jugge sche gan to go.
thus stood sche to-form hem, certaygne.
anon the jugge gan hire nefreyne,
and axede hire ho jat the fadyr wre
of that child that sche held there.

thanne answerid the modyr with gret pite:
"j wot not othir but ded to be;
but so god on my Sowle haue mereye,
medlid j neuere with mannnes compenye,
ne neuere j wiste ho pat the fadyr was,
neper neuere knew j man jn that cas,
ne neuere obeyed to non man, Sykerle,
that sweche things scholde don by me."
"3e, 3e," quod this justices tho,
"we konnew not beleven that it is so
as thou dost vs to vndistonde;
Jt was neuere provid jn non londe."
thanne tooken the jugges these wommen on side,
and axeden 3if swich a thing myhte be-tyde,
that a woman a child scholde bere
whiche neuere jn mannnes compeny ne were.

The judges say they cannot believe her,
ask also the two women on the point,
thanne seiden they: "xay, ful sikyrle,
with-owten mannnes compenye it myhte not be."

and declare she must die.

Thanne seiden these jugges to hyre ageyn
that—"ded nedys most 3e ben, certeyn,
for thus wommen seyn, trewely,
that with-owten mannnes compeny

Then Merlin suddenly intervenes.

and angerlich seide toforn hem echon:
"that schalt jou nevere, justice, bringen abowte,
my Modyr to brennen, with-owten dowte,
For sche ne hath not deservid therto.
and 3it more J schal sein the also,
that 3if trewe justice thou schost be
To alle that han don avowtre
with opare thanne with here lordis, certeyn,
of mo thanne of two partes that is here pleyn,
thow schost hem brennen al jn fere,
more than twey partes of wommen that ben here.
and my Modyr was neuere 3it gyly
with non man jn Swich maner of foly;

Then Merlin suddenly intervenes.

and declare she must die.

with opere thane with here lordis, certeyn,
of mo thanne of two partes that is here pleyn,
thow schost hem brennen al jn fere,
more than twey partes of wommen that ben here.
and my Modyr was neuere 3it gyly
with non man jn Swich maner of foly;
but swich a body as swich was take,
Evidence of the hermit and the women.

The hermit is asked, and testifies her innocence.

The devil being the offender.

Merlin reminds the hermit of the book.

The women are questioned.

and their testimony agrees with the book.

Yet the judges are not satisfied.

Merlin, growing angry,

sche hath forth browht with gret wrake.
and, Sire justice, but thou leve me,
axe this good man here openle.”

the justices axeden this goodman tho
3if it be—“as he seith vs vnto.”
“3e,” quod this good man, “ful Sekerly,
sche hath me told ful feithfully,
ful often & with ful weping chere,
that jn mannes compenyne neure sche were,
but that welfowle encombred sche was
with the fals enemy jn hire owne plas,
hire thus encombrede jn slepyng; And vppon my Sowle to taaken this thing.
but jn alle my lyf here before
herde j nevere of swich thing spoken ore,”

thanne spak merlyne a3en ryht tho,
and this goodman spak vnto :

and herby mown 3e ful wel knowe
the lveng of my modir al this throwe.”

“thou seist soth,” quod this good man,

thanne spak merlyne a3en ryht tho,
and this goodman spak vnto :

3if thate the goode holy mannes book
and they acorden, they wylen look.
So that these wommen and the book acordid wel,
of the goodmannes wrytyng, everydel.

3if thanne seide the justices tho,
For this scholde sche be qwyt neure the mo.

Thanne merlyn gan to wraththen hym Sore,
and ful angerly to the justice spak thore :

“J knowe moche Bettere my fadyr, Jn fay,
thanne thou dost thyne, J dar wel Say,

1232. The hermit is asked, and testifies her innocence.
1236. the devil being the offender.
1240. Merlin reminds the hermit of the book.
1244. The women are questioned.
1252. and their testimony agrees with the book.
1260. Yet the judges are not satisfied.
1264. Merlin, growing angry,
Merlin accuses the judge's mother.

and thy modyr knoweth bettere, certainly, 1268
ho that the be-gat, j telle pe feythfully, 1265
Bet tre thanne my modyr, j sey 3ow pleyn, 1272
For sche knew neuere my Fadyr, jn certimeyn.
and thherefore, Sire Justice, J telle to the
that thy modyr more worthy Js, brent to be, 1273
For sche is fals to hire lord so dere,
and so was neuere my modyr jn non manere."

thanne was this justice wondyr angry tho,
and thus to that child he Spak vnto :
"3if of my modir Swich thing thou konne seye,
J schal the holden for trewe, jn feye."
thanne seide merlyn azen to hym there :
"Ful wel knowe j thy modrys manere,
that moche more sche hath decerved to be ded
thanve eve re dyde my modyr jn ony sted.
and but 3if thou fynde that j trewe seye,
hardylich let ellis my modyr deye."

thanne seide the justyse to hym ageyn :
"3if thou konne proven that thou seist pleyn,
Thy modyr from brenneng schalt thou save,
and al thyn owne axeng thou schalt have . . .
but natheles, and it be as thou dost telle,
thanne schal j don brene bothe ful snelle,
bothe myn owne modyr and eik thyn,
and Bryngen hem bothe to a schort fyn."
"that schal neuere lyn Jn thy powere
my modyr to deth to putten here,
whiles that thou lyvest here, ony throwe,
For 3if nede be, mo Skiles j schal the Schewe." 1296

Thanne anon respyt gommen they take
For the justices modris Sake,
XV dayes thanne next Sewenge,
hire forto bringen to Rekenenge,
and diden hire seke bothe fer & nygh,
To hire answere to comen apertly.

1268. that, at blurred. 1274. so added above the line.
1284. modyr, r on erasure.
1295. throwe, the first e corrected from o.
In the meantime, Merlin remains silent.

On her arrival, Merlin is confronted with her before the people.

He suggests more private proceedings, indoors.

Nobody objects.

When in the room, Merlin puts some preliminary questions to the judge, and indicates the connection of the two cases.

and in the mean-while they enquired there of that child in diuers manere, but not to hem wolde he spoken non word, Tyll the day cam of here acord, and whanne this woman comen was, The Justices modyr, Into that plas. thus cam the justices modyr thedir in hye; thanne merlyn was after sent, trewlye, owt of preson in hasty manere to-forn the peple to comen there. thanne seide the justice to merlyn tho: "lo, here my modir, that thou spoke offen so!" thanne seyde the child to hym ageyn: "thou ne art ful wys, j telle the pleyn!" Tak thy modyr into a chambre anon and of thy beste frendes, and xedir 3e gon, and pere to-foren 3ow j schal come Jn excuse of my modyr al & Some, which that knoweth god almyhty and also hire confessour, ful sothfastly." thanne abasched weren they Sore, that they ne cowde Speken wordis no more. thanne seide merlyne to hem echon: "jif j delyvere my modir of this cryme anon, schal sche thauine ony more in ward be for 3ow o[per for ony of this meyne?" thanne answerid the justice to hym ageyn: "sche schal ben ful qwyt thane, in certayn." thanne seide the justyce to merlyn tho: "now sey to my modyr that thou kanst do, be whiche thy modir qwit scholde be; haue j-do, and sey on here to-fore me!" "j schal non thing vppon thy modyr seye but that schal my modyr aqwytten, in good feye. and jif sche have forfeited wyllyng, j wile that thou to deth hire bryng. hast not thou enswred me and also my modyr, ful certeinle,

1304, 1308, 1312, 1316, 1320, 1324, 1328, 1332, 1336, 1340
Merlin states that her lover is still alive.

3if j may hire delyveren here,
qwit to gon jn alle manere?"
“that is ful trewe,” quod the justice,
“and thou it cone don be ony wyse.”
“Now, justice,” quod merlyne thanzne anon,
“my modyr thou acusest to-forn vs Echon,
For that j am of hire j-bore,
and þat sche Not ho me engendrid thore.
but j kan bettere my modir telle
hos sone that j was, ful snelle,
thanne thou kannst, j dar wel say,
ho was thy fadyr, be ony way.
and also thy modyr the can tellen bettir, j-wis,
ho that the be-gat and thy fadyr Js,
thanne my modyr can tellen me,
þer evere cowde jn ony degre,
hos Sone that j was,
sche cowde neuere tellen jn non plas.”
Thanne spak þe justice to his modir dere:
“hos sone was j, that stond now here?
was j not 30wre sone Jn trewe acord
be-twixen 30w and 30wre husbonde & lord?”
“A 3is, fayre Syre, ful Sykerle!
hos sone eillis scholde 3e be,
but his sone that now ded Is?
j sey 30w, dere sone, with-owten mys.”
“dame,” quod merlyne, “30w behoveth here
the Sothe to Seyen Jn alle manere.
For but 3if thy Sone qwyte now me
and also my modyr, that here 3e se,
No more entermeten j ne schal,
and 3it scholen we gon qwyt of al!”
“3is,” quod the justice anon tho,
“Sey on now more what þou canst do.”
“Wel,” quod merlyne, “thanne schal J say:
thy fadir is 3it onlyve thys day
be wytnesse of thin owne modyr here.”
thanne beheld the justice his modir there.
Merlin gives further details.

"jt be-houeth," quod merlyne, "that 3e here telle ho was 3oure sones fadyr, ful snelle, 1380
For wel 3e weten, his Fadyr he nas
Of hym that he supposith jn this plas."
thanne baschet the Lady wondir sore, 1384
& axede merlyne hos sone Ellis he wore.
"Ful wel knowest thou," quod merlyn tho,
"that thou seist, it xis not So,
but a prestis sone of 3owre he js;
this woste thou wel, with-owten mys,
be this same tokene, j telle the,
that thou to hym seidest in prevyte.
Ne hadde 3e but Selde to-gederis leyn,
that to hym thou seydest, ful pleyn,
that be hym with childe thou were;
and he seide : 'nay, haue 3e non fere!'
thanne seide he, that scholde neure be,
Be hym with childe gon, Sykerle.
and for this skele thus seide he, trewelye,
For thou schost medlen with non mannes compenye.
and 3it more dyde he therto:
as often as he with 3ow medlyd so,
he put jt anon jn Scripture;
that j seye, is soth, j 3ow ensure.
thanne was jt told to 3oure lord
of 3oure manere, every word,
but with fals othes 3e to hym dyd swere
that it not so was Jn non manere.
thanne vnnethis wolde 3e abyde,
but to pe preest wente anon that tyde,
and seiden to hym with-owten wordis mo:
'me js be-tyd ful mochel wo,
that thus with childe be 3ow am j,
J am ful wo-be-gon now, trewly!' 1412
dame, js not this trowthe, that j now say?
And here to-fore me sey 3e other nay!

1383. baschet, b apparently through correction.
1387. of (?) added above the line ; 3 through correction, blurred.
1394. he, h corrected from /
1396. childe, d through correction, blurred.
and whil thow wylt not the sothe beknowe, 
mochel wers schal j sein aforn al this rowe." 1416  
She still denies it.
"modyr," quod the justice, "is this trewe?"
"what, sone, levest thou this schrewed hewe?"
"A," quod merlyne, "wylt thou thanne so,
thanne schal j telle what thou dist mo. 1420
whazne that thou knew certeyn, jou were with childe,
thow wentest to purchase, as a woman ful mylde, 
be the same preest, thi pes to have,
of thin owne lord, he scholde je save, 1424
and that his owne it was éche del,
the wheche was fals, thou knew ful wel.
and sethen that tyme, J sey 3ow here, 1428
havend bothe lyved that lyf jn fere, 
and jit 3e lyven bothe jn-to this day;
Takith this for trowthe, as j 3ow say.
and the Nyht to-fore that 3e scholde gone, 1432
that preest, to 3ow he cam fulsone,
and browht 3ow a gret pece on the weye, 
and thus to 3ow tho gan he seye:
'loke that jn alle thynge 3e fulfille 
that my sone to 3ow schal sein vntylle.'" 1436

Whaunce the justices modyr herde hym so seyn,
and that he seide, was trowthe, ful pleyn,
Thanne gan sche Syghen & maken gret none. 1440
Thanne thus sche thowhte be hire-selve Alone,
that Nedis the trowthe moste sche Seye
oper elles to ben confowndid utterlye.
thanne hire sone seide to hire ageyn:
"hos sone j am, telleth me now pleyn.
For wel j wot, J am 3oure child,
& to 3ow j am bothe mek and myld.
Telle me now trowthe, j 3ow preye,
of that this child doth here Seye!"
"Now, Swete sone, haue mercy on me!
as he Seyth, it is, ful Sekyrle."
"ha thanne," quod the justice tho,

1440. thowhte, ht through correction.
1443. seide added above the line.
The judge understands that Merlin's mother is innocent, and implores him to name his father. Merlin relates that his father is an evil spirit of the order called "Equibedes," and that he has the mental capacities of those spirits to know things past, and to come.

Merlin accounts for his birth.

"Now j se wel how it doth go! this child knoweth better his fadyr, j-wis, thane j do myn, with-owten mys. Now se j that it were non resown thy modir oþer the to don distrocciown. For for goddis love, telle þou me here what maner of wyht thy fadyr were."

"thanne seide merlyne to hym ageyn:

"that schal j gladliche, jn certeyn, more for thy love thane for thy drede, j sey the certeyn, so god me spede! Syre, j wele that thou knowe, trewely, that on my mody[f] me engendred the enemy."

For Sweche Spirits as they be, ben j-cleped equibedes, j telle the; and from the eyr jnto the erthe they gon Swich maner of werkys here forto don. And knowe thou wel, justice, certainlye, that j haue bothe here wyt and memorye, and by hem knowe j ful wel thy modris werkyng everydayel. For things that ben past, j knowe, and things that ben commeng vpon a rowe. And also it is owre lordis wille that bothe wit & memorye j schal have þere-tylle on his behalve, more thanne a naturel man jn this erththe knoweth oþer kan, for the love of my modir so dere, that hire penauace fulfylde here, that the goodman þaf hire jn charge (scie it fulfyde bothe fully and large); that so be vertu of hire goodnesse God graunttyd me ȝit more largesse: to knowen thynges that weren comenge, J sey the, justice, with-owten lesynge. and this schalt þou proven ryht wel and the sothe to knowen every del."

1464. MS. than on my mody; in engendred the e of the second syllable is corrected from r. 1468. werkys, r corrected from k.
Anon he took the justice on syde, & thus him told that jlike tyde:

"Thy modyr wil discoueren me anone, come sche hom ones, neuere so sone, and tellen to him that the be-gat, alle that j haue to the seid and what, and whanne that he wot al this, For drede of pe thanne wyle he fleen, j-wys. thanne the devel, whos servaut he hath be, to a water schal leden hym ful pryvyle, and pere he schal hym-self distroye, his owne Sowle to gret anoye. and hereby myhtest jou haue knoweng that j can tellen of thinges comeng." "Now, and it be trewe as thou tellest me, Evere schal j the trosten ful feith-fulle, and Neuere j schal the misbelive For now man that owht can on pe preve."

Thanne thus owt of cownseyl gonneu they go, and to-fore the peple come they tho, and there schewed the justice anon, Sykerle, that ful wel aqwit his modyr hadde he, bothe be good resown and be ryht— "thus hath he his modyr from the deth now dyht." thanne joyeden the peple everychon, and thankede god he hadde so don. So thus deliyvered merlyne tho his modyr from Brenneng, peyne, & wo. and merlyne with the justice belefte Stylle, For he thowhte to werkyn aftyr his wylle, and sente tweyne men with his modir anon, To weten how that cawse scholde goon, also to knowen jif it trewe were that this chyld hath told hym there. Assone as his modyr hom conneu was, sche tolde the preest al the cas of the merveilles everychon

---

1492 the tragic end of the priest.
1496 MS. of pe, added above the line.
1500 The judge declares that if that comes true, he will ever believe him.
1504 [leaf 94 c] They go out again to the people, and Merlin's mother is released.
1512 The people rejoice.
1516 MS. Brënnég.
Suicide of the priest. [CH. I.

He is afraid of the judge, and drowns himself.

The spies report it to the judge.

On Merlin's request, the judge tells it to the hermit, the holy Blasy.

Blasy wonders at the child's faculties, and tests him in many ways.

that toform hire sone was seid & don. Anon as the preest herde of this, fulsore thanne was he astoned, j-wis, and supposid the justice wold hym slo. thanne wylste he neuere what to do, but owt of the town he wente anon, Thanne to a ryvere he cam thus son, and pere he dyde hym-Self dystroye, For the justice hym schold not anoye. Io, thus the devel with hym wroghte, tyl that he hadde brought hym to nowhte. and this openly Syen thike tewy men, that hom with that lady comun then; and whanne to the juge they comun ageyn, of alle this adventure they tolden hym, certeyn. & whanne the justice herde al this, anon he merveillede ful gretyly, j-wis, and there to merlyn told it thus sone; thanne began this merlyn to lawhen anone. "Now j preye the, justice," quod Merlyn tho, "thanne tolde the justice to Blase, ful pleyn, how that this adventure befyl, certeyn.

This Blasye a worthy clerk he was, and mochel merveille hadde in pat plas that so jong a child as was he, Swich wit scholde haue jn ony degre, that but two 3er and an half he was old, and that he was so wis, so rety, and so bold; he merveillede whens it scholde be, & assaid merlyne jn ful many degre. thanne seide merlyne to hym ageyn:

1533. dystroye, the first y corrected from r.
"Thou more that thou me asayest, ju certeyn,
\[\ldots\]
3if thou wilt me tristen and beleve,
of the love of god j schal the preve,
the whiche to endeles lyf it schal pe brynge,
and thou wilt don afyr my techinge."

Blasy re-

Blasy an

Blasy re-

Blasy re-

that j only the de

that j am, as pon myhtest han seid, from god pat j cam, and that he graunted me bothe wit & memorye;
what scholit it han greved the thus to seye?
For it goddis wille that j knowe things to-comeng yppon a Rowe,
only for the same encheshown
that j devel hath me forgon.
and sit haue j not * myn engyneng, that of kynde j hadde atte begynneng, but of me scholen they neuere han power,
for that han they lost everywher,
For me to putten ju so worthy a vessel, of whiche hadde they part neuere a del, and ju Swich a maner conceyved they me, For they knew not of goddis prevyte.
and þerfore alle j-lost they bene;
of this be thou Seker and not ju wene.
and loke thou beleve that j schal seyn, For of merveilles j schal tellen the, ful pleyn,
of whiche thow wyll haue gret merveylllyng,
how sweche wyttes myhte jnto ony man synk.
Blasyse, anon that thow make a book,
for here-aftyr many man schal pe-on look."
Blasy seide Blaye to merlyne anon:
"A book may j do waken ful sone,
but j coniowre pe be on god of myhtes most,
which is fadir, sone, & holygost,
that thou nowht deceyve me.
Nethir be thy werk engyned to be,
Ne to werkyn non thing azens goddis wylle,
Ne nothyn to don that scholde plesen hym ylle."
"ha, Sire Blayse," quod merlyne tho,
"and j azens goddis wille ony thing do,
Loke that pou telle it me anon,
and j wele beleven it thusson,
but gete the bothe penne, juke, and parchemyn,
this book to be-gynnyn and Bryngen to fyn,
and j schal the tellen every del
how that this book pou schalt wryten ful wel."
Thanne Blayse anon, so god me save,
dide ordynen alle things him Nedid to have;
and whanne that al thing redy was,
thanne cam merlyn jnto that plas,
and anon be-gan him telle
of cristes deth, how it befelle,
also of Josepe of armathye,
how of hym it happenede, trewelye,
and of Aleyn, and of Perown also,
& of his compenye, how they departid tho.
and thus endyd he of josepe there
& of al his Feleschepe also in yere,
and gan to tellen hym furthere more
of pe parlment of pe develis thore,
and how thei conseylled hem be-twen
that a child in the erthe jborne schold ben
that here wyt scholde haue & ek memorye,

1598. man corrected from many.
1603. pe squeezed in afterwards.
1631. thet, i squeezed in afterwards.
CH. I.  

Merlin predicts their separation.

the peple to deceyen ful falsy.
"and be my modir thou hast herd telle
how hire deceyveden the fendis so felle,
but be here owne fals folye
They han me lost, As J the seye."

al this werk thus Began merlyne,
and Blasye it Browhte to ful good fyne;
and evere the lengere that Blasye gan wryte,
the bettore hym thowhte he cowde endyte;
and euere the more this mater gan he drawe,
evere the bettore he lykede merlynes Sawe.

thanne merlyn to Blayse cam anon,
& pere to hym he seide thus son :
"Blasye, thou shalt Suffren gret payne
This storye to an ende to bringen, certeyne,
and hit schal j Suffren mochel more."
"how so, merlyn?" quod Blasye thore.
"j schal be sowht," quod merlyne tho,
"Owt from the west, with messengeris mo ;
and they that scholen kommen to seken me,
they han maad Sewrawnce, j telle the,
me forto slen for ony thing ;
this sewrawnce han they mad to here kyng.
but whanne they me sen & with me speke,
Non power they schole han on me to ben awreke ;
For with hem hens moste j gon,
and thou into othir partyes schalt welson,
To hem that han the holy vessel
which that js J-cleped the seynt Graal.
and wete thow wel and ek forsothe
that thow and ek this storye bothe,
ful wel beherd now schal it be
and also Beloved Jn many contre."

and hos that wil knownen jn certaygne
what kynges that wereu jn grete Bretaygne,
Sethen that Cristendom thedyr was Browht,

The history of Merlin's mother did Blasy know already.

The work at the book goes well.

Merlin predicts difficulties in its continuation.

seeing that he himself will have to go to a strange land,

For the early history of Great Britain.

1637. be added above the line.
1662. J cleped, J corrected from c.
They sholcn hem fynde, hos so that it sowht, 
or the Story of Bwttcs book; 
there sholcn 3e it fynde, and 3e welen look; 1672
which that Martyn de Bewre trauinslated here
From latyn into romauwee jn his manere.
but leve we now of Bwttcs book,
Defeat of the younger king Costantin.

bothe the kyng and the newm to governen alle, what maner of aventures so myhte befall
And thus this Fortager, in certeyn, of al that rem his wil he hadde, ful pleyn,
Sawf only Constans ocupied the crowne, but more governaunce ne hadde he, nethir vpe ne downe.
So that this Fortager, beloved & dred he was Ouer al the Rewm, in every plas;
For bothen wys and witty he was holde, but ouerprwd wax he mani folde.
For in that Rewm, in non degre myhte non man so moche don as dyde he.
So that hit happede vpon a day that there aryvede a Navye with gret aray.
Thanne the kyng wente anon to Fortager, and anon fulfaire hym preyde ther
his Lond to helpen forto defende with oþer helpe he wolde aftyr sende.
"For we ben alle at 3owre comandement, bothen j & al this newm, verament."
"Syre," quod Fortager to the kyng, "the peple of 3oure hauen me jn hatyng; therfore let hem helped now 3ow here,
For j ne schal entermeten jn non manere, Nethyr for non man that doth me praye, Ne for non thing that ony man kan saye."

Whanne that kyng costantyn herde this, and ek þe peple þat with him þere was, j-wis,
That of hym Socour scholde they han non, homwardis aþen they gonne to gon,
and ordeyned hem jn eche degre with here enemyes to fyghten, ful sekyrle.
but of here enemyes Scomfyted they were, and anon to the flyht they weren put there, and losten manye of here meyne,
Of wheche dethes was gret pyte,
Conspiracy against the king.

And sayden that thyke los Hem not scholde Han falle, and Fortager hadde ben amongis hem alle.

that so towards the kyng they fillen in hate, and from hym withdrowen bothe erly and late,

So that of evel herte they seiden hem between that he non lengere here kyng Schold beene. Thanne to this Fortager comen they anon, and pere to him they seiden thus son:

"Sire, with-owten kyng we be, and that is nowht worth, Sire, pard; So that for goddis love be thou kyng a3ens owre enemyes jn defendyng.

For we knowen non man jn al this lond That so wel vs scholde governe, as j vndistond." thanne quod Fortager to hem ageyn:

"As longe as the kyng lyveth, jn certeyn, Neure non kyng ne schal j be, nethyr of non thyng to entermeten me."

thanne seiden they to him jn fere:

"jt is vs levere, the kyng ded were." thanne quod he,

" if he were ded," thanne quod he, "and se liked thanne kyng to maken me, thanne wolde j don my powere

3ow to defende bothe fer & xere."

whanne they vndistodyn his meneng, anon from hym they maden departyng, and tolden here frensis of his answere, how that Fortager to hem seide there.

"thanne is it bettere that we pe kyng sle, and thanne may fortager oure kyng be, and that be vs kyng he is mad,"

thus ech of hem to othir seid.

and so wile he thanne fulfille hire wille— "and to owre cownesyl consentyn vntylle." thanne chosen they anon amonges hem alle be whom this aventure myhte befalle,

So that amonges hem waren there twelfe that this aventure token on hem-selve.

1741. not added above the line. 1759. MS. hem.
1760. vs, v corrected from l.
So forth this xij wenten anon,
and jnto þe kynges halle comen thus son,
and so there with here swerdis so kene
at his mete here kyng dyden they slene
(and 3it was there non wan in the halle thO)
That ony word hem dorst speken vnto),
and wenten anon to Fortager,
& tolden hym how they hadden don ther.
thanne Semblawnt of wrath the Fortager gan make
(but operwyse ju in his herte he gan it Take),
and thus to hem he seyde tho :
"Evel han 3e don 3oure kyng to Slo!
and the Beste men j wende 3e hadde been
that jn al this newm a man Scholde seen ;
& þerfore riht sore it forthinketh me
that ony swich thing be 3ow scholde be."
but algates thus was the kyng ded
be thike xij false mennes need.
thanne gonnen they to spekyn hem be-twene
how that Fortager here kyng scholde bene.
At wheche cownceyl weren two goode men,
that þe tothere tweyne bretheren kepten than,
bothen Awriele and ek vter,
the kynges bretheren that last was ther.

Whanne these tweyne goode men vndirstood this,
that Fortager scholde ben kyng, j-wys,
Thanne knewen they that mater ful Wel,
that be hym this thyng was don schedel.
Anon token they cownceyl betwixen hem two
what with theke chyldren myhten they do. "Sethen that Fortageroure lord hath do slayn,
So wele he these two children, jn certayn.
For anon as that he kyng Js,
Ful mochel sorwe he wyle werkyn, j-wis.
and we loveden here Fadyr ful wel,
For be hym oure goodes we hadden moche del ;

The conspirers slay the king in his hail.

When they tell Fortager of their deed, he pretends to be angry,

and rebukes them.

However, the people speak of Fortager as the successor to the throne.

At the meeting there are two men present who have the care of Pendragon and Uter.

They understand Fortager’s under-hand dealings,

and the danger which threatens their wards.

Out of gratitude to the father.

1780. hem, e through correction.
1800. tweyne, we damaged (cf. footnote to l. 1737).
1810. he added above the line.

MERLIN.
Fortager ascends the throne.

and therfore worthy j-blamed weren we deseyss to sen be hem Jn ony degre."

thanne thus token they here cownseyl, that they thennes wolde flen sauny fayl,
and that the children scholde with hem go,
lest that Fortager hem wolde don slo.

"So pat therfore, Siker, avised we be
Forto Fleen into a straunge contre,
and towards wales welen we go,
and ek the children with vs bothe two."

So that they wenten forth here weye,
thike worthy goode men bothe tweye;
So that jn a cyte dweldyn they thanne
that Boorges was clepid of many a mane;
and there longe j-norsched weren they bothe,
with these goode men, j sey 3ow forsothe.

Now thanne scheweth this Storye
how that Fortager kyng was, Sekerlye.
and whanne that Sacrid he was kyng,
thanne to hym these Barowns were comeng,
the same that Slowen kyng costantyn
(therfore hadden they ful evele fyn),
and stoden tofor Fortager vppon a rowe,
& countenauce he made as he cowde not hem knowe,
& lyk as to-Fore he ne hadde neuere hem seyn;
this countenauce made Fortager, jn certeyn.
thanne they to hym aproched Neer,
and thus they seide to kyng fortager:
"by vs a kyng J-mad thow were,
& kyng costance we slowen for the here.'
and whanne kyng Fortager herde this,
Anon he leet hem to be taken, j-wis.
"For ded moste 3e Nedys been,
For 3owre owne juggement hauen 3e 3oven clen,
That seyn 3e slowen 3owre owne lord,
3e mosten be ded be 3owre owne word.
j se wel, the same wele 3e don be me,
but j schal 3ow bettere don kepen, Sykerle."
The murderers and their clan.

and whanne the xij Barowns herde this,
Ful sore they weren abasched, j-wys.

So that thanne Fortager ryht anon
let hem don drawn everichon,

and to hors hem bond, & so to-drowe,
and thus these xij knyhtes he slowe;
For of hem non pece with othyr lefte,
So that from the Bodyes Jt was refte.

thanne these men that distroyed were,
moche worthy kynrede hadden they there.

1860
and to Fortager comen they anon,
and seiden: "moche schame hast þou vs don,
that thou oure kynrede hast thus slayn
and so veleynowsly to deth hem put, certayn.

For neuere Servise we scholen the do,
for þou oure kynrede thus dydest Slo."

1868
whanne Fortager herde they gomen hym manace,
anon angry was he jn that place,
and seide, 3if they Spoken ony more,
the same jewys scholden they han thore.

1872
of wheche wordis they hadden gret dyspyt,
as who that ful lytel dowteden jt,
and seiden to Fortager there anon:
"thow dost vs manacen everichon,
but we don the to vndirstondye:
As longe as we han Frendis oþer Londe,
Gold other Sylver, owther oþer entaylle,
the schal nethyr faillen werre ne bataylle.

1880
and we defyen the what thou kanst do,
For falsly the kyngdom ocupiest thou so,
and Falsly & vntrewely ocupyest the crowne,
with-owten ryht Skele owther resowne.

1884
for wete thou wel, ryht jn good feye,
as evel deth 3it schalt thou deye."

1888
So that thus, jn this manere degre,
betwixen the kyng & þe barowns began þe melle;
and gret peple assembald vppon a day,
and on Fortager they comen, the sothe to say,

1871. MS. feiden.
1876. manacen, na on erasure, the a corrected from e.
Civil war. Fortager’s marriage. [CH. II.

the king sustains heavy losses, & gret distroecioewn diden him there, and of his token they many presonere. 1892

So that jn this wyse kyng Fortagere that Lond governede longe there, and hem drof owt of the lond as For a whyle, as j vndirstond. 1896

Whanne owt of pe lond they were drevyne echon, Ful spetous to his peple he be-cam anon, that amonges hem Suffren it myht they not longe, 1900

but ajens hym to myssen gonnen they fonge, and benomen hym gret partye of his lond, and with strenkthes on hym comen, j vndirstond. whanne that Fortager vndirstood this, Ful sorweful was he thanne j-wys, 1904

and wende his Lond to hauen forgon. thanne abowten messageris sente he ful son to alle his Frendis Jn eche contre, that al abowtes jn his rewem pes forto be. 1908

and whanne they vndirstooden that pes wolde he, Ful glad weren they alle, ful sekerle. Thanne cam Augwys to Fortager, 1912

and hym ServeDede ful longe ther, tyl that al his stryf were j-don.

thanne Augwis and Fortager to-gederis spoken son, and his owne dowhter he 3af hym to wyve, wherfore his peple wraththed as blyve, 1916

for pat he lefte a part of his creawnce, benchesown of his wyf, with-owte variaunce, and for that cristened not sehe was, his mœynes love lost he jn that plas; 1920

and that wyste wel kyng Fortager. and also of costantymes sones he dredde ther, whiche that weren jn strawnge contre, hym wolde owt-seken, ful Sykyrle, 1924

Ful wel he wyste, not for his prow, as Sykerly as that j telle it 3ow.
thanne thowhte he forto do maken anon

1902. hym, y corrected from e.
a full strong tower of lym and ston;
that fort to maken, he dyde it sped,
that he of non men scholde haue non drede.
thanne sente he abowtes jnto eche contre
For masowns and carpenteris, ful sekerle,
and hem comanded jn alle manere
a passyng strong tower to maken there,
also strong as they cowden ony devyse,
that it were mad after here gyse,
and anon let orleynen ston & morter
this forsaid tower be-gynnen ther.
and whazne this werk was thus begonne,
& the heythe of fowre roddis vpe was j-ronne
aboven the erthe be her werkyng,
but aftywardis fil there a wonderly thing:
al that they wrohton be the day,
be Nyht it was ouerthrowen, jn fay,
and be qwakyng of theke mowntayn,
there as they wrohton, jn oertayn.

whazne that Fortager beheld al this,
that his werk ne wolde not lasten, j-wis,
thazne was he bothe jn sorwe and care,
til pat he knew why it so gan fare.
thanne sent he abowtes jn al the lond
afty alle the wysest, as j vndirstond.
and whanne they weren asemblyd everychon,
To hem he Schewede this merveille anon.
and thanne answerid they anon:
"Sykerly, Syre, this connen we not don!
Ful worthi clerkis they mosten be,
for here-vppon they connen bet than we."
thanne seide Fortager to hem ful snelle:
"j trowe the sothe that 3e me telle."
Anon messengeris gonnen gon welfaste
afty jn wisest clerkis anon jn haste
that myhte ben fownde jn al his lond,
as j do sow to vndirstond,
and tolde hem of that wonderly thing,

1928 Fortager resolves to build a strong tower, where he can be safe.
Workmen are sent for,
1932 building materials are brought,
and the work is begun.
1936 But what is built in the day, topples down in the night.
1940 Fortager, greatly troubled,
sends for the wisest men in the country.
1952 These advise him to call in the aid of men of learning.
1960 So he does,
1964 states the case before them,
Astronomers consulted. 

of his towr and of the Fallyng.
than of the wisest clerkes took he anon,
and jnto cowneyl gone they gon,
& axede hem, 3if they knewen ony resown,
why that his werk fyl so a-down.
"For, sekerly, it is j-told to me
that but be 3ow wyster it may not be."

They reply
that only
[leaf 96 c]
astrologers
can clear up
the matter.

It is at first
found out
that there are
two astrolo-
gers amongst
them,

eventually
seven come
forward.

These, when
brought
before the
king,

boldly under-
take to settle
the question,

and are
promised
great
rewards,

They remain,

and aske their
opinion.

1992. MS. hym fortō that myhtē fonde with telle added above the
These clerkis gonnen to stodyen welsore, and ech of hem there provede his lore; So that the more they stodyed, je forthere they were. thanne cam the kyng and axede hem there, how that j-scholde stondyn of his thynge. And as 3it thanne cowden they tellyn him non tydyng, but axeden hym viij dayes of respyt. thanne quod the kyng: “wel me lykyth Jt, but loke that 3e otterly be that day of my towr the sothe that 3e me say.” Thanne wenten they to here cownseil ageyn, and ech of hem can to oper seyn: "what scholen we werkyn jn this thing hit Forto Bryngen to a good endyng?" thanne bespak on of the Sevene there: "let ech be hym-Selhe his wyt scheweuen here, how that jt Semeth hym of this cas, let hym here Schewen jt jn this plas.” and ech there schewede his verdit sone, So that alle they acordid jnto one, Sawf that of the towr knew they non thynge what was the cause of the Fallyng. But on gret merveille there they sye, where-offen alle, ful treweyle, Ful sore abasched alle they were, For that merveille that they syen there, that a child jn this erthe j-boren was whiche erthly Fadir hadde neuere jn non plas. thanne ech of hem to othir gan say: “Let vs ben avised be the morwe of he day.” Thanne vppon the morwe they sembled Eft sone, and jnto on thing they acordid Echone: So that of this child that there was bore, how that his lyf Scholde be forlore, And his blood j-leyd jn the fundement Of that jlke towr, verament, 3if that towr scholde Evere abyde.

set to work, 2004
and get on fairly, 2007
but do not arrive at a definite conclusion. They then obtain a re-
spite of eight days. 2012
After fresh endeavors,
so that the more they studied, why the tower falls.
and accustom them to study, and he forethey they were.
that is the king and asked him there, what that he should stand of his thing.
and as it then cowden they tellen him none tyding, but asked him seven days of respect.
that quod the king: "well I like thee Jt, but look that thee utterly be that day
of my tower the sothe that thee say." Then they went to here counsel again, and each of them can to open say:
"what shollen we work in this thing hit Forto Bryngen to a good ending?"
then bespake on of the Seven there:
"let each be himself-his wit schewen here,
how that it seems him of this case,
let him here schewen it in this place."
and each there schewed his verdict soon,
so that all they accorded into one,
saw that of the tower knew they none thing
what was the cause of the falling.
but on great marvel there they see,
where-offen all, quite truly,
full sore abashed all they were,
for that marvel that they seen there,
that a child in this earth he-born was
which earthly father had had nowhere in none place.
than he each of him to other gan say:
"let us be advised be the morrow of this day."

And this child that there was born,
how that his life should be forever,
and his blood was laid in the fundament
of that like tower, veritably,
if that tower should ever abide.

2014. an, a through correction. 2025. y, y corrected from e. 2036. which, e stuck on to the preceding h.
thus they sayd that like tyde,
Everich a master be hym-self alone,
and thus alle accordid they jn-to one.

"And lete vs maken the kyng thus beleve,
Ofer ellis of oure lyves he wyle vs depreve;
and that theke child he do seken anon,
also faste as messengeris renown gon."

Thanne thus endid they here counseil there,
that anon so to-torn pe kyng j-browht they were,
and eche be hym-self told his avis
aforn the kyng there and alle his.

Thanne, whenne the kyng and alle his counsaylle
herden hem thus tellen, with-owten faylle,
and seiden alle: "it myhte wel be,
Swich a thing, Jn alle degre,
3if so it be that a man be bore
with-owten earthily fadyr, as 3e seiden before;
and thus han 3e me told everyechone,
ech of 30w maistres be 3owre one."

"And but 3e it Fynde as we 3ow say,
Ellis doth be vs what 3ow lyst, jnfay!
Thanne seyde the kyng to hem ageyn,
he wolde hem jn warde putten, certeyn,
Tyl that the sothe he myhte knowe.
Thanne seiden they to hym vppon a rowe:
"Anon as that he Fownden Js, 3ut child so 3yng,
Loketh that 3e don hym Slen for ony thyng,
and that the blood be to 3ow browht,
and for non thyng they leven jt nowht."

The kyng hem putte alle sevene anon
Jn a ful strong hows of lym and ston,
and deliuered hem jn what hem xede was,
therby to ben Sosteyned jn that plas.

Thanne ordeyned the kyng messengeris ful snelle,
xij worthy gentyles, as j 3ow telle,
that they scholde alle anon forth gon
this Fadirles child to seken welson.

and these xij men the kyng made swere,
that where so evere j-fownden he were, that they scholden hym Slen anon—
“and that his Blood jn a sawf place 3e don, and that it Sawfly be browht to me, though two 3er owte that 3e be.
and looke that 3e fynden hym for ony thing, though that 3e maken the lengere taryeng.”
and thus the messengeris, forth they gon, be twyne & twyne here weye token they son, and sowghten jn manye dyvers contre that child to fynde, 3if hit myhte be.
So that atte laste fowre metten jn fere, as that here aventure behappede there.

Thus ryden these fowre Jn compenye, tyl vppon a day jt happede, ful trewelye, Thorwh a fayr medewe as they gone ryde, weren many children pleyeng jn that tyde. and merlyne, that knew alle thencheson of tho messengeris comeng so son, and wiste ful wel that they him sowghte, anon to a riche mannes sone he rawhte. For he wiste ful wel that he wolde wroth be, 3if that he hym smete, fulle Sykerle ; Thanne lefte He vpe His staf Anon and overthwert the Schensys smot him thus son. Anon this child be-gan to crye with a lowd voys ful angerlye, and there Reprovyd this merlyne, and clepid him “fowle false fowndelyne, that Nevere Fadyr haddest thow here, thou fowle fowndelyng, thow fals bismere.”
and whanne þe messengeris herden of this, Towardis that child they drowen, j-wys, and hym axede jn here manere what he was that hym so smot þere.
thanne answerid the child anon ageyn :
“Jt is a wommans sone here, jn certeyn, that wot neuere ho that the Fadyr was, Nethir ho that him begat, jn non plas.”
Merlin shows great complaisance.  

and Merlin himself steps forward and tells them that he is the one they seek.

whanne merlyne herde that he seide so,

Towards hem faste he gan to go,

and spak to hem with a lawheng chere:

“j am he whom that 3e seken here,

And also hos deth that 3e han swore;

lo, here j stonde now 3ow before!

For that my blood with 3ow scholde 3e bere

To kyng Fortager jn alle manere.”

and whanne that the messengeris herden hym seyn so,

anon thanne alle abasched weren they tho,

and so tolden hym it was, ful certeynle.

“3e, that wiste j ful wel longe er 3e.”

thanne seide the messengeris to hym ageyn :

“with vs mostest thou gon, Jn certeyn.”

“that ful gladliche wyl j now do,

3if it so be that 3e not me Slo.”

but 3it merlyn wiste Ful wel

put perto talent hadden they neuea a del.

but merlyne Seyde this be enchesown

To wyten what they wolden seyn anon,

and seide to hem: “3if that 3e wilen grawnthen me

that 3e welen neither me distroyen ne sle,

with 3ow wile j gon forto Fonde

and telle why that pe towr ne may not stonde.”

So that eche to othyr gan forto seyn:

“Rathere forsworn scholen we ben, jn certeyn,

thanne jn ony wyse hym Scholde we Sle,

Sekyrly, for vs Jt Schal not now be.”

“Sires,” quod merlyne, “with me scholen 3e go,

and 3owre herberwe j schal bryngen 3ow vnto,

and loggen jn place there as my modyr js,

& also anothir good man, with-owten mys ;

For with-owten here leve j ne may not go,

Certein, Sires, J sey 3ow vnto.”

2150. 3owr’, r’ squeezed in afterwards.
He knows already all about the tower.

Thanne answeryd these messengeris ageyn:
"With the to gon we ben ful gayn
jnto what place thow wyll vs lede;
with the scholen we go with-owten drede."
So wenten they with merlyne jnto that plas,
jnto a nonnerye, there his modyr was,
and merlyne chargede that meyne echon
Ful good chere the messengeris to don.

Anon as that of here hors they weren lyht adown,
To-forn Blaye he dyde hem comen anon.
"Lo, Sire," quod merlyne to Blaye tho,
"behold here tho men that me seken to slo.
And wile we preye, sires, now alle jn fere
That trewe Wtinessse 3e Welen beren me Here
To-forn this goodman that here Js,
3if that j lye owther secy owht amys,
haue j not Told 3ow the cause why
that 3e me comen to seken, verrayly?"
and they seiden: "3is, ful Sykerle!"
of wheche they wondrid how it myhte be.
thanne seide merlyn to Blayse there:
"now vndirstondith what j schal sein here."
To the messengeris thanne seide he tho:
"Kyng Fortager now comen 3e fro,
whiche kyng, a gret towr doth he make
onliche for strengthe for his owne sake,
the wheche towr ne may not stonde
For non werkyng of mannes honde,
but that jn an owr down doth it go,
as mochel as they maken jn a montthe oper two.
wherfor that the kyng, ful wroth he js,
and aftyr his clergysse hath sent, J-wys,
but of this non Resowne comye they telle,
of that towr, why that it Felle;
Ne non othir thynge ne cowden they se,
but that a child born scholde there be
that hadde non erthly fadyr here.
and vppon this they acordid jn fere,
that swich a child they scholden sle,
and the blood to-forn hym j-browht to be,
Merlin tells of the sending of the messengers. [CH. ii.

to leyn that blood in the fundement, 2196
thanne scholde the towr stondyn, verament.
and whanne that pe kynge heerde of this,
thanne merveillede he mocheil here-offen, j-wys.
and so the clerkis commanded him anon
that xedis this thing scholde be don.
and anon as they me Fownde,
they scholden slean me that jike stownde,
and my blood forth with hem bere
to kynge Fortager, tyl they comen there,
and don tempre my blood with that mortere;
thanne seiden [they] the towr scholde stondyn there.

Anon kynge fortager thorwh here Red
Sente xij messengeris jn-to every sted,
of wheche xij these fowre now be
that hider ben comen forto seken me.
but ferst alle xij he mad hem to swere,
vppon here Sewranne, to-forn him there,
that be ony weye they scholden me slean
the ferste tyme they myhten me Se.

and as thorwgh the medewe they gonne Ryde
where as manye children pleyden that tyde,
j knew ful wel here cause anon,
and to pe beste of hem alle j gan to to gon,
and him there smot j wondyr sore,
For that j wyste ful wel before
that the werste he wolde sein be me
that he cowde zome thincken jn ony degre.
and that dede j for non othyr thing,
but for these men of me scholde havez knoweng.

Now, maister Blayse," quod merlyne, "j preye the,
So axe now of hem zif this trewe be."

"Now certhes, maister," quod the messengeris, "j-wis,
Ryht as he seith, forsothe now it Js.
as god vs brynge jnto owre contre,
It is ful trewe that he telleth the."

"Now certhes," quod this maister thanne,
"& he mot lyve, he wil ben a wys manne,

2206. MS. feiden the.  2208. MS. Sentè; to added above the line.
and therefor pite it were hym to qwelle
Forsothe, Lordynges, as J 3ow telle.

For vs, be owre Sewraunce, schal he nevere ded be,
For we hadden moche more levere that owre kyng
dysherite vs of al owre worldly thyng.
For ful wel knoweth he that wot al this,
that talent therto haven we non, j-wis.”

Thanne this Blayse clepid Merlyne anon
hym for to axen of a prevy qwestion,
and axede of merlyne ful prevyle
3if they hadden ony wyl hym for to sle.
and merlyn gan to Lawhen & seide: “Nay,
Ful wel here wylle j knowe, jn fay,
for 3e scholen comen and 3oure-self here
of here Sewraunce Jn alle manere.”

Now quod merlyne: “J schal with 3ow go,
3if that 3e welen enswrea me vnto
that 3e scholen me bryngen to-fore þe kyng
with-owten ony harm όpερ bodily hyndryng,
and that non harm be don to me,
tyl þat j haue hym bothe spoken & se.”
So that to hym maden they here Surawnce
him there to bryngen with-owten Nosawnce.

“Now Se j,” quod Blayse to hym anone,
“That thou wilt me beleven here alone.
Now telle thou me thanne what j schal do
of this Book that j have be-gonne so.”

“er that j from the owt this place wil gon.
vndirstondist thou not wel this,
that god to me hath sent, j-wys,
bothe wyt, mynde, and memore
alle manere of things to discrye,
more thanne to ony erthliche man?
this thow supposyst that J kan.
So that they that me supposid to have,

2238. dy/herite, f inserted afterwards.
2266. The line was omitted and then written up the margin.
Merlin directs Blasy to Northumberland, [CH. II.

Therefore I must go with these men to their country and disclose great things.

Thou shalt come thither later on;

but now thou shalt go to Northumberland.

There I will visit thee and help thee on with thy work.

Thy reward shall be great,

and thy book shall be ever loved.

As for my own great labour, it will begin only in the time of the fourth
[leaf 97d] king,

han me forlost, and god wyl me save,
and me hath chosen to his Service,
Swich forto don as j kan devyse,
that non man neper kan don but J,
J seye 30w, maister, ful trewely.
and therefore me behoueth to go
thedyr as these men comen fro
junto this contre to seken me here ;
with hem wyle j forth gon ju fere.
and there schal J so moche thing seyn,
that pe peple in me schal beleven, pleyn,
and holden me for the wisest man one
that on erthe Js except god alone.
and thider schalt jou come and peere fullylle
The werk that j to pe spak of vntylle.
but with me thedyr schalt thou not gone,
but aftyr thedir schal thow comen alone,
and axen jnto Northumberland,
pe whiche is a wilde contre, jou vndirstand.
and peere schalt pow knowelichyng haue
peere forto dwellen and peere to be save.
and thider schal j comen to the
and the Schewen many diuers secre,
& also bryngen to the alle maner of thyng
That behoueth to thy werkyng.
and ful wel alowed schalt thou be
For thy Travaille, ful Sykerle :
jn this world, joye to thy lyf,
and aftir, Endles blisse with-owten stryf.
and as longe as jn this world here
that ony man lyveth jn goddis manere,
that werk evere beloved schal be
and be herd of the peple ful hertyle.
and weteth wel that my gret travaylle
begyneth not jyt, with-owten Faylle,
Ne not ne schal jn non wyse,
Tyl that come the fourthe kyng, a man of pryse.
and jn his tyme myn travaylle Schal be,

2286. thou, corrected from they.
also the adventures of gret Breteygne, sykirle; whose name shall be
hos Name schal ben kyng Arthowr, Arthur.
a ful worthy kyng and of gret honour.
thanne schalt thou comen jnto that contre Then thou shalt come
of whiche that ferst [j] told of the, into the same
countrie.
and thedyr to the schal J fonge
Ful often-tymes, evere amonge, and I will
the forto maken to vndyrstone;
alle thynges that ben don jn breteygne londe, tell all things
and ek that after scholen befalle, about Britain,
Jn thy book to putten hem alle.
For wete thow wel, Jn certeyn,
mochel more schal it be herd, & more pleyn.
For there ne schal nothing jn this lond be,
Nethir litel ne mochel, jn non degre,
Nethir don ne wrowht jn non manere,
That to thy book profitable were,
anon jn thy Book it schal be do,
For knowen schal it be for evere mo.
and the Name of thy Bok schal be
J-clepyd seint Graal, ful Sykirle.”

and thus merlyne to his maister spak there,
and hym thus tolde jn dyvers manere
what maner of thing that he scholde do,
Ere that he diparted his maister fro.
and “maister” he clepid him for this manere,
For maister to his modir he was everywhere.
whanne Blayse with merlyn thus hadde j-spoken,
Thanne was his herte jn joye be-loken,
and to merlyne he seide anon tho:
“what so thou comandest me to do,
and j mowe it don jn ony degre,
J schal it don, ful sekerle.”

Thanne anon merlyne forente ageyn
To the messengeres his weye, ful pleyn,
and seide that he wolde nodes go
his leve of his modir to taken tho.

2312. MS. forft told. 2337. he added above the line.
Merlin takes leave of his mother. [CH. II.

Merlin and Blasy depart in different directions. And thus merlyne of his modir took cownge, and forth with the messengeris wente, ful sikerle. & Blayse wente forthe jnto Northhumberland, lyk as merlyn dyde hym to vndirstond. 2376

Merlin and the four messengers, on their road, overtake a cherl who has bought a pair of strong shoes

Merlin and Blasy depart
in fulfiment
of God's will,
Thanne ledde he these messengeris forth anon, and to his modir gone they gon.

"Swete modyr, j telle now the, here ben comen men from fer contre and of strange place to seken me here, wherfore with hem moste j go jn alle manere. therfore j come my leve to take, that non morneng for me 3e make ; and forto fulfille goddis Servyse Thider most j gon jn alle wyse. For j ne may not his wyl fullfylye, Tyl jnto that Lond j come vntylle, whedir so evere he wil me lede there his wille forto spede. and Blaise, that is 3oure maister dere, thedyr schal komen also jn fere ; So that bothen vs twyne moste 3e forgon, and for vs here behoveth 3ow to dwellen alon."

Thanne seide to hym his Modir agein:

"sethen it may non oper ben, jn certeyn, j comande 3ow to god al-Myht, For it is Nethyr jn my power ne myht 3ow with-holden a3ens 3oure wille, what that evere j seye 3ow vntylle. But siker, sone, and 3oure willes be, j wolde that Blayse schold leven with me."

"Forsothe, modir, he ne may not So, For Nedylynges thedyr moste He go." 2372

The mother commands him to God, and only wishes Blasy could stay.

and that Blasy must go also.
The mother commends him to God, and that Blasy must go also.

and that Blasy must go also.

Thanne ledde he these messengeris forth anon, and to his modir gone they gon.

"Swete modyr, j telle now the, here ben comen men from fer contre and of strange place to seken me here, wherfore with hem moste j go jn alle manere. therfore j come my leve to take, that non morneng for me 3e make ; and forto fulfille goddis Servyse Thider most j gon jn alle wyse. For j ne may not his wyl fullfylye, Tyl jnto that Lond j come vntylle, whedir so evere he wil me lede there his wille forto spede. and Blaise, that is 3oure maister dere, thedyr schal komen also jn fere ; So that bothen vs twyne moste 3e forgon, and for vs here behoveth 3ow to dwellen alon."

Thanne ledde he these messengeris forth anon, and to his modir gone they gon.

"Swete modyr, j telle now the, here ben comen men from fer contre and of strange place to seken me here, wherfore with hem moste j go jn alle manere. therfore j come my leve to take, that non morneng for me 3e make ; and forto fulfille goddis Servyse Thider most j gon jn alle wyse. For j ne may not his wyl fullfylye, Tyl jnto that Lond j come vntylle, whedir so evere he wil me lede there his wille forto spede. and Blaise, that is 3oure maister dere, thedyr schal kommen also jn fere ; So that bothen vs twyne moste 3e forgon, and for vs here behoveth 3ow to dwellen alon."

Thanne seide to hym his Modir agein:

"sethen it may non oper ben, jn certeyn, j comande 3ow to god al-Myht, For it is Nethyr jn my power ne myht 3ow with-holden a3ens 3oure wille, what that evere j seye 3ow vntylle. But siker, sone, and 3oure willes be, j wolde that Blayse schold leven with me."

"Forsothe, modir, he ne may not So, For Nedylynges thedyr moste He go." 2372

Merlin and Blasy depart
in fulfiment
of God's will,
Thanne ledde he these messengeris forth anon, and to his modir gone they gon.

"Swete modyr, j telle now the, here ben comen men from fer contre and of strange place to seken me here, wherfore with hem moste j go jn alle manere. therfore j come my leve to take, that non morneng for me 3e make ; and forto fulfille goddis Servyse Thider most j gon jn alle wyse. For j ne may not his wyl fullfylye, Tyl jnto that Lond j come vntylle, whedir so evere he wil me lede there his wille forto spede. and Blaise, that is 3oure maister dere, thedyr schal kommen also jn fere ; So that bothen vs twyne moste 3e forgon, and for vs here behoveth 3ow to dwellen alon."

Thanne seide to hym his Modir agein:

"sethen it may non oper ben, jn certeyn, j comande 3ow to god al-Myht, For it is Nethyr jn my power ne myht 3ow with-holden a3ens 3oure wille, what that evere j seye 3ow vntylle. But siker, sone, and 3oure willes be, j wolde that Blayse schold leven with me."

"Forsothe, modir, he ne may not So, For Nedylynges thedyr moste He go." 2372
The man with the new shoes.

The man with the new shoes.

and ek strong clowt lethir to sette pere-on.

and whanne that merlyne this cherl gan se,

he gan anon to lawghen ful prevyle.

than ne axed hym the messengeris there

why he lawghed, & wherfore it were.

"Sires, j lawghe," quod merlyne thanne,

"at hym that 3oundir goth, 3one cherlisch manne,

that hym bowht ful stronge schon

and ek stronge clowtes to setten pere-on.

And j 3ow seye, ful certeynly,

that he schal dyen ful sodeynly,

Er that he come to his owne place;

Swich schal ben both his hape & his grace."

and whanne they herden hym, that he seide so,

"Ful mochel merveyl hadden they tho.

thanne seiden they that fayn they wolde knowe

if it scholde happen with-jinne a throwe.

and so that tweyne folwed that jlke veleyne,

and tweyne with merlyne Ryden, certeyn.

they folwed not this cherl passyng a myle,

that he ne was ded with-jinne a whyle,

and euen a-myddes the hye weye,

there gan this veleyne forto deye.

and his schon vndir his arm were,

and ek his clowt lethir also there.

Anon as they hadden seyn this syht,

To here felawes they wenten with al here myht,

tolden hem of that they hadden seyn,

and howh that þe veleyn to-forn hem gan deyen.

"Now certes," quod these messengeris azen,

"alle theke clerkis, but Folys they been,

that wolde don vs this wyse man to sle,

but for non thing jt ne schal not be.

For on myn owne Body levere hadde j here

To suffren gret peynes in dyvers manere,

than ne his body ony harm scholde hane,

also god me wyssse other Save!"

and so they seiden everychon,

alle that with hym gonne forto gon.

thanne thankid they hym al jufere,

and leather to mend them with.

Merlin laughs quietly.

When asked for the reason,

he says the man will die before reaching his home.

Two of the men ride after the rustic,

and see him expire on the road.

They return to their comrades, and tell what they have seen.

These blame the astrologers, who have desired such a wise person's death;

they thank Merlin.
The priest's dead son. [CH. II.

The messengers are amazed at Merlin knowing whatever they speak or do.

Proceeding on their journey,

[leaf 98 b]

they see a child being carried to the grave.

Merlin laughs.

He points to the man weeping behind the bier,

and to the priest singing in front.

The priest ought to weep, says Merlin, for the child is the priest's.

He tells his companions how to ascertain the truth.

of that merveille he told hem there.

and sore a-basched weren they echon,

For they cowlden non thing nethir spoken ne don,

but that he knew alle here entent;

thus thanne seiden they, verament.

Forth thanne Riden they in here jorne,

Ty that in Fortageris lond they be,

and with-junen his strengthe and his powere,

alle the iiij messengers and merlyne in fere.

So that Jt happede vppon a day,

As thorwgh A town thanne lay here Way,

A chyld to-ward Beryeng was there j-bore,

and moche ful sore wepyng was there-fore.

the prestes and clerkis, ful faste they songe,

as lowde as they myghten with here tonge, thanne gan this merlyn to lawghen anon,

as he with his Feleschepe gan forth to gon,

and seide to his felawes: "merveilles J se."

"Now, goode child," quod they, "what mown tho be?"

"Se 3e not," quod merlyn, "now here this goode man that Folweth the bere, that so sore wepeth and maketh swich doel?"

"Jis, sekyr," quod they, "we sen hym wel."

"and se 3e not the priest that gouth to-fore, That so merlyly now syngeth thore?"

"Jis, child, that don we, ful Sykirly." "3e, the Sorwe scholde he maken, trewly,

For, be wyn hevyd, the child is his,

and non thyng his that folweth, j-wys;

& therfore the Sorwe the priest scholde make that the goodman doth For the childis sake."

"what, trownen 3e [not] that the child his be?"

"Nay, Sires," quod merlyne, "ful Sykirle."

"Leve child, how nowen we the sothe knowe?"

"Goth forth," quod merlyne, "on a rowe, and axeth the modyr the cause why why that hire husband wepeth so soryly.

Anon wele schese sein it is for his chyld, that to hym was bothe mek and myld.

2455. MS. 3e that.
and loke that 3e answeren hire ageyn
that it was neuere his, Jn certeyn,
but that the prestes child it Js
That to-forn goth and syngeth, J-wys.”

Forth thanne wente the messengeris anon,
and to this womman there gonnen they gon,
& token hire on syde evene ryht there,
aposynge hire thus jn this manere;
every word, ryht as merlyne bad,
anon to this womman there they sayd.
and whanne this womman herde this,
Ful sore abasched sche was, j-wys,
and to hem seide Jn this manere:
“me thynketh, to 3ow may j not lyen here,
For trewly, as 3e seyn now, it Js,
j may not the contrarye seyn, j-wys.
but lordynges, j preye 3ow for charite
that to my lord ne discureth not me,
For owther he wolde me slen anon,
owther owt of his compenye j scholde be don.”
and whanne they knewen that it was so,
a3en to merlyne gonnen they to go,
and thankyde hym of his Talkyng,
of whiche they hadden gret merveyllgyng.
and so jn here jorne gonnen they ryde,
Towardis kyng Fortager pat same tyde.
and whanne they comen there the kyng was,
thanne seiden tweyne of hem jn that plas,
and spoken to merlyne j[n] the plyht,
that to the kyng wolden they gon ful ryht,
and tellen hym what they han fownde.
thanne preyden they merlyne that jlke stownde
hem forto cownseilhen, what they scholde say,
lest they weren blamed Jn ony way,
For be-cawse they hadden hym not slayn,
as they weren comawnded, jn certayn.
“For, be aventure, we scholben ben schent,
that we ne hadden pe slayn, verament.”

2491. MS. j the.
Merlin instructs the messengers what to relate to King Fortager, and what to demand of him.

"Now, leve Sires," quod merlyne thanne, "and se wil don as 3e schal 30w kenne, J-blamed scholen 3e neuer be
Jn non manere wise, Sires, for me. 2504

Anon to kyng Fortager faste scholen 3e go, and in this wyse that 3e seyne hym vnto :
lik as that 3e haven me 3-fownde, and that 3 kan hym tellen with-june a stownde
why that his towr ne may not stonde; and that wile 3 ful some taken on honde, on covenaut the clerks he wil Slen,
lik as they desireden 3 scholde haue ben. 2512

For telleth hym that 3 knowe the cause why wherfore they wolden me don slen, trewly.
and whan 3e haven told hym al this, loketh his bydylng 3e don with-owten mys.'" 2516

thus departyd the messengeris from hym, trewelye, and to kyng Fortager anon comen they in hye.
whanne that kyng Fortager gan hem beholde, Ful joyful he was Jn many Folde, 2520
and axede of hem how they hadden sped of thike arende that he on hem leyd.
"Sire," quod these messengeris, "so as we myhte, we scholen 30w it tellen anon Ryhte."

thanne took hem the kyng Jn cowseyl anong, and they hym tolde there Ryht son
how that they hadden merlyne 3-fownde, jn what manere, and with-june what stownde. 2528
"and but 3if it hadde ben his owne wille,
we cowde neuer haue comen hym vntylle." thanne seide the kyng to hem Ryht tho:
"what is thike merlyne bat 3e speken of so ?
j bad 30w seken, ful plenerlye, a Fadirles child, ful vterlye,
that was neuere begeten of erthly man ;
of this mater telleth me, as 3e kan! 2536
and perto the blood of hym me bryngye,
this was 3oure charge, with-owten lesyngye."
"Sire, this same merlyne Js he of whom that 3e speken, ful sykylre. 2540
and therto the wisest man he is one
\[\text{pat evere was born, except God alone.}\]
and that oth that 3e maden vs swere,
we han it fulfyld, as 3e now here.”
and zit the messengeris tolden him more,
that his clerkis cowden non skele thore
him forto tellen the cawse why
that his towr myhte not stonden, trewely.
“but anon apertly he wil 3ow telle
why the cause 3oure towr doth falle.
and perfure he vs hyder to the sente
Forto knownen of 3oure entente.
3if that 3e wolden owht with hym speke,
thanne wolde he to 3ow his herte Breke;
and of othir merveilles he wyl 3ow say,
what aftyr schal be-fallen many a day.
and 3if 3e welen, we scholten hym Sie,
For twayne felawes of owre with him be.’’
“Nay,” quod the kyng, “and it be so,
that he cowde syker tellen me vnto
the cause of my towris Fallyng,
thanne wolde j that 3e hym slowen for non thing.
and 3if he cone me tellen, certeynyle,
and that 3e bryngen hym to me.”

Thusson these messengeris gone to gon,
and the kyng aftyr hem prekede anon.
Anon Whanne merlyne Sawgh that messenger,
to hem Spak he anon Ryht ther:
“3owre trowthe to me haven 3e now plyht
me not to deren be day ne be nyht.’’
“thou seist ful trewe,” quothen they anon,
“For vs, certein, harm getyst thou non,
For we hadden levere be aventure to deye
thanme the forto sien, certeynylye.’’
“J schal 3ow tellen,” quod merlyne, “everydel,

2541. MS. therto of the wifest man, the preposition being added above the line. Cf. Notes.
2544. we han corrected from whan, the e being added above the line.
Merlin meets the king.

Merlin rides to meet the king;

Thus with merlyne ryden they forth Jn fere,
Tyl that with kyng Fortager metten they there,
and anon as evere merlyne hym Say,
stryth to the kyng he took his way,
and seide: "sire kyng, ful wel thou be!
A word jn cownseil wolde j spenken with the."

Anon took he there the kyng on syde,
and ek clepede the messengeres at jat tyde
That hym forto seken j-charged were
the sothe of hym forto enqwere.
"why that the Towr stoden ne myhte,
j schal the tellen, Syre, anon Ryhte,
and how jat thou comandedest me to sle
Be the cownseil of clerkys that false be,
and my blood al forto take
and per-with thy morteer for to make.
but jf they Fayllen of here art,
for of that konnenge hauen they non part.
but sire kyng, and you wilt enswyn me here
the same Jewyse to don jn alle manere
yppon hem as thou west hauen don be me,
J schal the tellen, ful sykerle,
the cause why jat thy towr doth falle,
so openly, that jn scholen knowen it alle,
and declare openly alle 3ow be-Fore
how jat it schal lasten for euere more.
3if thou wylt don as j the say,
telle me now, sire kyng, owther jn oper nay."

thanne answered the kyng ageyn:
"3if you do as that you seist, jn certeyn,
the same jewise scholen they have
as you scholdest han had, so god me save."
"go we, sire, thanme," quod merlyne tho,
"thedir that thy towr you begynnest so,
and thike same clerkis brynge with the,
thanne there the sothe xiltest you se,
3if they connen owht seyn, amongst hem alle,

2608. scholdeft; the first vowel is apparently an a.
ch. ii. merlin meets the astrologers.

whi that thy towr doth so down falle.”
so wenten they forth alle in fere,
and the clerkis sent aftyr were
to thike there as the towr was dyht;
theyr comen they alle anon ryht.

and whanne they weren assembled everichon,
merlyne hem thanne aposedan anon,
and axede on of the wysest clerkes
why that so fyl adown the kynges werkes.
thanne answerede this clerk him ageyn:
“we ne commen not it telle, in certeyn,
but the kyng we tolden jn what degre
wherby his werk Sosteyned scholde be.”
“3e,” quod the kyng to the clerkis thanne,
“3e boden me don seken aftyr swich a maune
that Neuere erthly Fadyr hadde,
and hym don Slén, thus 3e me badde,
and Swich a man j Not where to fynde,
For me Wolde thenken Jt Were Al ærens kynde.”
and thanne bespak there merlyne anon,
and seide to tho clerkis everychon:
“Lordynges, a fool that 3e wolde maken the kyng,
To don hym to seken so wondirful a thyng:
That Neuere erthly Fadyr hadde,
jnto this world be born and forth bradde.
but 3e non thyng ne dyden Jt for his prow,
but what the cause was, j schal tellen yt 3ow:
For wel 3e wysten that 3e scholden deye,
but 3if that the trowthe 3e tolden, jn feye.
and for that 3e cowden non othirwyse do,
therefore 3e boden hym Swich a man to slo,
and the Blood of hym al fort to take,
the wheche his Towr stonden Scholde make.
and thus thoughten 3e that man to don sle,
3oure-self to askapen, 3if it myhte be.”
and whanne they herden the chyld thus seyn,
Ful sore abasched weren they, certeyn,

They all go to the tower.
There Merlin asks the astrologers if they can explain its falling.
They say: “No,
but we have told the king a remedy.”

Merlin replies:
“You deluded the king;
The astrologers are confounded.

2640. yt added above the line, y blurred.
Merlin explains why the tower has fallen. [CH. II.

and wisten wel thanne forsothe anon
that deyen scholden they everychon.

“behold, Sire kyng,” quod merlyne tho,
“Now sen here 3e how this doth go,
that these clerkys ne wilen not me don sle,
with my blood 3owre towr j-mad to be,
but that amonges hem loot is pere cast
that for me they mosten deyen Jn hast.
and now axeth hem 3if it be not so,
for seyryr, how so the game now go,
Non of hem js here so hardye
jn my precense to maken ony lye.
“Seyth he soth?” quod the kyng anon.

“3e, Sykerly,” quod the clerkys everychon,
“But we connen not weten, jn non degre,
how that al this thyng knowen scholde he.
Sire, we 3ow preyen as ourre Soverain lord,
alle we 3oure clerkes, be on acord,
that owre lyves 3e wolden graunt ten vs here,
tyl that the Sothe we myhten sen jn Fere,
how that he Scholde this towr don stonde
be ony werck of mannes honde.”

Their request is granted.

Merlin explains all about the tower:

under the ground is a great water,
and under the water two dragons,

one white, the other red,

beginning this crownd, j dar wel lay,
There goth a water bothe sterne & gret,
vndyr wheche water ben there 3et
Tweyne wondyrful Stowte dragowns,

pe moste oryble that ben Jn ony Reyiowns,
of wheche on Js al whit, anothir is Red,
of the dragowns that ben Jn that sted.
The earth under the tower is removed.

Above where the dragon there ben, certeyn, twoyn grete stones, that ben ful pleyn, that over-whelmen bothe the dragon; whiche that ben so wonderful of facious, and whanne thei Felen the water Sore peyse upon hem bothe, & doth hem deseysye, thanne tormen they hem bothe with gret myht, and meveth al the rethe evene vpyrht, whiche meyeng that maketh thy werk to falle; this Scholen 3e knowen bothe gret and smalle. So that my borwes, aqwyt scholen they be, And thy clerkis behoveded, ful trewe. and therfore asaye 3f that J soth seye, owther be ony weys that J do lye. For of this mater thy clerkis knowen non thyng, Ful Siker thou be, For alle here werkyng.” “Now certes,” quod Fortager to merlyne thanne, “and this be soth, thou art a trewe manne, and therfo the wysest that evere was bore of erthlych men that konnen of lore.” “Now, merlyne,” quod kyng Fortagere, “of on thing that thow wost telle me here: how that this erthe myhte be don away; J preye the, merlyne, the Sothe me Say.” “with cartes sone may jt be led henne, & vpon the Bakkes of many menne.” thanne kyng Fortager let ordeynen anon bothe cartes and werkmen many on, and merlyne commanded there in haste that the clerkys Scholden they kepen wel faste. thus werkmen wroghten bothe day & nyht, tyl that to this water they comen ful nyht, and whanne they hadden this water j-fownde, anon they tolden it the kyng that stownde. thanne gan the kyng thedyr to gon with ful gret joye nyht anon, and merlyne with hym thedyr he ladde, For he wroghte alle thyng as he hym badde. 2695. thei, i squeezed in afterwards.
The water is led off.

The king speaks admiringly of Merlin to his council.

He then asks him about the removal of the water.

Ditches are dug.

Merlin predicts that the dragons will fight, and that one will be killed.

He wants all the barons to see the fight.

Messengers are sent out.

Thus weren these ditches sone there mad, as merlyne it ordeynede, comau?jded, and bad. and this water his cows there hadde, and be this craft jnto othire contres ladde.

The water is led off.

This child is wondir wis with-alle, that can thus tellen how it schal falle, and of this water that here now Js;

jt merveyll eth me ful mochel, j-wys.

and seith he that vndir this water so clere ben twayne dragowes dwellyng jn fere, and 3it wet j Neure what j schal do, tyl he som cownsyl 3eve me therto."

Thus were these ditches sone there mad, as merlyne it ordeynede, comau?jded, and bad. and this water his cows there hadde, and be this craft jnto othire contres ladde.

Thanne cam merlyne to kyng fortagere, and thus anon tolde hym there that—"also sone as the dragouns to-cyderes fele, be-twixen hem schal be-gymmen a sory mele, For they to-gederis ful sore scholen fyhte, and the ton the tothyr Schal slen owt ryhte."

and therfore Sende thou thy messengeris anon To alle thy Barowns now everychon, to sen this bataylle that schal ben here of these dragouns that scholen fyhten jn fere ; For the bataylle of hem and that chawnse Nis not with-owten gret Signyfyawnse."

and whanne thider j-come they weren echon, this merveillous water they behelden thusson. thanne to hym clepyd he his cownsaylle, and seide: "lordinges, with-owten Faylle, 2732

this child is wondir wis with-alle, 2736

that can thus tellen how it schal falle, 2740

and of this water that here now Js; 2744

jt merveyleth me ful mochel, j-wys.

and seith he that vndir this water so clere 2748

ben twayne dragowes dwellyng jn fere, and 3it wet j Neure what j schal do, 2752

tyl he som cownsyl 3eve me therto."

Thus were these ditches sone there mad, 2756

as merlyne it ordeynede, comau?jded, and bad. and this water his cows there hadde, 2760

and be this craft jnto othire contres ladde.

Thanne cam merlyne to kyng fortagere, 2764

and thys anon tolde hym there that—"also sone as the dragouns to-cyderes fele, be-twixen hem schal be-gymen a sory mele, For they to-gederis ful sore scholen fyhte, and the ton the tothyr Schal slen owt ryhte."

and therfore Sende thou thy messengeris anon To alle thy Barowns now everychon, to sen this bataylle that schal ben here of these dragouns that scholen fyhten jn fere ; For the bataylle of hem and that chawnse Nis not with-owten gret Signyfyawnse."

and whanne thider j-come they weren echon, this merveillous water they behelden thusson. thanne to hym clepyd he his cownsaylle, and seide: "lordinges, with-owten Faylle, 2732

this child is wondir wis with-alle, 2736

that can thus tellen how it schal falle, 2740

and of this water that here now Js; 2744

jt merveyleth me ful mochel, j-wys.

and seith he that vndir this water so clere 2748

ben twayne dragowes dwellyng jn fere, and 3it wet j Neure what j schal do, 2752

tyl he som cownsyl 3eve me therto."

Thus were these ditches sone there mad, 2756

as merlyne it ordeynede, comau?jded, and bad. and this water his cows there hadde, 2760

and be this craft jnto othire contres ladde.

Thanne cam merlyne to kyng fortagere, 2764

and thys anon tolde hym there that—"also sone as the dragouns to-cyderes fele, be-twixen hem schal be-gymen a sory mele, For they to-gederis ful sore scholen fyhte, and the ton the tothyr Schal slen owt ryhte."

and therfore Sende thou thy messengeris anon To alle thy Barouns now everychon, to sen this bataylle that schal ben here of these dragouns that scholen fyhten jn fere ; For the bataylle of hem and that chawnse Nis not with-owten gret Signyfyawnse."

the first y through correction.
and all others that gon owther ryden myht.
and whanne they weren assembled echon,
than ne seide kyng Fortager to hem anon,
and tolde hem of manye a wondyr thyng
That scholde be-falle be merlynes talkyng,
And How the two dragowns to-gederes scholen fyhte,
and the ton the tothyr to sien anon Ryhte.

2768 The assem-
blèd people
are informed of Merlin's
predictions,

2772 and wonder
which of the
dragons is to
survive.

2776 The water be-
ing drained,
two stones
appear to
view.

2780 The king
asks how
these stones
can be re-
moved,

2784 and which of
the dragons
is to die.

2788 Thanne axede
Fortager of merlyne anon
how thyke stones a-wey myhte ben don.
"gis, gis," quod merlyne, "that Schal be do,
and non man to haren the worth of a slo.
For they scholen neven nevere a del,
Tyl that ech other may Felen Ryht wel;
and thanne to-gederis Scholen they fyhte,
Til the ton moste deyen be Ryhte."

2792 Thanne axede the kyng which of hem twayne
whiche ded that scholde ben, certeyne.
"Jn here Bataylle there schal be
Ful gret Signysiaunce, J telle the,
and that ful gladly j wyle the Schewe
aforn thre of thy Barowns on a rowe."

2796 Before three
barons, who
enjoy the
king's par-
ticular con-
fidences,

2800 thanne clepede Fortager to hym anon
thre Barowns that he trostyd most vppon.
Anon seide merlyne to hym thanne:
"Trostist thow wel on these thre mene,
and ben they trewe of thy cowsnaille,
what so evere it may avaylle?"
"3e, Sekery, merlyne," quod Fortager,
"Non trewere knowe j neper fer ne neer."
"thanne may J," quod merlyne, "tell the
of swich thynge as thow tellest me.
J wele that thow knowe here, jn certayn,
that the rede be the white schal ben slayn.
but fyrst gret peyne Schal he have,
er from the rede he may gon save.
and the deth of the rede dragown
Schal notyse ful gret Significacioun,
and the victorye of the dragown so whyt.
For the it is ful hard to knowen Jt,
but tyl that the Bataylle be alle j-do,
of this thing schalt thou knowen no mo."

whanne this peple thidir comen echon,
Ful hastely hadden they vpe the ston.
thanne Syen they this whyte dragown,
that was wondyr oryble of Facyown.
and whanne this peple this dragown there say,
they weren sore abaschet, alle with-owten nay.
and whanne that thus they hadden J-do,

To the tothyr ston wente they tho.
whanne the rede dragown syen they there,
that more oryble was thanne the toper were.
thanne was the peple abasched wel more
an hundred Fold thanne they weren to-fore;
For more Feers he was & more hydows,
also more egre, & mochel more Spytows,
thanne the whyte was Jn ony degre,
thus thoughte the peple, ful certeynle.

So that thoughte kyng Fortager
that the rede the white scholde scomfyten ther.
thanne seide merlyne to the kyng :
"Now haue my borwes excused for alle thyng!"
"merlyne," quod Fortager, "so they be,
Of alle thinges qwyt, ful Sekerle."
Thanne to-gederis Ronnen these dragowns tweyne
Ful vigorously there, Jn certeynle,

with here teeth and here pawes so scharpe,
that wondyr Jt is of here Fyhtyng to carpe.
Fo[?] Neure herden 3e telle into this day

2839. tweyne, the last letters almost obliterated.
2843. MS. fó.
Of tweyne bestes swich anothir a fray,
and thus veleynesly gommen they fyhte
al that day, tyl it was Nyhte,
and vpon the morwe, tyl it was day,
So that al the peple that the bataylle say,
wenden pot the rede pe whyte scholde han slayn,
so spetows was pe bataylle betwixen hem tweyn;
Tyl atte laste the white dragown
caste fyr on pe rede abowtes in vyrown,
and hym there brende to the ded;
So hadde the white victore in that sted.
and the thrydde day aftyr next sewenge
Deyde the white dragown, with-owten lesenge.
So that they sayden thanne everychon
that so gret a merveille seyn they Neuere non.

thanne quod merlyne to kyng Fortagere:
"Now begynne thy towr, and maket here
as gret as pou wylt, and also hy,
For it schal neuere fallen, treuly."

Thanne comanded Fortager anon
that in haste this werk scholde be don.
So that this towr they xaden ful hy,
Ful large, and Ryht strong, sekerly.

thanne of merlyne often axede pe kyng
what of the dragouns was pe signefyeng.
"Sire kyng, it is forto Signefye
thynges pat han ben & scholen ben, trewelye;
and 3if that thou wylt enswren me here
me not to deseisen Ju non manere,
ne non man with-jnne thy kyngdom
To don me non maner of distroccion,
J schal the tellen the Signefyaunce
a-forn thy cownseyl, with-owten dowtaunce."

thanne kyng Fortager ensured hym anon,
that Neuere harm to hym scholde be don.
"go thanne faste," quod merlyne anon,
"and sende aftyr thy cownseyl everychon,
and also aftyr thy clerkis ju fere,

2876. thy, h inserted afterwards.
Merlin reproves and releases the astrologers. [CH. II.

To heren what that j schal seyen here."

thanne dede fortager his comandement;
and whanne they weren comen alle present,
thanne seide merlyne amonges hem alle:
"3e cleriks ben folys, what so beftale,
to entermeten 3ow of ony thynge,
but 3if 3e cowden bryngen it to endyng.
and in as moche as folys that 3e be,
and fowle han faylled, ful certeinle,
3e ben worthy to haven 3owre gwerdon,
that 3e han deservyd be ryht reson.
wel wot j 3e syen that j was bore,
but he that schewedede it to 3ow there,
schewed 3ow there ful openlye
that For me scholden 3e Nedys deye;
and also gret doel he schewed 3ow there,
For he hadde me lost jn swich manere;
whiche was 3oure cause, ful certeynyle,
to comandden kyng Fortager me forto sle.
but swych a lord j hope that j have,
thorwgh goddis helpe, me forto save;
and the devel a lyere schal j make,
3e scholen neuere deyen for my sake,
3if that Sewrawnce 3e wylen me do
of thynge that j schal spaken 3ow vnto."
Whanne that they Herdyn merlyne so seyn,
thanne ful of Joyce weren they, ful pleyn,
So of here deth exceded to be,
and seiden to merlyne ful benyngele:
"what evere thou biddist vs to don,
we scholen it Fulsllen Ryht anon.
For we knowen wel, with-owten lesynge,
that jou art the wyset man levenge."
"3e scholen me ensuren, er that 3e gon,
of this craft neuere to entermeten Non.
and j commande 3ow alle jn fere
To ben confessid with herte clere,
and 3oure flesch to putten jn discyplyne
to strong subieciown & to gret pyne,
that 3owre Sowles ne dampued be;
doth as j cownseille 3ow, certeinle!"
So that they thankyd hym everychon,
and grauntyd his commaundement to don.

Thus merlyne deliuered the clerkys echon,
that hym deden seken for this encheson.
thanne to merlyne spak kyng Fortagere:
"thou behyghtest forto tellen me here
the signefyaciown of the dragawns tweyne."
"The white dragown, j telle the certeyne,
Signefyeth here the sone of costantyn,
That falsly was browht to evele fyn."
and whanne Fortagere herde this,
Ful sore he was aschamed, J-wys.
Thanne seide merlyne to Fortagere aye:
"and thou wylt konnen me non mawgre,
j schal the tellen the syngnefyaunce
of alle thynges, with-owten dowtauunce."
"here Js non man," quod Fortagere thanne,
"but of my cownseyl every mane;
where-fore, Sire merlyne, j preye the
the syngnefyaunce that pou wost tellen me."
"The rede dragown here doth syngnefye
thyn owne persone, ful trewelye;
and why, Sire, and jn what manere,
J schal tellen the anon Ryht here.
wel knowest thou, kyng Fortagere,
that kyng costantynes children al jn fere
dwelden here aftyr here Fadris ded,
that hadden Neyther cownseyl ne ned.
and jf pou haddest don thy dever, trewely,
thou scholdest hem han kept ful tendyrly,
and to have 30ven hem ful trewe cowsaylle,
that myhte ony thyng to the newm avaylle.
and wel knowest thou jn what manere
the hertes of the peple thou hast geten here.
and whanne thou knew alle here entent,
and that they loveden the, verament,
Merlin reproves Fortager.

| His refusal to help the young king; | thanne, whanne thou knew this, certeynly, From alle maner of Nedis thou withdrewth the, and thanne that the peple Sowhte socowr of the to haven For here grete langowr, and the desireden kyng forto han ben, thou hem answeredest as thou schalt sen: Ful smoetheliche and in this manere To hem thou answeredest, al in fere, that thow woldest neuere here kyng be, whyles that the kyng lyvede, ful sykerle. Thanne they that thou toldest to this tale, Thowghten the kyng to werkyn Bale, and knewen wel be thy maner of spekyng that thou desiredest the kynges xordryng; and so hym they slownen ful falsly, thanne fledden bothe his brethren ful prevyly For the drede that they hadde of the, and thus art thou kyng ful falsle, And thus the Regne thou ocupyest With Wrong, and gret distrocciown dost evere among. thanne, whanne they comen azen to the be whiche the kyng ded was, Sykerle, thanne distroyedest thou hem everychon, so that on lyve ne lefte not on."
| His artful manner of rejecting the crown; | thanne seide the cownseil to Fortager there: "Herkene what merlyne seith now here." "3is, Forsothe," quod kyng Fortager, "He seyth ful soth that he seith her, and j knowe ful wel that thou art a passing wis man jn every part. but of on thing, merlyne, j preye to the the sothe that thou wost tellen to me: on what deth that J schal deye." "that kan j wel," quod merlyne, "trewelye. have j not told to the the signyfiauice of bothe dragounz, with-owten varyauce? 3it j wele that thou knowe be me that the rede dragown, Sykerle, thanne distroyedest thou hem everychon, so that on lyve ne lefte not on."
| The murder of King Costantine; the flight of the princes; | 2960
| And the execution of the regicides. | 2964
| Fortager acknowledges the truth of Merlin's words; | 2968
| and desires to know about his own death. | 2972
| Merlin applies more distinctly to Fortager what he has said of the red | 2976
| ch. II. | 2980

2980. del, the last d through correction.
2994. varyauce, v corrected from f.
Signefyeth thyn owne persone,
that was so strong and myhty of bone;
and the whit dragown signefieth, certeinle,
the tweyne bretheren that now fled j-be,
For drede that thou wost han hem slayn;
this js the signyfyauunce, Ju certayn.
and why so longe they fowhten so snelle,
the signyfyauunce j schal the telle:
jt signyfieth that thou hast so long j-holde
wrongfully here erytage with werkis bolde.
and \*at the white dragown pe Rede brende so,
the same the children scholen the do,
and knowe thou wel now, jn certeyn,
that thike tyme thy towr stont but jn veyn,
and the ne schal waraunte nonthyng, ju feye;
and jn this maner, Fortager, schalt thou deye."
thanze, whanze Fortager herde this,
anon he axede of merlyne, J-wys,
where that thyke tweyne children be.
"jn the see," quod merlyne, "ful Sykerle,
with ful gret strengthe and gret Nayve,
into this lond to a-ryven, ful Sekerlye,
veniance of the to taken here,
that slowh here brothir ju swich manere.
and wete thou wel, with-jinne thre monthis day
they scholen aryven, sire, ju good fay!"

Ful sory was kyng Fortager tho,
whanne he herde tellen it scholde be so,
and axede of merlyne anon Ryht
3if that ony othirwyse it myhte ben dyht.
"Nay, syker, Fortager," quod merlyne tho,
"Non othirwyse now ne may it go."
and whanne that fortager wiste al this,
that tho children scholde komen, j-wys,
thanze warnede he his peple anon
that to hym scholden they komen ful son,
ajens that jike same day
That merlyne hym of tolde, with-owten Nay.

MERLIN.
Arrival of Pendragon and Uther. [CH. III.

Fortager goes to Winchester. 
So that to wincheste he gan to go, and al his power with him tho.
but the cauwe wiste yeuere a man, but they that of his cowmseyyl were than.
and whaun merlyne hadde endyd this matre, thanne took he his love of kyng Fortager, and thanne forth to blase he gan to gon, and told hym of these merveilles echon.

Merlin goes to Northumberland. 

[leaf 160 e]
and stays with Blayse. 
So that Blayse gan hem to Wryte, and jnto his Book forto endyte.

The people of Winchester see a large fleet approaching. 
So that merlyne with Blayse dwellede there, tyl pe bretheren aftyr hym gonnemen enquere, and kyng Fortager at wincheste abod, as he be merlyne ferst vndirstood. And that same day, with-owten lesynge, the peple of Wynchestre syen comenge

Fortager orders his men to defend the harbour. 

The fleet lands.

They perceive the banners of their rightfyl king.

So that to wynchestre he gan to go, and al his power with him tho. but the cauwist wiste neuer a man, but they that of his counseyyl were than. and whaune merlyne hadde endyd this mater, thanne took he his love of kyng Fortager, and thanne forth to blase he gan to gon, and told hym of these merveilles echon.

So that Blayse gan hem to Wryte, and jnto his Book forto endyte.

and stays with Blayse.

The people of Winchester see a large fleet approaching.

Fortager orders his men to defend the harbour.

They perceive the banners of their rightful king.

So that these vesselis aryvede to londe, as J do 3ow to vndirstonde.

3036. and, a partly obliterated.
CH. III. | Pendragon is made king. Death of Fortager.

What manere of peple was there with-june.
thanne answerid they, & wolde not blyne:
"They ben the vesselis of Pendragown,
that to this Rewm hath good Resown; .
and also vter, his brothir so dere,
juto his Rewm with him cometh here
of Fortager Forto taken venianunce,
that hem hath don ful gret Noysaunce,
and as a fals man, J vndirstond,
vntrrewely & vniostly halt he here lond."
and whanne that the peple vndirstod this,
that it was here owne lord, J-wys,
That with hym browhte so gret meyne,
thanne weren they abasched, ful Sykyrle,
and nolden non thynge azens hem do,
Lest aftyr it myhte hem tornen to moche wo,
and comen and seiden to Fortager,
that azens hem wolden they not fyhten ther.
and whanne Fortager this vndirstood,
thanne for wraththe he was nyhe wood.
thanne spak he to his owne men,
that hym wolde not Forsaken than,
the castel wel to kepen ouer alle thyngh.
so seyden they wolden, with-owten faylyng.
thanne a-ryvede these schepis there anon,
and the peple of the cunte thider faste gone gon,
and azens hym they wenten be on acord,
& there hym receyveden as here lord.
thanne kyng Fortager with his meyne,
to his castel wenten they ful hastyle.
and there bothe brethren be on asent
hym vigorously asayllede, verament.
So that Pandragon Fyr dede jn caste
jnto that castel, that brende ryht faste,
where-june this Fortager Syker was brennt,
as this storye scheweth, verament.
And thus tooken bothe bretheryn Jn Fere
harde venianunce on here enemies there.

3093. he added above the line.
Fortager's kinsmen. Search for Merlin. [CH. III.

than the kynnes-men of Fortager

upon the cristene wereden the,),

and the twyne bretheren gonnen hem asaylle,

and into a castel-hem droven, Sauns fayllc.

than thee took Pandragon cownseyly there,

and vter his brothyr, alle Jn fere,

how that thike castel they myghten wynne

and sk the peple that was with-jynne.

at whichone cownseyly fyve barouns there were,

that to-form tyne the dragawns syen fyhten there,

and herden al the significaciown.

how that merlyne tolde al & Som

of the twyne dragouns to Fortager,

To Pandragown and to his brothir they tolden ther,

and of the merveylles everychon

that merlyne hem tolde be on and be on.

"and wete 3e wel, Syres, that he Js on

the wysest man, except god alon."

than thee seide Pandragown to these Barowns:

"where dwellith that man & in whiche Regyowns?"

"we weten xenere," quod they ageyn,

"where hym to fynden, Jn certeyn,

Neper jn what contre hym to have,

also god oure sowles moot save!

and zif he be owht jn this partye,

we scholen hym fynde, wel Sekerlye."

than thee forth sente pandragown anon

messegeris, as faste as they cowde gon,

To serchen al the lond owt ryht,

zif that there cowde ony wyht

hem tellen merlyne Forto Fynde,

that holden was so gentyl & kynde.

And merlyne, that knew al this ful wel,

Tolde it to Blayse thanne everydel,

and from Blayse thanzne wente anon,

& Forth to a town he gan to gon,

there as the messengeris at vete were.

and jn this cyse to hem cam he there:

3113. MS. kin. 3130. in added above the line.
3141. "fynde, a corrected from y."
lik as a schepperde he hadde j-be,

CH. III. Merlin appears as a shepherd. 85

with a staf on his nekke, ful sekerle,
and ek a peyre of ful Boystous schoon,
vpon his Feet thanne were they doon,
and vpon hym a clowted cote,

3152

that heng adown abowtere his throte,

3156

and therto he hadde a ful gret berd,
perwith to han mad many men aferd,

So that he Semede jn alle degre
a man of evele lykyng, ful sekyrl.
and thus to pe same place he cam anon

3160

deras pe messengers eten everichon,


and seide to hem Jn this manere:
"Ful evele don 3ooure dever here

3164

and youre lordis arende also,
Forte Seken merlyne that 3e scholden go."

He appears in the shape of a shepherd,

3168

and whanme they herde thus hym Seyn,
"what jn pe devellis name, be-hold this veleyn!

3172

where-offen with sorwe smatyth he
of ony thing that to vs longeth forto be?"

They are indignant.

3176

"jn feith," quod Merlyne thanne ageyn,
"and j hym scholde seken, jn certeyn,

3180

j scholde hym Fynde Sonnere thanne 3e,

He adds that he could find Merlin

3184

j telle 3ow, Sires, ful Sykerle."

They then rise and ask if he knows


thanne nesen these messengers anon,


and toward merlyne they gonne to gon,
& him pere axede anon Ryht
3if he him knew be day oher be Nyht.

[leaf 101 a]

3ys, Forsothe, J Knowe Hym Ryht Wel
and al his abydyng every del.

"Yes,° says Merlin,

but that he tolde me, Jn certeyn,
that 3owre travaylle was but jn veyn;
For though 3e fownden him jn this contre,

3186

with 3ow wolde he not gon, Sykerle.

they corrected from they.

but goth to 3owre lord now ageyn faste,
and that the castel to taken he have non haste,
tyl that Augwyys be ded other slayn,
of wheeche castel he js lord, certayn.

3166. MS. devellifname.
3176. he corrected from they.
—two of those five barons are dead already—

and wete 3e wel that of thyke barownes fyve there ben but thre now left on lyve,
that Ferst tolden the kyng of merlyne,
whiche that cowde so mochel of devyne.
and perfore to 3owre lord that 3e telle,
what maner aventure so hym befalle,
3if that merlyne he wyle with speke,
jipto this contre hym-Self moste reke,
and aftyr him Serchen in market & town abowtes al this contre Jn vyrown.”

The messengers look at each other in surprise, and Merlin disappears.
The messengeris vndirstoden riht wel
what to hem that seide merlyne everydel,
an ech of hem on other lokede welsefaste;
thussone merlyne owt of here syhte was paste.
thanne spoken they to-gederes hem be-twene:
“with the devel haven we spoken, j wene.
what Scholen we don of this mateer
That he to vs spak of now heer?”
“Infeyth,” quod on of that compenye,
“To owre lord welsefaste we scholen vs hye,
and afor hym to rehersen we scholen ben bolde
every word as this man hath vs tolde,”
and forth they ryden everychon,
Tyl jnto that ost they comen anon
There as the kyng was with his meyne;
Stryght to hym comez they, ful Sykerle.
whanne pat kyng Pandragoon gan be-holde,
For joye he be-gan his armes to Fole,
and hem axede anon there presente:
“han 3e owht Fownde for that 3e wente?”
“The sothe to tellen we 3ow ens unr, how it vs happede, and what aventure.”
That tolden they the kyng, with-owten lak,
jiu what maner this velyn to hem Spak.
whanne they that herden hem spoken jn this manere,
that to-forn tyme knewen merlyne there,
Merveyllede that ony so hydows a man
to hem swich materis Scholde meven than.
For they wisten not, with-owten dowtance,
that merlyne cowde taken ony oper semblance but onlyche his owne Jn properte;
Of this merveyleden they, ful certeynle.
but thanne wisten they there ageyn
that no mane ne cowde not, jn certeyn,
tellen of tho wondris alle
Sauf on[l]y merlyne, how so befalle.
thanne axedon [they] pe messengeris jn hye
jn what maner of contre that they hym sye.
thanne answerede the messengeris ageyn:
"To oure Jn he cam, Jn certeyn,
there as we eten, 3e mown vndestond,
jn the contre of Northhumberlond."
thanne seiden they holiche, al that rowte,
that jt was merlyne with-owten dowte,
& that he desirede aftyr here knoweng,
onliche that there him scholde seken the kyng.

and whanne they kommen jnto Northhumberlond,
as J do 3ow utterly forto vndestond,
Non tydynges ne cowden they heren ther
of merlyne, the devyn, nethir Fer ne Ner.
and as the kyng there gan forth to Ryde
Jn his jornes be eche a syde,

and as thorwgh a pleyn he gan to gon
and with him his meyne everichon,
they syen a drove of bestes ful gret
and therto an herdeman keping that hepe.
so that they axede hym anon
when he was, & whedir he wolde gon,
"Sires, j do 3ow to vndestonde
that j am of Northhumberlond.
and Rihtnow a good man cam to me,
and seide that kyng Pendragon sikerle
jn this contre a man scholde Seke
that is bothe wys, good, and meke."
"that is fulsoth," quothen they thanne,
"kanst þou vs owht tellen of that manne?"

3228. MS. ony. 3232. MS. axedon pe.
3233. MS. axedon pe. 3236. Hearing that
3237. there, the first e blurred. the incident
3238. 3240. all feel convinced.
3241. e added in the left margin. 3244. utterly, v blurred.
3244. Northumberland
3246. [leaf 101 b]
3248. The king goes to
3250. search of
3252. The herd
3254. Northumberland
3254. In
3256. The herd
3258. about Merlin.
Merlin appears as a cowherd.

The herd says he has some news to impart to the king privately, but is not willing to leave his cattle.

The king is informed, and comes quickly to the spot.

"Thou seekest Merlin," says the herd.

"Go into the nearest town, and he shall come to thee.

The king believes him.

"Sire kyng, forsothe J telle now the that merlyne thou sekyst, ful sekyrle.

but to fynden he is ful ylle, but 3if hym-self wile concente pertylle.

And therefore into the nexte town thou go, and thusson he schal kommen the to.

with the [to spe]ken þere wil he ful nyght, J sey the tr[ewe]ly, ful gentyl knyght."

"how schal j hym knownen ?" quod the kyng, "but 3if of hym J hadde son tokenying ?"

"Sire kyng, 3if that thou leve not me, Sey ellis of fals cowseyn that j be !"

"J mistroste not," quod the kyng tho, "But that it is trewe thou seist me to."

3293-94. Hole burnt in the paper.
3300. ð, corrected from is.
Merlin appears as a seemly man.

so paste the kyng thane forth anon
ownt of that forest, to towne gan he gon.
And thusse to hym cam there
a seemly man, arrayed in anest manere,
and seide: "sire kyng, welfounde 3e be!
Merlyne, the devyn, sente me to the,
and sente the to seyne, ful sekerlye,
that the same was merleyne, trewelye,
whiche kepeth the bestest in her pasture,
And, sire, be this token, J 3ow ensure,
that to townes scholde he comen to the,
whanne pou of hym haddest nede, sikerle.
But non gret mester 3it Hast thow,
and of goode tydynges J schal telle the now,
that merlyne sente the to say
by me, sire kyng, this same day.
knowe thou wel, for certeynylle,
that kyng haugwis is ded, trewelye,
and 3at thy brothir vter hath hym slayn,
wite thou wel this, pandragon, ju certayn."
and whanne the kyng herde this,
Ful mochel thanne he merveilled, j-wys.
"Js this trewe that thou tellest me?"
"Sire, 3e, for he wyle not lyen, sykerle,
and a fool thou art, but thou it leve,
For here-offen the sothe wel schalt pou preve."

Thanne charged the kyng twayne messengeris anon
that In alle haste they scholden gon—
"to knowen 3if this thing now trewe be,
and doth me to wetene ful hastyle."
so forth reden the messengeris anon,
and with othir messengeris metten they thusson,
From vter to pandragown, ju that sted,
hym forto tellen how haugwys was ded.
whanne be messengeris thus metten ju fere,
a3en to-gideris tornede [they] in fayr manere,
and hym tolden ju countseyl, certayn,

In the town
there comes

a seemly man,

who tells that
the herd and
Merlin are
the same
person,

that Merlin
will visit him
in time of
need,

[leaf 101 e]
Merlin appears again in a similar shape. [CH. III.

The king enjoins secrecy, and is full of wonder.

When coming out of church the same day, he is accused by a seemly man, who says he is Merlin.

The king's followers are summoned;

they say they would certainly recognize Merlin, if they saw him.

in what maner vter hangwys hadde siayn.

thanne charged the kyng hem ful hyghly

that this thing, algates to kepen Jt prevy,

and mervellede grethliche ouer alle thyng

how merlyne of this scholde haue knoweng,

and Jn his herte mervelled ful gretle

Jn what maner that hangwys ded scholde be,

and thowhte of merlyne more to enqwere,

jif of that mater he cowde tellen hym there.

so that al a day in that town gan he abyde,

and as from the mynstre he cam fat tyde,

with hym there mette a semly man,

and to kyng Pandragon he seide than:

“Sire kyng, al heyl and wel thou be!

here in this town what thyng seken 3e?”

“j abyde merlyne,” quod the kyng,

“with hym to haue som maner of spekyng,”

“Sire kyng,” quod this good man thanne,

“j ne hold 3ow not 3it so wys a manne

merlyne to knowen, thowgh 3e hym sye,

J sey 3ow, sire kyng, ful sekyrlye.

and perfore clepeth hem that him han se,

and axe of hem jif that merlyne j be.”

So that the kyng, for hem he sente anon,

and toforn hym comen they everychon.

“Lordynges,” quod the kyng to hem thanne,

“here byden we merlyne, pat worthy manne.

Js pere ony of 3ow that hym kan knowe,

and he here stood jn this Rowe?”

“Forsothe, sire kyng, that may not be

but 3if we hym Syen, ful sikerle.”

thanne seide this goodman to the kyng:

“this were now a wondirful thing,

how that anothir man they scholde knowe,

whanne pat hem-self they konnen neper hy ne lowe.”

thanne answered these lordis ageyn:

“his werkis we knowen not, in certeyn,

but his Semblance we knowen ful wel,

3373, an/icroed, the first c corrected from r.
Merlin throws off his disguise.

and we hym syen everydel.”

than ne seide this goodman to hem ageyn:
“how scholde 3e ony man knowen, jm certeyn,
but 3if 3e knowen his Semblance?
This Were to me a Wondyrful chawnce.”

than me clepede merlyne the kyng anon,
and jnto a prevy chambre they gonne to gon,
and seide: “sire kyng, I am joyful of the
and of 3oue brothyry, sire, ful certeinle.
For J am the same persone, with-owten dwere,
that 3e comen forto Seken here.
Now goth owt of this chambre anon,
and ledeth me toforn hem Echon
that tolden to 3ow they cowde knowen me,
and they alle wylen seyn, ful sykerle,
that 3e haven fownden the same merlyne
whiche that they clepen the goode devyne.”

than ne wente Pandragown forth anon,
and clepid his meyne everychon.
than me took merlyne his owne Semblance,
that he toforn hadde, with-owten variaunce.
and than me, anoz as they hym Sye,
they seiden it was merlyne, trewlye.
“than ne avyse 3ow wel,” quod the kyng,
“that it be merlyne with-owten lesyng.”
and they seiden: “wel we hym knowe
among alle this peple jm this Rowe.”
“j wolde fayn weten,” quod the kyng,
“3if j evere to 3ow spak ony thyng,
er that j cam jnto this town;
of this wolde j fayn knowen pe resown.”
“Sire,” quod merlyne to the kyng thanne,
“For certeyn, J am the same manne
that walkede 3ondir jm 3one forestes,
kepyng alle tho forseid bestes,
also the same man am J
that told 3ow of haugwys, trewely.”

than ne seide the kyng to hem ageyn:
“Evele knowen 3e merlyne, jm certeyn!”

than me axede the kyng of merlyne there
Merlin's account of Augwis' death. [CH. III.

how of augwis he knew and in what manere.
“Sire,” quod Merlyne, “as it not ben scholde, Augwys vter mordred han wolde. Anon to thy brothyr j wente in hye, and told hym al his purpos vterlye, and how that augwys hym ordeynede to sle; al this j told hym, ful Sykerle. and 3it he ne wolde not me beleve, tyl that the sothe him-self deye preve. so that 3ower brothir wook alone al nyht, tyl that the sothe he preven nyht, and evere awayted the comenge of Augwis, pat was so crewel a kynge.
thanne atte laste cam this haugwis jnto vteris pavylyw, pat was of prys. and 3oure brothir let hym entren anon, with a scharpe knyf drawen, jnto his won, hym forto hanen slayn, verayment. so pat vter he sowhate al abowtes pe tent, but he ne cowde hym not Fynde, wherfore he xornede jn his wynde. and owt azen he wolde han gon, but 3oure brothir mette with hym anon. So there fowhten they to-gederis, jn certayyn, that vter, 3oure brothyr, hath hym slayn.”

Whanne that the kyng herde al this, anon he axede of hym, j-wis, jn what Semblance he myhte be, whanne that with his brothir spak he. “Sire,” quod Merlyne thanne a-geyn, “Jn lykenesse of an old man, certeyyn.” “Tolde 3e Owht hym What man 3e Were?” “Nay, sire,” quod merlyne, “jn non manere; Nethyr he ne schal not it knowen for me, tyl 3ower-Self it hym telle, ful Sikerle.” Thanne seide to hym Pandragown, the kyng: “Now, dere Frend, j preye 3ow ouer alle thyng that 3e wylen now gon with me, For of 3oure cownsyel have j xede, purde.”
“Sire, thanzne sone wyle zowre meyne wroth be, 3if that 3e Welen owht leven on me.”

“merlyne, 3e han so mochel to me told of vter, my brothir, many fold, that 3if it now soth be,

For eevere schal j now leven on the.”

“thanne vudirstonde 3e, with-owten varyauance, pat J to zowre [brothir] schal spaken jn the same semblauce that J was, whanne j hym tolde, certeyn, how that haugwys hym wolde han slayn, and that with-june this viij dayes it schal be.”

“thanne preye j 3ow, merlyne, for charite, that j xoot knownen the same Face, whazne 3e with hym spaken jn ony place.”

“that scholen 3e, Sire, with good wille. but of on thyng J Sey 3ow vntille :

that 3if Evere ony love 3e wyle haven of me, So that 3e kepen Jt Jn prevyte.”

Thus aqweyntyd merlyne with Pendragown, and of hym took leve Jn that town.

So Forth to Blasye he gan to gon, and dide hym it putten jn scripture anon, that so be hym knowen we this storye, wheche to vs is put Jn memorye. And Pandragown held forth his weye, tyl that to his brothyr he cam, jn feye. & whazne that vter his brothyr Say, Ful mochel Joyce he made that day, and took the kyng anon on side, and þere hym tolde that ilke tyde

how that haugwis he had slayn, lik as merlyne him ferst hadde told, certeyn.

“Now, goode brother, what myht he be, That ferst discured to zow þis destyne ?”

“Now, so me god helpe,” quod vter thanne, “j merveillede neuere so mochel of manne.

3462. MS. zowre’ schal.
3487-88. These two lines were omitted and then written up the margin.
Of that 3e me Seyn 3n this throwe

whiche j wende neuer but that god and j hadde knowe.

and therafore I preye 3ow, for charyte,

how that 3e jt wiste, now tellyth me.”

“J seye 3ow sekerly,” quod Pandragown,

“j Jt now knowe be good Resown.

but, brothir vter, what good man was he

that from the deth warawnted the?”

“be the oth jat j owe to 3ow, my kyng,

j schal 3ow trewly seyn, to my knoweng.

j not what maner of man jt was,

but a good man he semede jn ever plas,

and therefore the bettere j gan hym leve,

For aftyr, the sothe he dede me preve.”

“Cowde 3e hym knowen,” quod Pandragown tho,

“jn ony place and he to-fore 3ow go?”

“3e, sire, forsothe,” quod vter thanne,

“J schal hym knowen to-forn anothir manne.”

“wel, Sire vter, thanne warne j the

that with-jnne xij dayes he wyle here be,

and only with 3ow wil he speke,

and to 3ow his herte wyle he breke.

but of on thing j preye 3ow, certeinle :

that al that day 3e ben to-forn me,

that j mylhte knowen, as wel as 3e,

what maner of man jat so he be.”

And vter be-hyghte that so he Wolde,

and not to letten for 3ong neper olde.

and thus bothe the bretheren Jn fere

of diuers materis spoken there.

and merlyne forth to Blasye wente,

and tolde hym alle these poyntes, veramente,

how the twyne bretheryn of hym goonne speke,

& how jat vter of his fo gan hym wreke,

and how that Pandragown wolde hym asaye

be many poyntes and many a waye.

thanne axede blasie of merlyne there

how they lyvelden and jn what manere.

3491. The first j added above the line.
3492. The first j added above the line.
3496. blufic added above the line.
3497. blufic added above the line.
3498. blufic added above the line.
3500. blufic added above the line.
3504. blufic added above the line.
3508. blufic added above the line.
3512. blufic added above the line.
3516. blufic added above the line.
3520. blufic added above the line.
3524. merlyne added above the line.
3528. merlyne added above the line.
Merlin appears as a courier.

thanene seide merlyne to blasie ageyn
that—"bothe ben they songe men, in certeyn,
and gret nede they haven of good crownsaylle
of swich a man that myhte hem avaylle.
but fyrist intto mirthe j wolde hem drawe
with lawghenges & boordes to maken hem fawe.
For j wot wel where woneth a fayr lady
that vter Loveth, paramours, trewely,
and so streyht to hym wyl j gon
with a lettre from his love anon.
For j knowe alle the wordis preve
that betwixen hem to-fore tymhe hath be."

And pe xj day thanne next Sewenge,
To cowrt cam merlyne faste renenge
jn liknesse of a groom messenger
that from his Love to hym cam ther,
and seide : "my lady greteth 3ow wel
with herte and Body Everydel,
and sente 3ow here a lettre to rede
alone be 3oure-self jn prevy stede."
thanene took vter this lettre, verament,
and wende his love hadde it hym sent,
and ryht gret Joye he gan to make
of pe lettre for his loves sake.
thanene spak the lettre jn this manere,
but the messenger he scholde lestene & here
and trowen that he to hym seide,
For so on hym hire arende sche leyde.
and this messenger tolde many prevy thyng
that vter had offen ryht good knoweng,
so that pe bettyr wil hadde he to dwelle
For things pe messenger gan hym telle.
thus alday taryede kyng Pandragown,
Tyl the lyht of day was ny agon,
and merveillede of merlynes taryenge,
and why that so Longe was his dwellenge.
thussone merlyne drowh hym on syde,
and pere took anothir lyknesse that tyde,

3531. crownsayll, a corrected from e.
3539. preve, the first e corrected from y.
Merlin appears in the Warner's shape.

[CH. III.

He stands there now in the Warner's shape (cf. l. 3416).

Uter embraces him,

...Evemc the same figure and semblance as whome he warned vter of his shanue.

Anon as vter him gan be-holde, he hym knew and in armes gan folde, and preyede hym for alle cowrtesye with hym to abyden stedfastlye, and that he wolde spoken with the kyng with-owten ony more taryeng.

thanne tolde vter to Pendragon that this good man was come to town.

thanne axede the kyng of vter there jif it were the same in alle manere. "3e, sire," quod vter, "with-owten dowte." so forth wenten they bothe in pat rowte, and come bothe to this good man, and per of hym gret joye made than.

"wile 3e pat j to my brothir vter proclame what man 3e ben and what is joure name?"

"3e, sire, J Wyle Wyth Ryht good Wylle that to joure brothyr 3e seyn it vntytle." thanne seide Pandragon to his brothyr dere: "knowen 3e owht this man that is here? J telle 3ow, brothir, ful certeynye, that this is the wisest man, trewlye, that here on lyve may now be, Of whom we han gret mester, ful sikerle. For sweche konneng hath this man, as here to-forn hym tellen j 3ow kan: for to 3ow cam non other messengere but only this man that Js here. and pe lettres tok 3ow this same man that seide how he from joure love cam." thanne abascht hym vter ful sore, and of that man he wondred thore. "how may j beleven this jike thyng? this were to me gret merveylyng!" "As wel nown 3e known this jike dede as of ope ther things pat he to 3ow afore seide."
than seide vter: "ful certeyne, j kan not beleven that this scholde ben he."
the kynge pride merlyne jn wordis fewe
that som maner of tokenyng he wold hym schewe. 3608
"Goth forth from me," quod merlyne, "henne, and anon j schal don hym me kenne.
For j wele proven hym þe same semblance
Of that Garsown, with-owten varyaunce."
And forth he wente thanne anon, and þat same semblance he took thusson, & cam to vter and took his leve,
For that þe sothe he scholde preve. 3616
"brother, the sothe knowen not now þe,
that this same verray man Js he
that tolde how haugwis wolde 30w han slayn?"
"þis, ful sekyr þe ben, brothyr, jn certeyn ; 3620
For bothe wete þe wel and vndirstonde
that he knoweth things jn dyvers londe,
bothe that is to comeu and that js gons,
For of aventures kan he tellen manyon. 3624
wherefore, brothir, we welen hym preye
with vs to dwellen, be ony weye ;
For aftyr his werkyng welen we do
of alle things that vs longen vnto."
thanne bothe bretheren gozen hym beseche
with hem to dwellen, with ful fayr speche.
"For so mocchel to vs hauen þe told
of dyvers things manyfold,
wherefore j beleve 30w wel ;
and that 3e wolden everydel
Taken gouvernance of my brothir and me ;
and it 30w likede, it mylhte so be." 3636
thanne answerede hem ægen merlyne :
"this schal j granten 30w wel and fyne,
but j wile that þe knowen, certeinly,
of myn doyng prevyly.
For þit most þe gons forthor mo
to the hed of Gret Breteigne, how so þe do. 3640

MERLIN.
Merlin appreciated by the people. [CH. III.

Merlin promises his help in all troubles,

but weteth wel that j schal haue knowenge Of alle 3owre nedis, with-owten varienge; 3644
and Neuere deseissee schal j be 3ow se, but that j schal helpen 3ow, Sekerle.
and perfore chargeth not whazne j go, For shortly schal j comen 3ow to. 3648
and whazne that j come into 3owre howshold, loke pat 3e joyen many fold
aflorn 3owre meyne jn my Syht, That there-offen mowe knowen Every Wyht.” 3652

Thus belefte merlyne with the kyng, and with his Brothe over was dwellug.

He goes so atte laste from hem wolde he gon, 3655
jn swich semblance pat they myhten hym knowen echon.

and comes, So that whanne azen he cam,
of hym made joye bothe child & man, 3660
and wenten and tolden to the kyng
at ech tyme of merlynes comyng,
and algates whanne pe kyng pere-of herde,
Ful mocel joye of hym he ferde,

and algates wente hym forto mete, were jt jn feld ofer jn strete, 3664
and gret joye of hym made.
and ek al the meyne was ful glade,
and token the kyng anon on syde,
& thore hym tolde pat Jike tyde 3668
that he was the beste devyn, trewly,
except God that is al-myhtty.

“Now preyeth hym, Jn alle wyse,
that he wolde tellen 3ow jn what oyse 3672
how that the castel to bryngen to ende,
and how this werre atte laste schal wende,
and of his kyn to haven victorye;
of this axe 3e hym, ful certynylye.” 3676
the kyng answerede hem ageyn
that nyht gladliche he wolde it seyn.
whanne the thrydde day j-come was,

3646. MS. helpen. 3648. shortly, r corrected from l.
Merlin consulted about Augwis’ kinsmen.

The king’s council assembleth, and Merlin is consulted.

3680 The king’s council assembleth, and Merlin is consulted.

3684 The king’s council assembleth, and Merlin is consulted.

3688 The king’s council assembleth, and Merlin is consulted.

3692 The king’s council assembleth, and Merlin is consulted.

3700 The king’s council assembleth, and Merlin is consulted.

3704 The king’s council assembleth, and Merlin is consulted.

3708 The king’s council assembleth, and Merlin is consulted.

3712 The king’s council assembleth, and Merlin is consulted.

the counseyl assemblede al jn on plas.

3680 The king’s council assembleth, and Merlin is consulted.

3684 The king’s council assembleth, and Merlin is consulted.

3688 The king’s council assembleth, and Merlin is consulted.

3692 The king’s council assembleth, and Merlin is consulted.

3700 The king’s council assembleth, and Merlin is consulted.

3704 The king’s council assembleth, and Merlin is consulted.

3708 The king’s council assembleth, and Merlin is consulted.

3712 The king’s council assembleth, and Merlin is consulted.

3716 The king’s council assembleth, and Merlin is consulted.

thanne the kyng afrom his counseil enquered of merlyne wondirly wel :

"Now, dere Frend," quod the kyng thanne, "I knowe 3ow For Ryht a wys manne,

and for the beste devyn J 3ow knowe jn al this world, owthyr hyghe oper lowe.

that 3e wolden me tullen, j 3ow preye, of divers thynges that J schal seye,

and how this castel that j schal have,

and ek my meyne, to kepen hem save."

thanne answeride merlyne a-geyn :

"Syre, j wolde that 3e wisten, ful fayn:

For sethen his kynnes-Men hangwis hadden lost,

Sethen that tyme maden they non bost,

ne rekken but lytel, the sothe to say,

owt of this lond to gon here way ;

and to morwe vndir treve hem besende,

thanne fulsone schole 3e knoven the ende,

how they scholen profren to 3elden ageyn al pat they holden of soure falyr, certeyn.

but 3it scholen 3e not don so,

For whanne here answere cometh 3ow vnto,

3e scholen 3ow offren hem to conveye be sauf couzdit and be ryht weye,

and owt of soure lond hem don led, and schepeing hem ordynen into what stede,

jnto what conte that they wylen gon ;

thuss to hem scholen 3e anseren anon."

thanne the kyng Sente forth vlfyn and thre other knyhtes with hym ;

and merlyne hem charged with this massage, as they weren knyhtes of hyghe parage.

Forth these messengeris token here way Streyht to the castel, as J 3ow say,

and whanne they with-jinne syen hem comenge, a3ens hem they comen with-owten taryenge, and axede of hem zif— "messengeris 3e be?"

thanne vlfyn answerede & seide : "3e,
listen to their message,

[leaf 103 a]

consider their own helpless condition,

and offer to yield up the castle

and pay an annual tribute.

The negotiators bring back this answer.

Merlin repeats his previous advice.

the kyng sow sente be vs to seyn
that thre wykys trwys scholen 3e hauen, certeyn.” 3720
“thanne to conseyl scholen we go,
To wyten how that we mown do.

Ryht Wondirfully sore Anoyed We be
"of hangwis deth, ful certeynle;
and therto hauen we non vytylle
hire forto abyden, sires, saunsfaylle,
Neper non Refrescheng we mown have
of oure frendis here vs to save;
and jnto swich a day 3e grauntyn vs trewe,
but here to abyden, it wolde vs newe.
For it were ful evel soiornenge
jn a place with-owten vytylllynge.
but we hym don to vndirstonde
that this castel [we] deliueren jnto his honde,
and al the lond that longeth therto,
and we of hym to holdyn it for enere mo,
and 3erto every 3er hym forto 3elde
thrytty knyhtes with spere and schelde,
an hundryd destreres, & as many of palfray,
and an hundrid fawkouns, the sothe to say.” 3740
And they acordyd alle Jn on.

so with this answere wente þe messenegeres anon,
and tolden the kyng word and ende,
of this castel how it scholde wende.
and whanne the kyng herde here answere,
anon he axede of merlyne riht there
what were here-offen best forto do.
“3e,” quod merlyne, “thow schalt not don so,
For gret peryl it nyhte be jn tyme comenge,
and stille jn this lond they weren dwellenge.
but j schal tellen the what thou schalt do:
anon sende æzen, with-owten mo,
and bidde hem delyveren that castel,
For therto anon they scholen ben Leñ,
For they ne hauen non maner of vytylle,
J seye 3ow, Sires, with-owten faylle.

3731. The pronoun is missing.
and behote 3e hem that they scholen gon sauf with here lyves Everychon;
And J 30w Seye, wyth-owten Noye, that schal ben to hem a passyng joye.”

thanne the kyng aftyr 3erylynes sawe wrowht on pe morwe, whanne the day gan dawe,
Forth forto beren this answere to hem that jn pe castel weren there.

and whan they of the castel herdyn this, thanne maden they bothe joye and blys,
and weren cowndyed thorpgh the Lond, and browht to the se, as j vndirstond,
and a redy Navye hem forth to lode Jnto what lond owije? jnto what stede that hem-selve they wolde to gon.

thus weren they exyled Everychon onliche be the counseyl of Merlyne, that was holdeyn so good a devyne.

thus was Merlyne conseillour and lord of the kyng & his brothyr, at on word;

Tyl on an day there was to do of things pat scholde come pe kyng vuto, where-offen tweyne Barowns hadden envye, that with the kyng he spak so prevlye, and seiden: “sire kyng, we merveillen echon that 3e so beleven vppon this man.

For wete 3e wel, sire kyng, in certeyn, that al his werkyng of the devel cometh, pleyn.

and perfore we wolde jn onest manere that 3e his company lefte here.”

“That were me loth,” quod the kyng, “For j nolde him wraththen for non thyng.”

“Sire,” quod this Barown ageyn, “j vile hym not Noyen, jn certeyn.”

Now was this Barown ful of envye and ful of vices, ful trewelye, and to the kynges cowrt cam vppon a day, & there thus of merlyne gan he to say,
And of hym gret Joye thus he Wrowhte, 3796
but evere anothir was Jn his thowhte.
there this barown clepede to-fore the kying
of the presence
twenty knyhtes, with-owten leseng.
"Now wile 3e sen," quod this Barown thanne,
that tolde the kying howh Fortagere
in his castel scholde hrenne riht pere.—
and therfore preye j 3ow, for charite,
of my siknesse that 3e wolden tellen me,
& that 3e welen tellen me ytterlye
On what maner of deth that j schal dye."

Thanne answerede merlyne, that knew ful wel
his malencolyvs herte everydel :
"3e han me preid that j schal Seye
to 3ow of 3oure deth, trewelye.
knowe 3e wel that pe same day
that deyen 3e scholen, wit-owten nay,
of an hors 3owre Nekke schal to-breke."
Aforne alle these knyhtes thus gan he speke.
thanne seide the Barown to the kying :
"God me defende from his talkyng!"

Tho wente he hom ju-to his contre,
and there a whille dwelled he,
and cam azen thedir as pe kying was,
and Feynede hym sore syk jn that plas,
and him forto sen he preyde the kying,
and algates merlyne with hym bryng,
so that merlyne ne knowe jn non degré
For what maner cause thedir cometh he.

Thanne cam merlyne to the kying,
and axede hym what was his willyng.
"3e mosten to towne gon with me,
a sik man j preye 3ow pere forto se."

Thanne clepid the kying his prevy meyne
with him to gon that man to se.
and whanne that thedyr they weren come echon.
"Sire, j preye 3ow, for charyte,
that 30wre devyne may telle n me
3yf j schal deyen of this syknese,
of þis ellis to suffren ony more distresse."

"Sire kyng," anon quod Merlyne thanne,
"of þis siknesse schal not deyen this ma?ine." thanne answerede the syk man, trewelye:
"now, good sire, of what siknesse schal j deye?"
"Forsothe, hangenge schalt thow
Ende, and haugen pon schalt jnto thin
Eude." and with that tornede him Merlyn there,
thus whanne merlyne was forth gon,
this barow to the kyng seyde anon:
"Now mowen 3e knowen be his spelle,
a fool he is swych thynges to telle,
that swychte tweyn dethes me doth devyse
while ben not cordyng jn non wyse!
And the thrydde tyme jt j schal asaye:
To mowre wil j gon to on abbeye,
and that 3e wolden thider hye,
and merlyne jn 3oure compenyne,
and the abbot 30w schal seyn
that on of his monkes is Sik, certein,
and 3ow schal preyen, for charite,
thike sike monk þat 3e wolden comen se
and merlyne with 30w forto brynge."
the kyng him grantyd his askynge.

vpon the morewen, whazne it was day,
the kyng him Rod to that abbay,
and merlyne thedyr with hym rod,
So herden they nasse, and þere abod.
Atte laste cam the Abbot there,
and to the kyng seide jn this manere :
"Ha, Sire kyng, and 30wre wylle Jt be,
that an old syk monk 3e wolden com se,
and 30wre devyne with 30w to brynge,
Third prediction of the baron’s death. [CH. III.

and it were 3owre wille, Sire kynges.”

than seide the kyng to merlyne tho:
“Sire, with me wile 3e owht go?”
“3e, sire,” quod merlyne, “ful gladly!”

and took the kyng on syde in hy:

“Whanne ferst j a-qweynted with 3ow bothe,
thanne non fool helden 3e me, forsothe.
what, trown 3e that J ne knowe, sekerlye,
vppon what deth this fool schal deye?
For now sore merveillen scholen 3e ful snelle
of a thing that j schal hym telle.”
quod the kyng thanne to merlyne :
“ay it be trewe he schal have swich fyne?”
“Now, Sire,” quod merlyne, “but 3if it trewe be,
Neure here-aftyr ne leve thow me !
and 3it er that j parte from his compeny,
J schal hym tellen how that he schal dye.”
So wenten they forth al jn fere,
lyk as the abbot hem ladde there.

and seide the abbot to the kyng :
“Sire, and j dorste preyen 3ow of on thyng :
that 3owre devyn 3ow wolde seye
3if this monk of this maladye schal dye.”
and merlyne answerede anow there
jn maner as that wroth he were,
and seide to the abbot vntylle :
“he may arysen, 3if that he wylle,
For siknesse here ne feleth he non,
but that he may bothe nysen & gon.
and þerto, abbot, to the J seye
that thike day whanne he schal deye,
his nekke he schal breken vnto,
and an honged, and be spilt also.
Now Nedyth hym to feyne no more,
For his herte j knowe bothe here & thore.”

thanne ros hym vpe this Jlke Barown,
and seide þere to kyng Pendragown :
“Now mown 3e knowne his folye,
that seith on swich maner þat j scholde dyeye.

Merlin privately re-proves the king for being a party to these pretences.

He says, however, he will foretell the baron’s death once more.

In reply to the abbot’s request,

Merlin says that the man may rise, if he chooses,

and that he will break his neck, hang, and drown.

The baron maintains that Merlin is a fool,
CH. III.]

Death of the baron. 105

For this knowe j wel, that may not be of me ne of non othir man, Sikerle. 
Now devise 3ow, Sire, Ryht wel, how 3e this man leven ony del!"
thus thanne this werk gan to ende;
and juto fer contre jt can wende how that merlyne gan to Say
on what deth he scholde dyen, jn fay.

So after on a day not forthan
be-gan to ryde this good man,
and jn his compenye gret plente
Of his owne meyne, ful sykyre.
So atte laste he cam to a ryver,
where as a brygge of tre was there,
and perppyon smot he his palfray,
that down on knes it fyl, jn fay.
So that he, whiche aboven was,
Fyl a-down there jn that plas,
and there his Nekke he brak vnto,
And as to the water he scholde han go,
So that his leg jn his Robe fastenyd there,
and alle his oþer lymes jn þe water were.
thanne weryn there tweyne men Jn compenye,
erden how that merlyne gan seye;
Jn what maner he scholde ded be,
There they Rehersed, ful Sykerle.
thanne be-gan there an hidows cry
of alle his meyne, ful trewely ;
whanne owt of the water they hadden him take,
For Sorwe they schoken & gonne to qwake.
thanne seiden they : "folys that they be that merlyn ne leven not, Sykerle!"
they Beryeden the cors with honour.
and merlyn to the kyng kam thike same ouir,
and told bothen hym and to vter
how that with the barown it happede ther.
the kyng axede whanne it was, certeine.
"with-june sixe dayes messengers scholen 3e se.
thanne kept j not to ben here,

3910. me added above the line.
Merlin's reputation fully established.  [CH. III.

For faste they welen of me enqwere
of diuers maters, what so they be,
but answere geten they non, Sikerle,
For j wyle no more so openly seye,
that the peple schal vndirstonden, jn feye."
thanne wende the kyng pat he wroth were,
and þerfore weren ful sory there.
So wente merlyne to Blaysye anon,
and told him of these thynges echon,
and of ðopere, that to comen were;
in this maner departyd merlyne þere.

There dwellede merlyne to þe vj day,
tyl they that at the deth weren, [comen], Jn fay,
and tolden the kyng how that it stood,
howhe þis barown was persched jn that flood,
and seiden that merlyne was þe wysest man
that Jn al this world was lyveng than.
For of hym was neuere thyng seid ne don,
but þif he jnto Scripture dide it putte anon.
and thus began merlynes prophecye
of the kynges of Englond, certeynlye,
and of othere many thynges also.
he dide holy Blasye it wryten tho.
thanne axede Blaysye of merlyne there :
"wryten they also jn this manere?"
"Nay, certeynly, non of hem alle,
but they wryten that schal befall
which thynges they scholen Neuere knowe,
Tyl that they be-fallen vpon a rowe."
Thanne Retornede merlyne to cowrt ageyn,
and ajens hym they comen, jn certeyn,
and tolden hym of that Jike tydyng,
as thowg þere-offen he ne hadde knowen non thing.

Thanne sette on merlyne and gan to telle
Ful dyrke worrdes of prophecyes felle,
where-offen a book they maden anon.
thanne forth to the kyng merlyne gan gon,

3959–60. MS. cvj, and weren Jn; in the right margin: Nota.
CH. III.]  Merlin predicts the return of Augwis' kinsmen.  107

and there to hem seyde he ful petowsly:

"J love 3oure bothe worshepis Badyly;
haven 3e not now vndirstondyng
of haugwys kynnes-men exylyng,
that owt of this lond 3e deden don dryve,
aftyr that haugwys hadde left his lyve?"
"3is, this wele knowen we, Jn certeyn;
but for what cause do 3e this seyn?"
"J sey," quod merlyne, "for this enchesown,
that haugwys kynnes-men everychon,
with-jmen hem-Self they don thus speke,
that of haugwys deth they welen hem wreke.
So that they maken gret congregacyown
of dyvers peple al abowtes Jn verown,
and hopen this lond forto conqwere
and ek forto haven the victorye here."

"Jsey," quod Merlyne, "for this Enchesown,
That liaugwys kynnes-Men
Everychon, with-jnneji hem-Self they don thus speke,
that of haugwys deth they welen hem wreke.
So that they maken gret congregacyown
of dyvers peple al abowtes Jn verown,
and hopen this lond forto conqwere
and ek forto haven the victorye here."

Of these tydynges they Merveyled crete,
And axeden Of Merlyne Howh this Myhte be.
"haven they there so gret plente
Of Fensable peple Jn alle degre?"
"3e," quod merlyne, "with-owten dowte,
they haven more peple hem abowte
thanne 3e owther 3owre brothyr, jn feye,
For agens on of 3owris they haven tweye;
and but 3if 3e werkyn ryht wysly,
3e scholen ben discomfyt & stroyed, trewely."
"we scholen werkyn aftyr 3owre wylle,
what that evere 3e welen seyn vs vntylle."
thanne axeden they merlyne anon there
whanne they scholden come and jn what manerc.
"Atte the elleveneth day, ful trewly;
but loke that 3e kepen this prevy,
and j defende 3ow, as J now kan,
that there-offen 3e ne tellen neure man.

but aftyr my cowneseyt that 3e don,
and sendeth aftyr alle 3oure men anon,
and that they ben here with-owten let

3993. MS. fort this.
Merlin encourages the princes.  

Merlin gives instructions with regard to the impending battle.

The laste wyke of the mounthe of junet, to assemblen vppon Salisbery pleyn 3owre enemyes to withstandyn ageyn.

so that on of 3ow with half 3owre meyne, be-twixen hem and pe se scholen gon, Sykerle;

and so twyne dayes 3e scholen abyde, and on the thrydde to fyhten, what so betyde. & 3if 3e thus wil en don, trevely, J dar 3ow behoten the victory.”

thannc seiden the bretheren to merlyne there:

“Now, goode merlyne, telle vs now here 3if ony of vs jn bataylle schal ded be.”

thannc answeryd merlyne: “ful Sykerle, there nas neuere thyng that hadde begynneng, but of Necescte it moste hanen endyng, ne neuere man owghte the deth drede, J he it resceyne Jn tyme of xede.

and therfore wolde J thannc,” quod merlyne, “doth bryngen me 3owre relykes, pat ben so fyne, and per-vppon bothe scholen 3e swere that 3e scholen don as j schal 3ow lere

bothen for 3owre prow and worshepe also, and aftyr that schal j tellen 3ow mo.”

thus sworen they bothe at his Byddyng. thannc anon seide merlyne to the kynge:

“3e hauen sworen to me, with-owten faylle, Trewe men to be Jn this Bataylle a3ens god and 3owre owne persone, how so that evere the game doth gone.

For to hym-Self may non man trewe be, but 3if to god he be trewe, Sykerle.

and that 3e confessen 3ow generally

Forto fyhten a3ens 3owre enemy.

and aftyr mown 3e ben ful Sure hem ouercomen bothe clene & pure, for they beleven not on the Trenite.

And now herkene what j sey the: Sethen holychirche cam jnto this lond,
Swich a bataylle was non, as j vndirstond,
Neper not schal ben be owre daye.
therefore, Syker, as j 3ow saye,
on of 3ow schal deyen in this bataylle,
as j 3ow seye with-owten Faylle.
and perfor that ryaly 3e 3ow araye
Forto fyhten, as j 3ow saye,
and jn worschepe of the Trenyte,
For 3owre helpe syker wile he be;
And for his love arayeth 3ow wel
To his plesawnce Everydel!"

Lo, this Was Merlynes Cownsaylle,
As j 3ow sey wit-owten faylle.
these bretheren vndirstoden ful wel his sawe,
and of his cownseyl they weren ryht fawe.
Anon thanne senten they thorwgh al here lond
For here Retenu, J vndirstond.
and whanne they weren assembled everychon,
crete 3iftes hadden they thanne anon,
and preyden éche man Jn his degre
that ræly and arayed he wolde be,
and jn the laste wyke of Jvnet,
on þe pleyn of Salisbery, with-owten let,
next to the cost of the se,
that be hem þe nem defendid myhte be.
thus dwelden bothe bretheren in Fere,
tyl the day of Somowns were comen there,
and kepten merlynes comandement,
that he hem bothe bad, verament.
So that atte feste of pentecost
thyder they comen with here ost,
here Ryal cowrt to holden there
Fast by the se Jn here manere.
and manye crete 3iftes there 3oven they
To dewk, erl, and to Barown, trewyly.
and so longe abyden they on that grownde,
Tyl þat here enemies a-ryvede Jn þat stownde.
thanne sente the kyng to prelates anon,

The princes call in their forces.

The battle, however, will be extraor-
dinary murderous, and one of
the princes is to fall,
fighting in honour of the Trinity.

The princes cheerfully send for their
men,
and ask them to be ready at
the end of June, near Salis-
bury.

At Pentecost they hold
court there,
till the enemy arrives.
Preparations for the battle.

The entire array is confessed and absolved.

Merlin, on the king's question, repeats his former instructions, adding that a dragon will appear in the air.

The plan of operation thus settled.

Uter goes with half the army to cut off the enemy from the sea.

that they scholde oomen everichon
Forto confessed his peple Jn fere,
that they waren clene Jn allo manere.
and so thorwh the ost everychon
they weren confessed thanne anon,
and ech to oper forzaf pere his maltalent,
and therto clene asoyllcd, verament.
thanne seide the kyng to merlyne there
that tydynge he hadde of here powere,
and howh they waren aryved echon,
alle his enemies, be on & be on.
thanne seide merlyne to hym augeyn:
"that is ful trewe, jn certeyn!"
thanne axede the kyng of merlyne tho
Jn what maner that he scholde do.
"3e scholen to morwen senden 3oure brothir vter
and half 3oure meyne to ben with hym ther.
and whanne 3owre enemies ben owt of pe see,
thanne betwixen hem and pe water schal he be.
and thanne wilen they nesemblen anon
here juto this contre fortou goun.
and thus tweyne dayes schal he werken there,
and pe thridde daye jn the ayr schal apere
a red dragown, & panne mown 3e fyhte
and the victoire to haven, j seye 3ow nyhte."

To this counseyl acoirdid ful wel
both pandragown an vter everydel.
and ful gret joye bothen they made,
and of this counseil they weren ful glade.
thanne seide vter to merlyne anon:
"Into tho partyes now wyle j goun."
"Loke that 3e thanne ben a good knyht!"
and thus departyd they that Jlke Nyht.
so that vter took forth his jorne,
and with hym half here meyne.
so that be-twene pe see and his enemies he abod,
and with his meyne thus forth he nod.
thanne seide merlyne: "abasche the non thyng
For deth ne bataylle, be my counseylyng!"
And Whanne that Vter herde this,
Ful mochel his herte was esyd, J-wys. 4140

thane wente merlyne Into North-humberlond

to Blaysye, his maistyr, as J vndirstond,
and let this putten Into Scripture

and many mo thynges, J sow ensure. 4144

thane rod vter with his meyne
aftyr merlynes cownseil, ful Sykerle,
and lay be-twene the Schepis & that ost,
whiche that they dredni most.

So lay Vter Stylle ryht there
three days In this manere,
and atte the Selvethrydedy day
the kyng remevyd, the sothe to say,
and kam So Nyhe that meyne,
that eche of hem myhte other se.
and whanne the ost beheld al this,
that on bothe sides they were beset, J-wys,
and that to here Schipes they myhte not gon
with-owten bataylle of here fon,
thane In the eyr aperede that syht
that merlyne afore tyme hem tolde ful ryht,
of wheche Syhte the enemies of the kyng
hadden gret drede, with-owten lesyng.
thane seide the kyng to his meyne anon:
"To armes and to hors let vs now gon,
and also Faste as we mown ryde,
vppon oure enemies this Jlke tyde."
and whanne that vter Say the kyng so do,
anon with his meyne he remeveede also,
that so on bothe sydys beset they were.
thane began anon strong bataylle there
and gret occisyon on bothe syde,
and mochel peple ded at that tyde. 4172
but haugwis kynnesmen hadden the werre,
Not-withstondyng they comen from ferre.
but of this bataylle j reherse no more,
whiche of hem that best bar hym thore. 4176

4172. at that t through correction, partly on erasure.
Death of Pendragon. Uter becomes king. [CH. III.

The king falls with many barons,

but Pandragown the kyng was there ded,
and manye of his barowns in that sted,
thanne thus recordith this Storye,
that vter hadde there the victorye,
and pat of his enemies ne scaped neuer on,
that ded they weren, other taken, echon.
thus endid the bataylle of Salisbury there,
where pandragown was slayn Jn this manere.

thanlle hadde vter the nem Jn governaunce,
as was bothe resown, ryht, and chaunce.
thanne vter dide assemblen his meyne anon,
and let beryen his dede men Everichon,
and on every tombe wrot the name,
what he was, and of what fame.
but as towching his brotyhr the kyng,
vpon his tombe made he non wyryng.
For a gret Fool he is, with-owten dowte,
that a kynges tombe ne kan knownen with-owte,
For heyer and richere thanne ony oper it was
that weren J-beryed Jn that plas.

thanne remevid vter to Logres anon,
and with hym his prélaeye everychon;
And there was he sacred and crowned kyng,
and of alle the newm hadde he the governeng.
Thus was vter kyng of the Lond,
and alle homages resceyvede, J vndestination.

thanlle the Fyftenethe day aftyr Sewenge
cometh merlyne to the court of the kyng.
gret was the joye the kyng of hym made,
and alle the howshold of hym was glade.

Thanne seide merlyne to Vter there:
"thy brotheris name J wolde thou bere;
& benchesown of the dragown, J-wis,
that Jn the eyr aperede, with-owten mys,
and aftyr thyke dragowns semblance,
J wolde thou madist on, with-owten variancce."

This kyng let maken this dragown anon
of gold, also faste as it nyhte be don,
and vpon a lawnce Jt Sette, Sanȝ faylle,

\[112\] & added in the left margin.
with hym to be born Jn bataylle.

thus was he clepyd vter Pendragown;

his brothir and pe baner was thenchesown.

thanne merlyne with hym gan there dwelle, and on a day to pe kyng gan he to spelle:

"why dost thou non more reuerence there thy brotheris body lyth jn precense?"

"what woldest thou, merlyne, that j scholde do? Sey what thou wylt, and it schal be so."

"Swich a thing to maken, thaw it attende, that Scholde abyden with-owten ende."

"Sey me thanne," quod the kyng ageyn, "and j wele it don, Jn certeyn."

thanne quod merlyne: "Sende thaw anon Into Erloand aftyr gret ston.

and j my-Self wile thedyr pase, to schewen where they ben and jn what place, and tellen hem wheche that they scholene brynge Jn thi Schepis hider, with-owten lesyne." thus the kyng schepis thedyr sente, and merlyne with hem was there presente.

"Sen ye now these stones here? jn youre Schepis j wolde they were."

and whaane these stones they gozne beholde, jn here hertes they merveyllled many folde, and seiden that severe schipe hem wyhten bere, Ne neure iuto here Schipe scholde comen there.
thanne tornede they thus hom a-geyn, and of that merveylle tolde the kyng, ful pleyn. Anon thanne hem answeryd the kyng: "Abydeth here stytle tyl merlynes comeng!"

Thanne cam merlyne to cowrt anon, and of this the kyng told hym thusson.

thanne made merlyne his Surawnce hem forto brynge, with-owten variaunce, and thus merlyne thorwgh his craft, tyl the stones weren there, he ne laft, and leyde hem on the Sepulture.
Merlin accounts for his own mental powers. [CH. III.

The people are surprised at the size of the stones.

Merlin undertakes to raise them.

Merlin sends away the people, and performs the task.

Merlin then says to the king, he will reveal to him a great secret.

He tells him the double source of his skill and divinatory power.

Of pandragown, J the enswre.

That anne wter Pendragown with gret meyne

To the pleyn of Saiisbery wente hem to se.

And thanne they behelden this grette meravylle,

Thanne seide the peple, with-owten Faylle,

That alle the world hem ne cowde meve,

Thowg that they scholden the sothe preve.

Thanne seide merlyne: "j schal hem dresse

Mochel bettere thanne they lyn, J-wysse."

"howh myhte that be?" quod the kyng anone,

"that may non man do but cod alone."

Thanne quod merlyne to hem anon:

"Goth 3e now hennes everychon,

And schal hem dressen, as j have hyht,

Ober ellis my covenawnt held j not a-ryht."

So that merlyne belefte there stylle,

And his covenawnt he dide fulsille.

Thanne cam merlyne to the kyng

As to a man pat he lovede with-owten feyneng,

And seide: "Sire kyng, herkeneth to me!

J moste to 3ow discure a gret prevyte,

On the prevyest that etere 3e knewe.

And therfore to 3ow J Wele Jt Schewe,

Whiche schal ben ryht a strange thing,

As j 3ow say att the begynneng;

And that 3e discure me to non lyveng man."

His axeng anon the kyng grauntid hym than.

"J wele that 3e vndirstonde me, ful pleyn :

Al the connenge that J have, certeyn,

Onlych it cometh of the enemy;

And therto cod, that is almyhty,

Wit and memorie hath grauntid to me

Thynges that ben comeng to knowen, certeinle;

And be that Sovereyn vertw

The enemy hath lost, as j telle 3ow,

Alle the part that he hadde in me,

Thorw goddis wille, sire, Sykerle.

Sire, now have 3e ful knowlechyngne

4264. do added above the line.  [1285. MS. grauntid.
4274. difßere, re (?) altered from r'.  [4284. gret, g corrected from p.
CH. III.] 

Christ’s table. 115

From whens that cometh al my konnenge.
Now j wele tellyn the what Js goddis wylle,
and thow wylt herkene and lestene theretyll.
and whanne thou knowest of my menyng,
loke that thou Folwe it Jn werkyng.

Sire kyng, now vndirstonde thou me,
that god decendid from þe maieste
jn-to this ðerthe the Synneris to Save,
and for that he wolde here sowles have.
Also beleve wel that his sene he made
among his disciples to maken hem glade,
and þat he to hem seide Jn this manere:
‘on of ȝow schal betraien me þat is here.’
Also, Sire kyng, vndirstonde thou me,
that moche povert and discise suffrede he
of the jewes, and they falsly him Slowe
aȝens the lawe, with fals witnesse j-nowe,
and vpon the croys for vs he deyde.

Sire, after that, he ros from ded
Jn scomfiture of the fowle qwed.
and happede after his vp-Rysyng,
this knyht with his sowdiowvs was walkyng
Jn a place of wast and desert,
and with hym many of his lignage, apert.

Sire, þere happede, a famyne cam hem vpon,
and to this knyht, here maister, they compleyned anon.

Anon thanne this knyht made his preyere
that god som Tokenyng wolde schewen hem þere,
the cause to suffren Swich deseise,
that he myhte it knowen, & it wolde him plesc.
Anon thanne hadde he comandement
a table forto maken, verament,
jn mynde of þe table and of swete jesus,
at which he sat jn Symon lepres hows,

Merlin further relates
of Christ coming to earth to save sinners,
of His supper with His disciples,
of His death,
and of Joseph, who buried His body.

After the resurrection,
this Joseph travelled with his retinue
in a desert,
his provisions ran short,
and he prayed to God.
He was commanded to make a table,
in memory of the Lord’s table,

4306. povert, r corrected from p rather indistinctly.
4313. In the right margin: Nota.
Joseph's table.

Joseph's table.

to cover it
with a cloth,
and place
thereon the
holy vessel
(St. Graal)

which he, when
in prison, had
received as
a comfort
from God.

A void place
was left at
the table,
to signify the
place once
occupied by Judas.

[leaf 105v]

Just as that
place was
afterwards
filled by St.
Matthew,

thus Joseph
here took the
empty seat.

and that table to kouer (\& not to lette)
with whît cloth, and per-vpon pe holy vessel sette—
‘and that the vessel be kouered also
with fair whît cloth, how so euere 3e do!'
which vessel browhte the kyng of blys
To this kuyht jnto presown, j-wys,
where as he was two and fowrty 3er,
which vessel al his hol comfort was ther,
and be this vessel departyd he
the goode from the evel, ful sikerle.
and, Sire, at this Table evere there was
In memorie of crist kept a voide plas,
while specyal place doth Signefye
the place that judas ju Sat, trewelye,
which he Forsook, whanne god hadde sayd:
‘on of 3ow hath me betrayed
that with me here doth drynke and etc.'
(Jt hadde ben bettere he dyde it lete.)
So Was this place there voyde style,
tyl that after-ward be goddis wylle
anothir, hyht Mathematical, was there-jne j-set,
as to hym there Jt cam ne lot,
and to fulfille pe nombre of pe postelis twelve,
for thus wold ood it scholde ben him-selve.
and, Sire, this voyde place pat at pe [table] Is,
Signefieth be josepe, Sire, j-wis;
and lik as Maththy was chosen thereto,
riht so was josepe, wit-owten mo,
So that these twyne tables covenable were,
and thus pleside crist \menes hertes there.
Sire, this peple clepede this vessel
‘the Sank Ryal' ofper ellys 'Seint Graal.'
And, sire, 3if 3e welen don after me,
the thrydde table, in worschepe of pe Trenite,
3e scholen be-gynne, as j 3ow schal Say,
and 3ow to gret worschepe it schal torne eche day,
and to 3oure Sowle gret Mede also,
and manye benfettes 3ow schal comen to,
and thorwgh this world this word schal springe,

4353. MS. \pe Is.
as j 3ow Seye with-owten lesenge.”

Lo, thus Spak merlyne to the kyng, 
whiche wordis to hym were gret lykyng.
thanne seide the kyng to merlyne ageyn:
“J nolde for non thing, Jn certein, 
that god non thing ne loste be me 
whiche that to his plesaunce myhte be. 
therfore, merlyne, ordeyne as thow wylt, 
For vppon me ne schal not lyn the cylt.”
“Now,” thanne quod merlyne to the kyng, 
“where liketh 3ow best to ben abydyngl?”
“Now certes,” quod the kyng ageyn: 
“JNolde for Non thing, Jn certein, 
that God non thing ne loste be me 
whiche that to his plesaunce myhte be. 
wherfore, Merlyne, ordeyne as thow wylt, 
In the wales, atte þe town of Cardweille, 
and there schalt thou holden thi festes 
atte pentecost bothe to nest and lest 
and forth to-foren, Sire, wyl j gon 
that Table to ordeynen for 3ow echon; 
and also hem that there schal Sytte, 
j wile hem ordeynen, that thow it wyte:” 

Ryht as merlyne devisede jn alle thing, 
riht so aftyr hym ðevene wroght þe kyng, 
and there anon Sente proclamaciown
be messengeris thorwgh-owt his regyown, 
his ryals hym to meten, bothe lest and meste, 
In cardwel atte pentecost Feste; 
thus was the kynges proclamaciown. 
And þanne from the kyng departyd merlyne anon, 
and wente to ordeyne that behoven Scholde 
To that Table bothe for 3ong and olde. 
and the woke to-Foren pentecost 
Thedyr cam the kyng, as he nedis most, 
and axede of merlyne how he hadde j-do. 
he seide: “Sire, riht wel 3it hyderto!”
“hast thow owht ordeyned whiche scholen sitten here?”
Merlin promises the king an unexpected sight.

He chooses fifty knights, and places them round the table.

Then he calls the king, and shows him the knights and the empty seat.

The king joins the party; the feast is continued for a week; handsome presents are given.

The knights say they would like to stay for ever, in brotherly love.

"3e, sire, to morwen scholen 3e sen the manere and that 3e wenden neuere forto han seye:
Fyfty worthy knyhtes, Sire, in feye, of the beste that ben with june thi loud,
certain j do 3ow to vndyrstond.
and perchby myht thou knowen thy worthy men,
that j have chosen be fyve sithes ten.
Also the voide place perchalt thou se,
that 3it fulfyld it may not be."

Thus merlyne at that Ryal Feste ches there Fyfty knyhtes of the beste, and preide hem to Sitten al jn Fere and there to eten with ryht good chere.
Ryht so they deden be on an on, and glad they weren everychon.

thanne merlyne, that was so ful of craft, abowtes he wente, and not ne laft, and clepid the kyng there forto se how that they Seten Jn here degre, and schewed him also the voide place that thike tyme atte the table wase,
but what that place dide signifie,
Niste pe kyng ne non of his compenye.

And whanne merlyne thus hadde j-don, he preyde the kyng to sitten anon.
and thus viij dayes continued pe feste ryal
To lordes and ladyes and damyselis with al;
and there ful grete giftes 3af the kyng bothe to lordis and to ladyes and to damyselis so yng.
and whanne this feste gan vp to breke,
thanne to pe Fyfty knyhtes pe kyng gan to reke,
and axede how hem likede there,
and of here Syttyng jn alle manere.

thanne they the kyng answerid ful sone:
"Jt Js owre wylle neuere hens to gone
Ne 3er neuere to parten oure compeny onsondlyr,
For so as we loven to-gederis, it is gret woundir,

1414. fulfyld, d squeezed in afterwards.
1429. whane added above the line.
The king inquires about the void seat.

For as bretheren we loven to-gederis in feire,
and, tyl deth vs sondre, neure to departen ere."

And whaane the kyng herde this,
gret mervelle he hadde per-offen, j-wys.
thanne charged the kyng to hem anon
to hym ben loveng and trewe everychon.

thanne departyd al this compenye,
eche man to his own contre, treweye.

thanne cam the kyng to merlyne there,
and axede him thanne in this manere:

"Telle me 3if that goddis wylle jt be
this Table fulfylled that J schal Se?"

"wyte thow wel certeyn, Sire kyng,
that in thy tyme it schal neuere haven endyng."

Nethyr he that jt schal fulfylle,
js not 3it be-geten, j sey the tyle.

but in the kynges tyme jt schal be-falle
that ayfter the schal regnen in pured & palle;

and he that hym begeten schal,
knoweth not what aventur he schal befall.

and that same that is to be bore,
Schal fulfillen the place thore,

lyk as josepe dide in his manere
the Signefiauuue after maththy there.

and perfore, Sire, j preye to the
thy festes here to holden, certeinle."

"Now certes, merlyne," quod the kyng tho,
"and at thy wille it schal be do."

thanne seide merlyne to the kyng:

"Sire, it is tyme to maken a partyng;
and knowe 3e wel now, syre kyng,
that ayfter myn hens departying
of a long tyme 3e schole not me se,
J Seye 3ou, Sire kyng, ful certeinle."

thanne axede the kyng of hym age
whethir at his festes he wolde not be.

thanne answerede merlyne in this manere:

"Atte alle tyme j may not ben here."
The courtiers wish to fill the void seat. [CH. IV.

Merlin repairs to blasy.

In Cardwell, some courtiers murmur at the seat being left empty.

The king tells them of Merlin's prediction;

but they scoffingly declare, that there are as good men to be found now as ever will be,

and urge the king to let them try the seat.

After some hesitation, the king gives his consent.

Thanne wente merlyne to blasye anon, and pe establenementes of pe table told hym echon
and of other thynges manye also

That At thyke tyme Were to comen tho.

and there dwelde merlyne two 3er stytle,

that the kynges cowrt he solde comen tylle.

So happed it at Cardweille vppon a day

that they whiche lovede not merlyne, gonne to say, and axeden a qwestion of the kyng:

why that place was voyde of syttyng,

and why that som good man michte [not] sytte there,

and thanne the table fulfilled were.

thanne answeryd the kyng: "certeynle,

For a gret merveyl that merlyne tolde me,

that it scholde Nevere ben be my day,

and thus merlyne to me gan say.

and zit he that him engendren schal,

Nys not zit born, more with-al,

that this table schal fulfylle."

they lawhen wel faste, as men pat weren jille.

"Sire, beleve 3e thanne that jn tyme comenge

pat better men scholen ben thanne be now reignenge,

and that jn jowre lond [not] as goo de there be

as evere here-aftyr scholen come, sikerle?"

"Now certes, j wot Æure, quod the kyng.

"No[w] we reden 30W to putten jt jn asayeng."

"Certes," quod the kyng, "j drede me pane sore

that merlyne wolde ben angry there-fore."

"Sire, thanne, and 3e wylen 3yven vs leve,

his Falsnesse forsothe we scholen preve."

"and j wiste merlyne wroth wolde not be,

wel fayn wolde j asayen it, ful sykerle."

"3e, Sire, zif that merlyne know of this,

Siker, there wile he ben, j-wys;

and perfere suffreth vs forto asaye,

Now, goo de Sire kyng, alle we 3ow praye."

So that the kyng hem graunted it forto do,

whanne that the feste cam therto.

4482. hym, MS. hem.
4491, 4503. The negation is missing. 4506. MS. No.
Merlin does not prevent it.

Merlin knows of the courtiers' intentions.

Thanne the kyng to Cardweille wente, and with hym many lordis, veramente. and they that kommen to asayen this place, Seiden there was fallen a wondyr case: that a fals wood cherl, in certayn, In a wode goode merlyne hadde slayn. and thus so styfly they gowten it say, that the kyng beleuyd it that day, and more principaly the more for on thing: be encheson of merlynes longe abydyng; and also more thanne Supposed the kynghe that he wolde it not were asayed, merlyne levyngne.

On the eve of Pentecost, the courtier appointed goes to the table anon

Merlin does not prevent it.

Merlin does not prevent it.

that pe kyng hadde grawnht pe's thing be don. and thus it Taryede in-to pentecost feste, that eche Ryal pere to be atte the kynges heste. and merlyne, that knew here thowhtes echon, Ryht there to Blayse told jt anon, and of alle here jelle thenkenge, and of hem pat weren per-offen pe begymenge. and he wiste wel that provyd jt scholde be, that jike place, ful certeynle; and sethen algates it scholde ben so, bettere on a schrewe thanne on a good man to proven it tho. and thus merlyne dwelled pere stytle jnto qwynzyme of pentecost, here wil to fulfille.

A rumour is spread that Merlin has been slain.

The king believes it, particularly as Merlin does not appear.

On the eve of Pentecost,

the courtier appointed goes to the table anon

4524 Merlin knows of the courtiers' intentions,

4528 but does nothing to prevent them.

4532 Thanne the kyng to Cardweille wente, and with hym many lordis, veramente.

4536 A rumour is spread that Merlin has been slain.

4540 The king believes it, particularly as Merlin does not appear.

4544 On the eve of Pentecost,

4548 the courtier appointed goes to the table anon

4552 Thanne cam he to the table anon

4.5-14. After this line there follows, written up the margin: *or* to pe' ppele it scholde ben ayrofche(?) The end is daubed and indistinct.

4531. *dwelled*, w corrected from e.
The intruder falls down dead.

There the fyfty knyhtes Seten Echon.
"I am comen forto Sitten here
Forto beren 3ow compenye al in fere."
and they to hym Seiden neuer a word,
but humblyly stille seten at that bord,
and behelde what that he wokle do,
and so dyde the kyng and manyon mo.
thanne thussonle he hym sette adown
amonges al that peple there in virown.
and assone as he was set in that sted,
he Sank a-down lik a plom of led.
Ne non man wyste how it cam to,
Neper why he Suffrede that deth ful wo,
Ne where his body becomen was,
there wiste no man in that plas.
thanne comanded the kyng anon
To thyke worthy men everychon
that anon they scholden vp ryse,
and so they dyden in hasty wyse,
and merveillously astoned this cowrt thanne was,
and also the kyng most in that plas.
thus thanne taryede there the kyng
tyl Fyftene dayes aftyr, with-owten leseg.
and be that tyme merlyne to cowrt was gon,
Of hos comege weren glad manyon,
and specyaly aboven alle othere the kyng,
that ajens merlyne wente in metyng.
Anon as merlyne the kyng gan beholde,
these same wordis to hym he tolde:
"certeyn, ze haven ryht evele j-do
ony man in pat place to suffrea sitten so!"
"Now sikerly, merlyne," quod the kyng,
"they jt deden and me begyleng."
"certis," quod merlyne to the kyng than,
"ryht so it fareth be manye a man.
ho that often desireth to be-gylen anotheyr,
atte laste on him-self falleth the fothyr.
and that, Sire kyng, myht thou proven here
vppon this man in alle manere."
thanne aftyrward preide the kyng merlyne,
that was his owne and worthy devyn, where that man were, and how be hym it felle, he preide that merlyne hym wolde telle. 

\[CH. IV.\] Feasts appointed at Cardwell.

4596 The king asks Merlin what has become of the dead courtier.

\[4599.\] thou, MS. the.

that was his owne and worthy devyn, where that man were, and how be hym it felle, he preide that merlyne hym wolde telle. 

4599. thou, MS. the.

\[4599.\] thou, MS. the.

thanne answerede merlyne to him ryht there: "what nedeth the aftyr hym enqwere? For thowh thou wistest howh with hym it stood,jt scholde don the but litel good.

4600 he tells him rather to mind his people and his feasts,

but thenke on hem that there don Sytte, and how that thou schalt wel meynteyne jtte and othir thynges that belongen to the, thy cowrt, thy festes, and thy meyne, 

4604 and follow Merlin's instructions.

that thou hast begonnew in this town, Now myht fou se, the table js of renown, of renown and of dignete oret; here sixt jou proved, and thow wilt wet.

4608 Now, sire kyng, from the wyl j gon, loke thou kepe wel these thynges echon, and that thow do aftyr myn cownsailee, for j suppose it wyle the somwhat avaylle."

4612 Merlin departs.

The king asks Merlin what has become of the dead courtier. Merlin gives him no satisfaction on this point; he tells him rather to mind his people and his feasts, he tells him rather to mind his people and his feasts,

Thus departyd merlyne from the kyng tho, and into othir contres gan forto go.

4616 The king erects fine buildings at Cardweil, and appoints general festivals to be held there regularly .

than the kyng, where he scholde holden his feste, Faire howses let he maken aftyr his heste. 

4616 The king erects fine buildings at Cardweil, and appoints general festivals to be held there regularly .

Thanne dede proclame the kyng anon alle these festes, everichon, that eche man at Cardwel scholde be atte these festes as 3e scholen se: 

4620 at Christmas, Easter, Pentecost, and All Saints' Day.

that is, at the feste of cristemasse, esterne, & pentecost, as j gesse, and je feste of alle halwen also, 

4624 [leaf 106 b] One Christmas, the ladies are also invited to the feast.

Thus departyd merlyne from the kyng tho, and into othir contres gan forto go.

4624 [leaf 106 b] One Christmas, the ladies are also invited to the feast.

Thanne answerede merlyne to him ryht there: "what nedeth the aftyr hym enqwere? For thowh thou wistest howh with hym it stood,jt scholde don the but litel good.

4600 he tells him rather to mind his people and his feasts,

but thenke on hem that there don Sytte, and how that thou schalt wel meynteyne jtte and othir thynges that belongen to the, thy cowrt, thy festes, and thy meyne, 

4604 and follow Merlin's instructions.

that thou hast begonnew in this town, Now myht fou se, the table js of renown, of renown and of dignete oret; here sixt jou proved, and thow wilt wet.

4608 Now, sire kyng, from the wyl j gon, loke thou kepe wel these thynges echon, and that thow do aftyr myn cownsailee, for j suppose it wyle the somwhat avaylle."

4612 Merlin departs.

The king asks Merlin what has become of the dead courtier. Merlin gives him no satisfaction on this point; he tells him rather to mind his people and his feasts, he tells him rather to mind his people and his feasts,
and also bothe knyhtes and bachelere, 
yn alle wises they scholden ben there.  
Jt were to longe here Names to telle, 
but of certeyn persones j schal 3ow spelle. 
there was the dewk of tyndagel 
and ygwerne, his wyf, that he loved ful wel, 
where-offen spekyth this storye, 
and a-forn opere putteth it jn memorye. 
Anon the kyng his love there sette 
(myht no man woman loven bette), 
and cow[n]tenance to hire made he non, 
but hire beheld most of echon. 
She notices it, 
so atte laste sche gan aspye 
that the kyng hire lovede prevlyye, 
as sche gan aspyen be his chere. 
and perfere sche schoned aforh to comen there, 
For sche was bothe good and fayr, trewly, 
and loved god and hire lord Sovereunly. 
and the kyng, for love of this lady fre, 
3iftes abowtes sente, ful gret plente 
of jewelys and many opere preciows thynges, 
Nowches, and broches, and manye riche rynges. 
and to Ygwerne he sente a precyows jwel, 
that he supposede scholde plesen here wel, 
asche sawh that to alle other ladyes he sente, 
So dorste sche not refwen his presente. 
and in hire herte this lady gan to remene 
that for hire love he dyde jf ful clene, 
and that sche scholde his 3ifte receyve, 
that from his love sche scholde not weyve. 

Thus the kyng there held his Festis 
with Ryalte, mynstrales, and many gestis. 
and algates he was with-owten wyf, 
and thus jn love morneng he ledde his lyf. 
For so was he set jn love of ygwerne, 
that from loves dart non man myht hym werne.
More festivals at Cardwell.

thus thanne vp Brak this ryal feste,
and þere the kyng preide both lest & meste
that at Cardweille they scholden alle be
atte the feste of esterne, jn that cyte,
and also alle the ladyses there everychon;
thanne they hym graunted ryht anon.

and whanne the dewk of tyndagel departed thenne,
the kyng hym conveyed with manye of his ñenne,
and hym dide bothe worschepe and honour,
& ek to that lady that jn his eye was flowlr.
and so of hem there he took,
(but evere for love his herte sore qwook),
and torned aßen, with-owten fable,
To the ffty knyhtes of his rownde table,
and axede hem leve, and wente his way,
and betawht hem god and many good day.
that so wente he forth Jn his jorne,
tyl the Feste of esterne cam aȝe.

So that at the feste of pask anon thanne
at cardweille assembled manye a ñanne;
of ladyses, of damyeles, and other ñenne
J wot there was Ful gret plente.
and mochel joye there-offe made þe kyng,
whanne þat he say thike fayre assemblyng,
and at the feste he wolde not werne,
but the dewk hym to-forn and his wyf ygwerne.

So that be His ȝyftes and His Entent,
sche wyste he hire lovede, verament.
so in gret thowht was that lady fre,
but al sche suffrede, as æedis it moste be.
and thus with gret ioie contenwed this feste
to alle tho ryaales, bothe lest and meste.

and whanne this feste was j-do,
reche lord took his leve hom to go.
and the kyng hem preide ouer alle thynge
to comen aßen at his Sendyng.
and they graunted hym everichon
that his comandement scholde be don.

4672 he sees the duke and duchess off with great honour,
4676 and takes leave of the knights of the round table.
4678 and orders all to come back by Easter;
4680 and takes leave of the knights of the Round table.
4684 At Easter, all meet again;
4688 and the king shows his love as before.
[leaf 166 c]
The enamoured king speaks with his council.

The king spends a year in yearning.

His privy council advise him not to go into Ygwerne's country,

but to have a feast again at Cardwell,

and there enjoy Ygwerne's society.

At Pentecost, the nobility assemble,

and the king bears his crown throughout the feast.

thus departyd this crowt thanne, and the kyng there lefte an hevy manne.

so al that 3er ju angwysch lyved he for Ygwerne's love, ful syker 3e be.

and whanne it cam to thende of the 3ere, he compleyned hym of his angwysch pere, that certeyn, for the love of ygwerne, no man to morn ne myhte hym werne.

thanne answerid his prevy cowneseyl ageyn : "what wil 3e pat we do, telle vs now pleyn !" "j wyle that 3e wolden me rede how that of hire J myhte spede." thanne seiden they to the kyng anon :

"3if 3e owht into that contre gon, anon discured scholen 3e be,

and pat were now worshepe to 3ow, Sykerle."

"cowneilleth me thanne what j schal do!"

and to the kyng thus answerede vnto :

"the beste cowneseyl Js, that we can,

that 3e don Somowne every man to ben at cardweille atte 3owre feste, and here ladys, bothe lest and neste, and that xv dayes it schal laste, that eche schal abyde, tyl that be paste, and so with-jinne thike xv dayes

with ygwerne mown 3e haven bothe dalyaunce & playes." this cowneiselle plesid ful wel the kyng, and he dyde aftyr here cowneisseleng.

So thanne sente the kyng messengeris anon To alle his Barowns thanne, everychon, at Pentecost at cardweille forto be, eche Barown and his lady so fre.

So comen they thedryr everychon the kynges commandement forto don.

At that Feste the kyng Bar corowne jn chirche, jn paleys, jn feld and towne.

and grete 3iftes 3af the kyng, certeinle, bothe to lordis and ladys, aftyr here degre.

4708. lyved, y corrected from e.
1713. cowneseyl, l squeezed in afterwards.
At that Feste ful joyful was the kyng, whanne that he Sawh that Fayre assemblyng.
So that he clepede on of his olde cownseiller, that ful mochel he trusted jn ther, hos name vlpyn thanne was, that the kyng clepede jn that plas, and axede of hym how that he schokde do for Ygwernes love, that wrowht hym wo— "that xethyr Sleping ne wakyng non reste, certeyne!
So that hire love doth me distreyne, and but j hane the bettere cownsaille, j am Siker to deyen, with-owten faylle.
" Now Sekerly, Sire, 3e ben to blame, that for a wommans love wenen to deye!
and it were to me ward, Sire, be my feye, as pore man as J am here on, and j lovede so as 3e now don, j wolde neuere deyen for hire Sake, but som othir xenes thanne wolde j make, owthyr with faire speche or jiftes grete, With dalyauce, and With love hyre throte, and to hem that ben hire abowte gret jiftes to 3yven, al that nowte. and a3ens this maner of werkynge herde j neuere wommans counterpletyng. and thou thy-self that art a kyng, wherto makyst thou al this morneng?"
thanne spak the kyng to vlpyn ageyn :
" thou seist wondirly wel, jn certeyn, and therto thow knowest what longeth perto Swich maner of werkynge forto do. and perfore, vlpyn, J the preye, helpe what pou canst be ony weye, and to my cofres thou go anon, & ches what jewelis pou wilt amonges hem echon, and 3eve to hem that ben hire abowtes there, of hire that j nyhte haven the better chere." "Now resteth, Sire," quod vlpyn tho, "and al my deligence j wele now do."

The king asks the advice of his confidant, Ulfin (cf. I 3709), with regard to his love-affair.
Ulfin encourages the king, recommending fair words and great presents, which no woman can resist.
The king charges Ulfin to distribute jewels.
Ulfin speaks enticingly to Ygwern. [CH. IV.

thus vndirook Sire vlphynes there
to helpen the kyng aftyr his powere.

than was the kyng joyful ju \textit{pat} stede,
For wel he hopede that vlphyn scholde sped.
and so that alle thike xv days
the kyng made grete joye and many playes,
and algates the dewk ju his compenye,
and many grete jewelis 3af he, Sekerlye.

thanne ju this mene whille also
vlphyn to ygwerne spak vnto,
and manye a niche jewel he hire browhte,
whiche \textit{pat} hire best scholde plesen him thowhte.
but ygwerne rescyevede non of al this,
For why he it dede, wel thowhte sche, j-wys.
so that jt happepe vppon a day
that ygwerne to vlphyn thus gan say :
"sey, vlphyn, what Js the cause and why
Swiche jiftes me to profren so prevly?"

"Lady, for 3owre bewte and 3owre semblance,
For 3owre discresciown and good dalyawnce,
For 3owre hyghe wyt and 3owre brownte,
alle these Londis goodis, 3owre they be,
and alle mennes persones to 3ow scholen obeye
as to here owne Sovereyn lady, Sekerlye."
"how myhte this be," quod Ygwerne thanne,
"that to me scholde obeye so manye a manne?"

"For his herte havem 3e al only
to whom alle \textit{men} scholen obienc lowly."
"O Lord god, ho may that be?
j praye the, vlphyn, telle \textit{pon} now me!"

"the kynges herte," seide vlphyn than.
Anon to blesseen sche hire be-gan,
and sayde : "how longe hath the kyng a tretour be,
that my lord So worschepith to-fern me,
and me wolde don so fowl a schame,
and \textit{perto} bryngen me jnto endeles blame?"
Therfore, sire vlphyn, j warne the,

\textbf{4784.} \textit{hif, f} through correction.
\textbf{4809.} \textit{al} added above the line.
\textbf{4813.} \textit{than}, a rendered distincter afterwards.
that neuere more swich wordis þou speke to me. 

and þif thow it evere do, þin certeyn, 
j schal þt tellen my lord, ful pleyn.
And þif there-offen he knowe, trewlye, 
Ful Syker thou be that thow schalt deye!"

thanne answerede Sire vlphyn ageyn :
“that were noþ resown, þin certeyn, 
that þo so for my lord Scholde now deye.
Now þe ben to blamen, ful trewelye, 
that þe refusen so nyal a thynge, 
to haven bothe the love and þe herte of a kyng, 
that so þow loveth aboven alle erthly creature, 
So whethir to lyven opot deyen he not, þj 3ow enswre, 
but lyveth þin hope as a woful manne.”

“þe gabben,” quod Ygwerne to vlphyn thanne.

“Nay, but þat þe wele now mercy have
Vppon 3owre Kyng, And 3owre-self to save.

and but þe don as þj 3ow here say, 
gret deseise may fallen with-jyne schort day.
For Nethyr 3owre lord ne þe ne mowen non thynge 
withstonen ægens the wylle of the kyng.”

thanne seide Ygwerne and answered ageyn, 
Ful sore wepynge thanne, þin certeyn :
“þif þe move, þj schal me defende, 
j schal him Neuere sen, thowh he for me sende!”

Thus departyd they thanne anon, 
and Sire vlphyn to the kyng is gon, 
and tolde the kyng everty word thanne.
þe kyng seide : “sche answerede as a good wommane !
Neuertheless, vlphyn, þit not thow leve, 
For a good womman hire-self wyle preve 
and not so sone ouercomen to be ;
þit forto assayen þe preye to the.”

So it happede that on the xj day 
aftyr pentecost, as þj 3ow say, 
the kyng at his METE sat ful lel, 
and with hym the dewk of tyndagel.

4853. the, þ corrected from e.
The king sends a gold cup to Ygvern. [CH. IV.

a ful niche cowpe stood to-fore the kyng, and ylphyn, that was to-forn him knelyng:

"Syre, take 3e this cuppe & sende Ygwerne, and for 3owre loue to drynken let hire not werne. 4860

preye 3e the dewk jt nyhte so be, and as hire owne stille it to kepen for the." 4862

thanne to this dewk spak the kyng, and him preyde to fulfillen his askyng,

"and for my love to drynken, and me hauen jn mende; and that sche the cowpe kepe now styyle,
to don ther-with at hire owne wylle." 4863

thanne answerede that worthy manne, that now maner of evel thowhte he thanne, and clepyd a knyht, that him stood besyde,

that with hym was preyv jn eche tyde:

"Tak 3e this cowpe here ryht anon, and to 3owre lady there-with 3e gon, and seyth to hire on this manere,
that sche here-offen drynke with ryht good chere, hertylich for love of the kyng, and the cowpe to kepen to hire wielyng." 4872

This knyht Bretel wyth pe cowpe wente ful softe, and the dewk the kyng there-offen thankyde ofte. 4880
Forth this Bretel to chambre gan gon, There as these ladiyes sten everychon, and toforn his lady he knelyd a-down, as to a worthy lady of renown. 4884

"Lady, this cowpe 3ow sendeth the kyng, and my Lord 3ow comandeth ouer alle thing
For the kynges love to drynken with good chere, and stille pe cowpe to kepen jn fair manere." 4888

Whanne this lady these wordis herde, ful red sche wax, and aschamed sche ferde, and dorste not refusen hire lordis byddyng, and drank of this cowpe, and wolde han sent it the kyng. thanne seide Bretel to that lady fre:

4860. loue added afterwards above the line.
4879. wyth, y corrected from c.
“stille it to kep en my lord comanded the, and so the kyang hym faire preide, thanne say this lady pat for good ne ylle but that thike cowpe sche moste kep en stytle. and Bretel azen to halle was gong, and on Ygwerne's be-halve thankyd pe kyang, Not-withstondyng sche seide non word To Bretel, whiles sche sat atte bord. Ful mochel joye made the kyang tho, that ygwerne his cowpe rescveyved so. thanne vlphyn anon to chambre pe weye gon take, To sen what semblance Ygwerne dide make. And þere He Fond Hyre þin pensynnesse, angry of chere, and ful of hevynesse. and whanne the tables j-drawn were, anon cleped sche vlphyn to hire there, and Seide: “be tresown thy lord the kyang me a cowpe hath sent, azen my willyng, but lytel wyynenge to hym schal þt be, For my lord þ wele it telfen, Sykerle, what tresown that the kyang and þe han purchased azen my lord & me!” thanne answerde here vlphyn ageyn: “beth wel war what þe don Seyn!” thanne answerede this lady fre: “blame haue he þat spare for hym ðber the that þe ne schal telfen, every word, the tresown of the and of thy lord!” Thens vlphynes departyd, and cam to halle, There as weren these lordis alle. the kyang hadde whaschen and þe bord j-drawe, and þin herte was the kyang bothen joyful and fawe, and took the dewk be the hond anon: “Sire, jnto chambre now lete vs gon thanne wente the kyang & þe dewk anon, there as Ygwerne et, þei come thusson. thanne wiste ygwerne ful witterly Ygwerne is requested to keep the cup. Bretel returns to the king and thanks him on Ygwerne's behalf, although she has said nothing. The king is delighted. Ulfin goes to see Ygwerne, whom he finds angry and sad. She com- plains of treason, and declares she will inform her husband. Ulfin tells her to beware, but cannot deter her. The king, after his meal, goes with the duke to the ladies' room.
Ygwern complains to her husband. [CH. IV.

Ygwern knows it is for her sake.

that for here jt was only.
so this sche suffrede al that day
with sorweful herte and sore afray.

Ygwern protests to her Misband.

So that at nyht to hire ostel sche wente
with hevy chere and wepyng, veramente.
and whanne the dewk Sawh hire of that chere,
he axede hire what that hire rylyde there,
and embraces hire in his armes two,
and axede hire what the cause was tho.

"Forsythe to 30w non thing wyl j hele,
but j schal tellen 30w everydele
as to my lord that j love most of alle thing
aboven alle creatures jn yrthe leveng.
here js the kyng, my lord and 30wre,
he loveth me with great dishonoure.
For alle these cowrtes, and this feste,
and je sonde of these ladyes, bothe lest and meste,
js not for non thing but only for me,
that j with 30w scholde comen, Sykerle.
thus many giftes he hath me sente,
and j non rescuyved, verament.
and thus be bretel 3e sente me to say
the cowpe hat j scholde rescuyve this day,
and that for his love drynken J scholde,
and aftyr to kepen the cuppe of goolde,
that Syker j hadde as leef ded forto haue be
as jt han rescuyved so, Sykerle.
and what for hym and fore vlpheyn
j may non reste haven, souercayn myn!
"Thazne se j be soure wordis here,
with-owte velonye to remove, a maistrye it were."
"3e, worthy souercayn, j preye to the
To tyudagel that 3e wolden leden me,
and jn this place non lengere abyden here,
but jn owre owne lordschepe hat we were!"
and whanne the dewk herde at this,
anon ful wroth he was, j-wys,
and sente aftyr his knyhtes faste,
that to hym they scholde comen jn haste.
and whanne to hym they were comen echon,
To hem thanne seide the dewk anon:
"Retorne 30w faste forte ryde,
and pat non man pre-eoffe wyte this tyde,
Neper axeth not of me the causes why,
for j schal 30w it telyn ful pleyly."
thus the dewk with his meyne
into his contre ladde his lady fre.

Vpon the morewen, Whanne Jt Was day,
Whanne the kyng Wyste of this affray,
how that the dewk thus was agon,
the dwchesse, and the meyne echon,
he sente aften his cownsyl jn hye,
and told hem of this velenye,
also of the spyt he hadde hym j-don,
to hym and to alle his Baronye echon;
where-offen merveillede al that Feste
that there beleften, bothe lest and neste.
thus Spoken they alle of this clause,
but lytel wisten they what was his cause.
"J take witnesse," quod the kyng, "of 30w in fere
that more worchepe J dede hym here
thanne to ony oper j dede at ñe feste present."
and that wisten they alle wel, verament.
"and 30w like," quod the kyng,
"J schal him sende newe tedyng,
that he come and amendis make
of that he hath ažens me take,
and that jn the same degre he hennes wente,
that he ažen come with good entente."
and herto acorded his cownsaille,
3if that it nyhte ony thyng avaylle.
and on the kynges behalve, verament,
twayne worthy men weren there sent,
and comen streyhht nedynghe to Tyndagel.
the dewk they fownden & his meyne eche del,
and seiden as they were charged of the kyng,
and of the dewk they abyden here answeryng.

133. CH. IV. The duke leaves the court in anger.

gives orders for a sudden and secret departure.
and returns to his own country.
He calls in his council, relates what has happened,
reminds them of the honour he has always shown the duke,
and says he should like to send orders for him to return with the same company with which he left.

Two messengers are sent to Tyndagel.

4980. Contre, c corrected from l.
5009. wer', r' through correction.
The duke refuses to return.

Whanne the dewk vn distort had this,
that nedis he moste azen comen, j-wis,
jn the same degré that he was there,
thanne moste with hym gon ygwerne, his fere,
and that wolde he fer non maner of thyng,
and nyht so sente he to seyne to the kyng,
and seide: "to cowrt j wele not còn
amongis hem that ben my fon!"
thus thanne wente þe messengeris ageyn,
and the answere tolde the kyng, ful pleyn.

thanne, whanne these messengeris wereni agon,
þe dewk aftyr his cowneis1 thanne sente anon,
and tolde hem the cause ful pleynly,
the cause of his comeng so hastely,
and what schame the kyng gan hym purchase,
that causd hym to voyden owt of þat plase.
and whanne they herden his pleyneng,
they 30ven the dewk good comfortyng,
and seiden: "he þat schame to his lige wyle purchase,
on hym may be-happen the same grace!"
Thanne preyde hem the dewk anon
hem of helpe and socour everichon,
and his lond helpen to define,
þif þe kyng on hym ony werre wolde sende.
so that him they grawntyd, with-owten stryf,
To lesen bothe here hedes and lyf.

whanne þe messengeris to Cardwel were comen jn fere,
The kyng they fownden and þe barowns there,
and word for word they tolden the kyng
what maner was þe dewkis answeryng.

thanne seiden þe barowns that were there,
they merveilled mochel of his answere,
For they helden hym a ful wys man,
what that so evere eylede hym than.

thanne preide the kyng his barowns anon
hym helpen to avengen of his foun
and of the dispyt he hath him do—
"and my feste thus disturbed so."

Thanne answerede these barows ageyn,
And preyden the Kyng alle, Ful pleyn,
Preparations for war.

of fowrty dayes to seuen hym warneng;
and the kyng hem graunted here askyng.
thanne sente the kyng messengeris ful LeL
to the dewk of tyndagel,
and seide, atte the fowrtythe day
he wolde him visite, gif he may
and þerto he preide his barownes ðechon
redy to ben with hym thedyr to gon.
and whazne the dewk herde this tydyng,
the dewk hym purveyed jn alle thing,
and abowtes sente faste to his ðeyne
hym helpen forto socoure jn that degre.
and they senten answere ðegen there,
they wolden þt don to here powere.
thanne seide the dewk to his cownseylle,
he ne hadde but twey castelis þat myhte avaylle—
"whiche nethir of thike two
he schal neuere wynne, what he kan do.
þeoure jn tyndagel j schal leven Þgwerne,
and ten knyhtes hire forto governe,
the wheche of non assawt ðyven cure
of non man lyvenge, J 3ow ensvre.
and to the tothyr j wele go,
þere to defenden me fro my fo,
For of non assawt j ne rekke,
thowh he æzens me ordeyne neuer so wykke!"
and that castel fyl strong he gan to make
al only for the kynges Sake.
thanne to þe kyng comen þe messengeres ægeyn,
and tolden þe answere to þe kyng, ful pleyn,
that he wolde defenden hym to his myht,
as he was trewe an a gentyl knyht.
thanne sente the kyng aftyr his barown
thorwh-owt al his regiown,
and made hem to semblen al jn fere
atte the entre of the dewkis lond þere,
beside a ryver jn a fair mede;
the barowns þere semblade jn þat stede.
and whanne they weron assembled euerichon,
the kyng rehearsed the dispyt anon.
The king besieges the duke's castle.

The king invades the duke's land.

He hears about the two castles.

and resolves to try to take the duke's castle first.

Ulphyn exhorts him to be patient in the meantime.

The castle, however, cannot be taken, and the king frets.

One day, he is seen weeping in his tent.

that the dewk dyde in his plas,
at his feste there he was.
and thus entred þe kyng with his meyne
junto þe dewkis lond, ful Sykerle,
and there sesede he al his lond,
as J do zow now forto vndirstond.

thanne was Jt told to the kyng
that in tyndagel, with-owten leysung,
that þere-jinne was Ygwerne þat dewchesse
Jn strong hold and in distresse,
and the dewk in a-nothyr castel was,
that was not allynge so strong a plas.

thanne axede the kyng anon cowthaille,
which castel he scholde ferst assaylle.

Ulphyn seide vlphyn to hym ageyne:
"sit a while þe mosten Suffren payne
for a thing þat may not þit be,
to the ende moste ben suffred, parde!"

Longe lay the kyng At this Castel,
but hit avayllede hym nevere a del,
So that he was Jn his gret morneng,
for to that castel he myhte don non thing,
and alther most for love of the dewchesse,
wichhe browhte his herte in gret distresse.

So that vppon a day, as þt fyl thore,
jn his pavylown he wepte ful sore,
and his meyne gooznen it to aspye,
and thens they wenten ful prevylye.
Ulfin advises the king to send for Merlin.

Ulfin goes to the king, and asks him why he weeps.

The king says that Ulfin knows the reason well.

Ulfin, after censuring the king for his weakness, advises him to send for Merlin, and to give him anything he shall demand for his help.

The King fears that Merlin is angry on account of the attempt to fill the vacant seat, and on account of the king’s unlawful love.

5131. MS. axke.
Merlin appears to Ulfin as an old man, [CH. IV.

and j wot wel he wil me telle myn entent, that this was þe cause J fore hym sent."
“of on thing,” quod vlfyn, “J schal 3ow telle:
he is heyl and sound þi flesch and felle,
and 3if he 3ow love as 3e suppose he do,
he wyl non while now ben 3ow fro,
þif that he knowe 3owre distresse
owther ony part of 3oure heyynesse;
that some tydynges scholen þe here
of hym, and þerefore be of ryht good chere!”

Thus comforted sire vlfyn the kyng,
and bad hym to beleven his morneng,
and þere to senden after his men,
and to hem gret joye to make than;
his payne so scholde he thanne forgete,
and solace and mirthe there to hym gete.
the kyng hym seide, he wolde so do—
“but my love may j not forgeten so.”
þanne thus the castel the kyng gan assaille,
but lytel oper nowht þt dede hym avaylle.
Jt happede vppon a day that vlfyn rod
þorwh-owt þe ost, and not abod,
And mette there With a semly man,
that þis Sire vlfyn knew not than.
þanne seide þis good man to vlfyn tho:
“Sire, j wolde with 3ow speken a word oper two.”
thanne seide sire vlfyn to hym ageyn:
“and with 3ow, Sire, now þin certeyn!”
So forth they wenten, ful wel j wot,
vlfyn on hors-bak, & þe good man on fote.
and there Sire vlfyn alyht a-down
with þat good man to han Som resown.
and þere toldde vlfyn of manye a thyng

5172. heynesse, y corrected from c.
5190. with, w corrected from j.
that to vlphyn there was wel knowen,
and atte laste tolde hym Jn cownseyl
how he hadde j-ben atte Tyndagel,
and that but lytel while ago—
“where as a good man Seide me vnto
that 3owre kyng lovede the dewkis wyf,
and for hirr distrest sore of his lif,
and 3oure kyng hath distroyed his lond,
For he ladde ygwerne from cardweill,
j and, Sire, and 3e wylen vndirstonden me,
J knowe that there is a good man
that 3ow with ygwerne schal don speken than,
and that ful wel kan cownseillen 3oure kyng
of al his love to hauyn fondyng.”
and whanne that vlphyn herde al this,
he merveillede what man he was, j-wis,
and preide hym to leven alle manere of thing,
and that man to bringen to the kyng
that of his love him cowde cownseille,
the bettere that it hym myhte avaylle.
thanne seide the old man ageyn :
“J wile ferst knowen my wages, certeyn.”
thanne axede of hym vlphyn there :
“where schal j 3ow fynde, telle me now here.”
“Morwen 3e scholen me here fynde
betwene this and þe ost, hane þis jn mynde.”
and so there departure they ful snelle,
and seide to vlphyn þat he wolde hym telle
vpon the morwen Swiche tydyn—
“that to thin hertþ schal ben gret lykyng.”
Anon Sire vlphyn to the kyng gan gon,
and told hym these wordis everichon.
thanne, whanne the kyng herde al this,
he lowhe and made gret joye and blis.
thanne seide the kyng to vlphyn age :
“knowe þe þat þan, and þe hym se?”
“þe, sire, it is nyht an old man
Merlin appears as a blind cripple.

The king inquires about the appointed meeting.

He is willing to give any reward.

Next morning Ulfin and the king ride forth.

They see a blind cripple, who calls out that he can help the king.

The king looks at Ulfin, and asks if that is the man.

Ulfin says no.

and feble, as j discryven kan."

"Sire vlphin, whanne hath he behoten the azen to meten with zow, certeinle?"

"To morwen j moste with hym mete,

and hym to tellen what 3e him behete."

thanane seide the kyng, with-owten drede:

"thedyr, vlphyn, j preye thou me lede!"

"Sire, gladly," quod vlphyn, "that wyl j do."

"and jif behynden me 3e speken hym vnto,

So behoteth hym what he wyle have, o3er ony thing that he wyle of 30w crave!"

and thus abyden they al that nyht,

and the kyng was bothe joyful and lyht,

mochel meriere thanne he was to-fore,

that ony of his men knewen thore.

On the morwe, aftyr masse, thazne vlphyn rod,

and the kyng aftyr not longe abod, but rod into swich a partye

As he Was Gyded, sekerlye.

and whanne the ost they gonnen to pase,

a lame man Syen they jn that plase,

that Nethir ne myht gon ne Se,

thus semed hem, ful certeinle.

So that anon they pasten hym by,

and thussone he sette vpe a lowd Cry.

he seide: "sire kyng, god fulfille thi wille,

alle that thin herte desireth vntyle!"

and jif thou wilt seve3en me ony thyng,

j schal fulfille thyn owne desireng."

thanane loked the kyng on vlphin ful snelle,

and seide: "is thys he that scholde me telle

of myn desir and of myn honour?

how hast thou, vlphin, don thyn labour?"

" Nay, Sire," quod vlphyn, "jt nis not he

that j schold hauen, Sire, Sikerle,

that scholde me tellen of thy chawnse,

jt nys not he, with-owten variaunce."
Ulfin speaks to the cripple.

"knowest thou him that scholde metèn the,
and of thing that j most love, to tellen me?
go thow to hym, & thus thou say,
that j the to hym sente this day,
and pat he schal have that he wyle axen of me,
of that j am jn sesyd, ful Sekerle;
he schal it haven at his owne wille,
3if that my desir he wyl fulfille!"

vlphyn this word non thing ne took,
but sette hym down, and pe arende forsook,
besides this lame man sette hym adown.
thusone of vlphyn he axede a resown,
and axede of hym what he dide there,
he seide: "the kynge sente me to the,
and me to the hath j0ven, ful sikerle."
thanne gan to lawhen this man anon,
and seide pat—"pe kynge parceyved me son,
and knoweth me bettere thanne jou dost,
and seeth in me more thanne thou wost.
j wil that thou knowe, certeinle,
that thike old man me sente to the;
but of non thing j wyl the telle
of owht pat he to me of gan spelle.
go thow forth faste to the kyng,
and seie hym: and he wil hauen his askynge,
crete 3iftes moste he 3even, Ju fay,
his wil to parforme, 3if that J may.
For fulsone hadde he parceyved me,
perfore pe bettree with hym schal it be."
"Fayn wolde j," quod vlphin, "of 3ow enqwere,
what that 3e ben, to tellen me here."
"Axe thou thy kyng," thanne seide this man,
"For he ful wel tellen the can."
thanne to horsbak wente vlphin anon,
and faste aftyr the kyng gan he gon.
and whanne the kyng Sawh hym comen nydyne:
"vlphin, wherto comest thou, and for what thinge?
whanne to that man zaf j the,

5315. mā added above the line.
Merlin arrives in his true shape.

Ulfin tells the king what the cripple has said.

The king declares that the seemly old man and the cripple are the same person:

Meanwhile, Merlin has gone to the king's tent in his natural shape.

The king, being told, quickly makes for home.

Ulfin commands Merlin's power.

They find Merlin in the tent.

Merlin arrives in his true shape. [CH. IV.]

wherto comest thou azen to me?"

thanne seide vlphyn to hym ageyn:

"he seith 3e knewen hym, ju certeyn, and konnen me tellen what that he is; thus to me, Sire kyng, he seide j-wys."

"Sye thou that man that spak to the jn semblauence of an old man so feythfulle?— and this man that thaw sye here this day, al it is on, Sire vlphyn, with-owten nay."

"A, Sire kyng, how may this be, Sure, that a man him-self scholde disfegure?"

"3e, Syre, J Hym knowe Wel and fyne, For this same man, it js merlyne!"

Azen thanne wenten they bothe jn fere anon with merlyne to spoken there.

and merlyne was gon to je kynges tente jn his ryht Semblauence, veramente, and axede aftyr the kyng anon.

thanne to seken wente messengers þussôn, and metten the kyng, and him tolde that merlyne was comen and hym haven wolde.

thanne was the kyng so joyful a man, that on word ne cowde he spoken than, but tornede ageyn with al his myht, and to hym clepede vlphyn ful ryht, and seide: "it is as j the seye: Merlyne js comen now, certeinlye!"

quod vlphyn: "now that 3e haven hym at 3owre will, alle 3oure desire he may fulfylle.

and loke þat [3e] grauaten hym that he wyl have, owther of 3oure good what he wyl krave, For þere nys no man þat kane so wel as he to ygwermes love 3ow bryngen, sykerle."

thanne to hym seide the kyng ageyn: "his wille wile j fulfillen, certeyn!"

Thus riden they forth to þe kynges tente, there Fowden merlyn anon presente.

5345. MS. y' graiden.
and whanne the kyng hym gan aspye,
to hym he ran ful hastilye,
and hym embraced, and kyste also,
and ful grete joye he made him tho,
and seide that ryht welcomen he was,
and often hym kyste ju that plas,
and seide: "to 3ow j wolde me compleyne,
but 3e knowen it as wel as j, certeyne;
For was there never non man
that me can declaren that 3e kan;
and perfore j preye 3ow, for charite,
of myn hertly desir to helpen me!"
"j vndirstandde 3ow wel, with-owten Nay,
but with-owten [vlphyn] j schal nowth Say."
thanne wenten they alle thre on syde,
and ju counseill spoken that jike tyde.
thanne tolde the kyng to Merlyne anone
that to vlphyn he tolde thussone—
"that 3e weren that olde man,
and sethen the toper 3at he beheld than."
thanne vlphyn faste beheld him there:
"may it so ben ju ony manere,
lyk as the kyng here telleth me?"
"3e, Sire vlphyn," quod merlyne, "certeinle!
For assone as he the to me sente,
thanne wisty wel he hadde knoweliching, veramente."
"Now, Sire kyng," quod vlphyn thanne,
"Speke 3e to merlyne, this good manne,
of Swich things as 3e haven to do,
and that he wolde 3ow helpen perto."

The king implores Merlin's assistance.

5356 The king gives him a hearty welcome.
5360 and refers to his own sore distress.
5364 Merlin says he understands him.
5368 The king tells Merlin of his having seen through his twofold disguise.
5372 Ulfin is incredulous.
5375 lyk, l through correction.
5376 but Merlin confirms the king's words.
5380 of Swich things as 3e haven to do.
5384 Merlin knows all his thoughts.
5388 and implores his assistance.

5366. MS. with owten j.
5375. lyk, l through correction.
5378. MS. wifly.
Merlin swears the king and Ulfin. [CH. IV.

and what thing that ever thou biddest me do, J schal it fulfillen with-owten mo!"

thanane seide to hym merlyne ageyn:
“and thow wilt fulfillen, ju certeyn, Of thing that j schal axen of the,
Ryht Wel thyn Arende J-sped schal be,
and jn hire chambre schalt thow Slepe, and juto hire bed schalt thow lepe, and liggen to-gederis bothe two,
body to body, er that thow go.”

thanane gan to lawhen Sire vlphyn, whanne he herde that so spak merlyn.

thanane seide the kyng to Merlyne tho:
“herkeneth now what j sey 30w vnto:
loke what maner of thing that 3e wilen crave; and it mowe be fownden, 3e scholen it have!”

thanane answeryd merlyne, ful certeinle:
“how perch-offen nyht y Syker now be?”

thanane seide the kyng to merlyne ageyn:
“what Sewrawnce axen 3e, sey me ful pleyn, and j schal fulfillen thy wille,
what so ever come me vntylye!”

“j wyle that vlphyn swere to me that perch-offen siker schal j be, and whanne to me hath he sworn everydel, vppon the morwen, wete thou ryht wel that al thy wil schalt thow have of me, swich thing as pou dost crave.”

thanane seide the kyng, he wolde fulfille alle pat evere he seide hym vntylye.

thanane axede Merlyne of vlphyn there 3if that Sewrawnce he wolde swere.
“jt forthenketh me,” quod vlphyn, “trewely, that oth to swere, natheles wele j.”

Whanne merlyne herde this acord, anon gan he lawhen at that word, and axede whanne pe Surawnce mad scholde be. thanane anon the kyng let bryngen, Sykerle, alle the meliques that he hadde there,
and his other holy things Jn fere;
and eere-vpon Sworen they bothe two
that merlyne to hem devisede tho.
and they sworn be his Sewrawnce,
jt scholde be don with-owten variawnce,
with-owten frawde other mal-engyne;
this oth Sworen they to merlyne.
and after this, with-owten dowtaunce,
the kyng to vlphyn swor, with-owten variawnce,
To kepen sekerly that he hadde hyht,
as that he was a trewe knyht,
thanne seide the kyng to Merlyne tho:
"Now sethen oure Surawnce 
it we have do,
that we wolden don that we hauen liyht,
and therto to putten alle oure Myht,
my desir forto don and to fulfille
of thyke that j spak to 30w of vntylle!"
thanne seide merlyne to the kyng:
"30w behoveth over alle maner thing
to ben sad Jn 30we governaunce,
For sche is wis, with-owten varyaunce,
and therto trewe azens god and man.
and now the sothe j schal preven 30w than,
what power j haue hyre forto engyne,
3e scholen now heren be craft myne.
the semblauwce of j dewk j wyl putten to the,
that non man schal 30w from hym knowen, sikere.
and thike dewk hath two knyhtes,
that he trosteth passyng owt-ryhtes,
and to hym they ben most preve
of alle j men in cristyente,
and to Ygwerne they ben also
the prevyest men that mown go.
the ton of hem Sire Bretei lyhte,
The tothir, jordayns, a man of myhte.
And Breteis semblauwce j wil take,
And Vlphyn Jordayns Schal not Forsake.
so the castel gates j schal don vndo,
and jn to entren, with-owten mo,
alle thre jn this Semblauwce;
MERLIN.

CH. IV.]  Merlin's scheme to help the king.  145

First the
king and
Ulfen swear
on the relics
after Merlin's
dictation;

then the
king swears
another oath
for the secu-
ritry of Ulfen.

This being
done, Merlin
says:
"You must
act pru-
dently,
for Ygwern
is a wise and
ture woman.
I will put on
you the figure
of the duke.
The duke
has two
confidants,

Bretel (p. 130)
and Jordan.

I and Ulfen
will take
[leaf 109 b]
their shapes.
Thus we shall
all get into
Ygwern's
castle.
The king, Ulfin, and Merlin are transformed. [CH. IV.

Meanwhile, let your barons stay quietly outside the duke's castle, and tell nobody where we are going.

The king follows Merlin's directions, and the three start for Tyndagel.

Anon the kyng dyde his devere
of thinges that merlyne comanded hym here.

and whanne that thus hadde he do,
thanne anon to merlyne gan he go,
and seide: "j have fulfild sowre byddyng,
Now do ye myn owr alle thynge!"
"Lete vs remove," quod merlyne, "welsone,
and alle thre to-gederis scholen we gone."

So longe alle thre to-gederis paste,
that to tyndagel they come atte laste.
thanne seide merlyne to the kyng:
"betwixen vilphyn and me make sowre abydynge."
and whanne merlyne hadde wrowht al his thynge,
thanne seide he anon to the kyng:

"Take ye this herbe that is here,
and Frote sowre visage al ju fere,
sowre hondis, sowre body, sowre feet also;
ju alle wyse that ye thins do."

the kyng thanne dide his commaundement.
thanne hadde he hol semblance, verament,
lik as the dewk it hadde j-be,
j Seye sow, Sires, ful certeinle.
thanne cam merlyne to ye kyng:

5470. The line was omitted and then written down the margin.
5492. tyndagel, dag through correction (probably from gel).
They get into Ygwern’s castle.

"be-thenke jow now of a thyng:
3if evere jordayn that 3e sye."

"jis," quod the kyng thanne, "Sekerlye!" 5508
thussone hadde vlyphyn jordayns lyknesse;
To-forn the kyng he gan him dresse.
and whanne the kyng beheld al this,
he nervede howh it myhte ben, j-wis. 5512
thanne axede the kyng of vlyphyn there :
"how thankest thou be my semblance here?"
"Sire," quod vlyphyn, "be this day
j knowe 3ow not but for 3e dewk, jn fay!" 5516
and the kyng him tolde, with-owten varyawnce,
that eveene hadde he jordayns Semlawnce.
and thanne loked they bothe vppon Merlyn tho,
and Bretelis semblawnce hem semede bothe two. 5520
thanne thus abyden they al jn fere,
tyl that the day was past so clere.

and whanne the day was over past,
toward the castel they comen jn hast,
and comen to the castel gate,
and Merlyn, as Bretel, clepid pere-ate.
thanne 3e meyne that was pere with-june,
comen to the gate, and wolden not blynne. 5528
and whanne they Syen the dewk verrayly,
as to here Semeng, ful certeinally :
"openeth the gate, taketh ju 3owre lord!" 5532
thus seide Merlyn jn Bretelis word.
thanne thowhten alle pote with-june weren than,
that it was the dewk, Bretel, & jordayn.
thanne Bretel charged al that meyne
That jn alle things they scholde kep en it preve— 5536
[leaf 109 c]
"And telleth non man of the dukes comenge,
J 3ow charge aboven alle thynge.” 5540
but certein peple jnowe pere were
that the dwichesse it toholde to there.
and tyl they comen jnto 3e jnere paleys,
ër thanne wolde they not Ses.

The king is desired to think of Jordan, and in the same moment Ufyn stands before him in Jordan’s shape.

Merlin puts on the appearance of Bretel.
In the evening they all go to Ygwern’s castle.

Merlin tells the garrison to let in their lord, and to keep his arrival secret.

5506. a added above the line.
5509. vlyphyn, v corrected from j.
5522. ut, j corrected from t.
The king, attended by Merlin and Ulfen, goes into Ygwerne's bedroom.

She is joyful at the arrival of the pretended husband.

In the morning, there arrives news of a battle in which the duke has been killed.

Merlin steals into the bedroom, and asks the king to rise

and to hasten home, as his people must think him dead.

The king rises,

bids a loving farewell to Ygwerne,

and Merlyn took the kyng on side,
and hym cowseilled that jlike tyde
that of lyht there he Scholde be.

and so jnto chambr weaten they alle thre,
there as Ygwerne on bedde lay;
alle thre they weren, the sothe to say.

and as hastily as they myhte,
the kyng sone they gonnen vndyhte,
ty1 that with ygwerne jn bedde he was,
where Arthewr was be-geten jn put plas.

gret Joyce thanne made that lady,
that hire lord wende have had, verrayly,
which that sche loveved Jn herte and thowht;
but thanne anothir was to hire j-browht.

and thus to-gederis they lyen that nyht,
the duchesse and that gentyl knyht,
and tyl on the morwen, that it was day,
that jn the town they gonne to say

that the dewk j-slayn there was,
and his styward taken Jn that plas.

Anon cam merlyne ful prevyly
phere as the kyng lay the lady by,
and seide: "Sire, now ryseth vp anon,
For merveillus tydynges here now gon,
that algates 3e scholden ben ded;
pherfore rise vpe owt of this sted!

and that 3e weren at jowre castel,
For al jowre peple weneth ful wel
that Sekerly 3e scholden ben slayn;
Swiche wordis ben comen, Jn certayn."

"Non wondir," quod the kyng tho,
"For so prevyly j gan from hem go,
that there-offen ne wyste knyht ne sweyne
Sauf onliche J and 3e twayne."
thanne vpe he ros, and non lengere abod,
and to-forn hem alle that there stod
he took his leve of gentyl Ygwerne,
and hire often kyste, and wolde not werne,

5565. rp added above the line.
and issed owt of that castel,
that be hym Supposede non man but wel.

And whanne that owt they weren j-gon,
thanne seide merlyne to the kyng anon:
"I haue the fulfyld myn covenaint,
that j the made, and myn avenant,
and perchore loke that thou holde me myne,"
Seide to the kyng thanne merlyne.
"that is ful trewe," quod the kyng tho,
"Ful good Servyse ze han me do.
bettere neure man to oper don myhte,
as that j am a gentyl knyhte.
and therfore thy mede qweten J schal,
as j am trewe kyng j-kyd oueral.
Sey on what thyng that thow wilt crave,
and Faithfully thou schalt it haue!"
thanne seide Merlyne to hym ageyn:
"An eyr thow hast be-getyn, jn certeyn,
upon Ygwern that dewchesse,
which is a sone, jn ful Sekernesse,
and that child hast thou zoven me
For my gwerdoun, Sire, Sikerle.
and loke that thou wryte bothle day and owr
That thou hast wrowht this dishonowr;
thanne schalt thou knowen in eche weye
3yf Jt be trowthe that J the seye."
Anon Rihlt so thanne dede the kyng,
and fulfilled al his askyng.

So thanne reden they forth al ju fere,
Tyl that they comen to on revere,
and there they wescben hem alle thre
here owne Semblauwce to haven, sekerle.
So pasten they forth in gret haste,
tyl to here ost they comen atte laste.
and whanne that his meyne gan hym aspye,
abowtes hym they flokkeden hastelye,
and of hem axede he anon

and passes out of the castle.
Now Merlin reminds him of their agreement.
The king declares he will keep it.
Merlin demands the fruit of the king’s unlawful intercourse:
his son and heir, whom Ygwern will give birth to.
The king assents.
The three men ride to a river,
wash there,
recover their natural shapes,
and get back to the army.

5599. that corrected from the.
The death of the duke.

The king is told how the duke, when noticing the king's absence from the army,

made a sally from the castle,

and was killed in the ensuing battle.

The king is sorry.

how that the dewk ded was so sou.
and they hym tolden, ful certeynylye,
how that cas befyl, ful openlye:

"It happed, as sone as 3e were gon,
Ful preve we kepten vs everychon;
and that parecwyn the dewk thussone,
that owt of the ost 3e were gone,
and dyde armen his men jn haste,
that so on vs they comen welfaste,
and mochel harm deden on owre meyne.
anon to armes thanne gonnen we fle,
and vppon hem we precede welfaste,
tyl to the 3ates we comen atte haste.
So there the dewk fawht sore, certeyn,
tyl that his hors vndyr hym was Slayn,
and there the dewk was beten adown
with 3owre men abowtes jn virown,
whiche that knewen hym non thyng,
that so cawhte he there his endyng.
and the remenaunt of his meyne fowhten wel sore,
whanne that they syen here lord ded thore."

Thanne onerthowhte the kyng ful sore, j-wis,
of the dewkys deth, with-owten mys.

Chap. V.

Thus, as this Storye Reherseth wel,
Ended the dewk of tyndagel;
and the kyng onerthowhte welsore
of the aventure pat was fallen thore.

Anon his cowynseyly thanne dide he calle
This trespas to a-menden forth withalle,
and that his meyne hym blamen ne scholde,
but that amendis fayn machen he wolde.
thanne be-spak vlfyn, ful certeynle,
that with the kyng was ful preve.

"Sire," seide vlfyn, "sethen jt is now so,
Nedly amendis moste be do."

thanne took vlfynhe the barowns on syde,
and with hem cowynseilede at that tyde.

5652. Nedly, e through correction.
Ulfin proposes a meeting at Tyndagel.

“how mown we best amendes make
and to hire frendes everychon,
that for his deth maken gret mon?
of wheche the kyng now doth 3ow preye
hym to counseillen in the beste weye.”

“that welen we don with good wille,
and owre wittes it fulfylle.
but, goode vlphyn, alle we 3ow preye,
the beste counseille pat 3e welen vs seye,
For 3e knowen best the kynges entent,
what he thynketh to don, verament.”

“hopen 3e thanne that j am so preve
with the kyng In alle degre?”

“Sere, 3e, we knowen the for a wys man,
and mochel of good counseyl thow can.”
thanne seide vlphyn to hem ageyn :
“myn avis j schal 3ow seyn, certeyn,
and thanne zif ony bettere 3e koumen do,
that 3e wolde seyen jt me vnto.
J wolde that the kyng wolde don sende
Alle abowtes, jnto everich ende
Where that the dewk Hath ony meyne,
at Tyndagel to maken Semble.
and thedyr wolde j that the kyng wente
there with hem to meten in good entente,
and don his Frendis comen hym before,
and also the lady that is thore.
so that the kyng hym qwyten schal, certeynle,
afore alle the peple that there be ;
that zif they Refusen his proferyng,
3e scholen holden hem folis ouer alle thing,
and the kyng to holden a passyng wys man,
that so mochel wele proferyn hem than.”
thanne answerede these barowns ageyn :
“to 3ow we acorden, Jn certeyn!”

Ulfin proposes a general meeting at Tyndagel.

The barons defer to Ulfin,
The barons approve of this.
The proposal is put before the king.

and asks their opinion.
whom they consider a wise man.
Ulfin proposes a general meeting at Tyndagel,
where the king is to offer satisfaction.
The barons approve of this.
The proposal is put before the king.

CH. V.]

and asks their opinion.

The barons defer to Ulfin,
The king consents, and sends messengers to the late duke's kinsmen.

Merlin informs the king that the advice given him by the barons is in reality Ulfin's.

He further reveals to the king Ulfin's secret plan (pp. 160 L.), of which he greatly approves.

Finally he wishes to speak with Ulfin and the king together.

Anon the kyng concentyd therto, and comanded messengeris feste forto go with his lettres juto eche contre, To the dewkis kennesmen, ful sekerle, and that to hym they scholde come echon, Jn pes and trews to come an gon, and there amendement to maken, certeyne, of alle thing they wolde compleyne. 3it thowhte the kyng thanne ful wel Forto remeve jnto Cardewel. thanne merlyne to the kyng cam anon, and to hym tolde there thusson:

"weten je hos js this cownsaylle?"
"Nay," quod the kyng, "with-owten faille, but that al my Barony hath me thus cownceilled, trewelye!"
"Nay," quod merlyne, "jt nys not so, But vlphyynes cownsayl halpe perto. For he is bothe wis and war, and pe pes amonges hem declarede thare bettere thanne alle they cowden devyse owther it ordeynten Jn ony wyse." thanne axede the kyng of merlyn what thing it was that thowhte vlphyhn, and pe merlyn declared hym anon alle vlphyynes thowhtes everichon, and thanne the kyng herde al this, Ful mochel Joye he made, j-wys.

"how thenken ze?" quod the kyng tho, "nyht it ony wyse bettere be do?"
"Nay," quod merlyne, "ful Sekerle, Jt is the beste cownsaylle pat may be; thanne hast thow thyn hertely entent, that thou hast desired, verament. Now from the thanne wele j gon, but with vlphyhn and the j wele speken alon. and whanne from 3ow that j am past, thanne myhstest pou axen vlphyhn ju hast

5707. cownsaylle, a corrected from c.
how that this pes he gan ordeygne."
and pe kyng seide he wolde, certeygne.

Anon thanne clepede the kyng vlphyn
To come spekyn with hym and with merlyn.
thanne seide merlyne jn here precence:
"Sere, 3e me grawntyd, with-owten offense,
that j scholde haven, to 3owre powere,
the child which that is 3ow[re] eyre,
which 3e begoten on that dewchesse,
that noble lady, ful of humbelenesse,
whiche non resown that jt is
That 3e it kepyn to 3owre ews, j-wis.
For 3e han put pat tyme jn escript,
For that the trowth the 3e scholde Wyt.
and ek also 3e knowen nyht wel
that by me 3e engendred it everydel;
So that the Synne Js most myn,
3if j it not brynge to othyr fyn.
and ek the modyr aschamed scholde be
hyt Forto Norschen, ful Sekerle;
For wommen ne haven non wyt therto
here owne counsell to helen so.
therefore wolde J that vlphyn here
me wrot a bylle be ony manere,
bothe the nyht and ek the owr
whanne thou dedest that goode labour.
For no more schalt thou me Se
Tyl the day of his birthe, ful sekerle,
and that same nyht he schal be bore,
but of on thing j preye the be-fore:
that 3e leven vlphyn, what so he say,
be it be nyht owther by day.
For nothing ne wele he tellen the,
but that profit & worschepe to pe schal be.
For the Sixe mownthes aftyr this
with the ne schal j speken, j-wys,
and with the to speken at that tym,

5736. In the presence of Ulfn,
Merlin says to the king:
"You have granted me
the child
which is to be born.

5740. You cannot keep it yourself,

5744. [leaf 110 b]

5748. and the mother would
be ashamed
to nourish it.

5752. Let Ulfn
write down
the night of
its engendering.

5756. Now you
shall not see
me for some
time.

5760. But believe
in Ulfn:
his advice
will be profit-
able;

5764. with the ne schal j speken, j-wys,
Merlin's advice about Ygwern.

Ulfin writes down the engendering of the child. Then Merlin says to the king privately:

"Ygwern shall be thy spouse, but say nothing to her of your previous intercourse. If thou ask who is the father of her child, she shall not be able to answer, and be much ashamed."

The king and Ulfin go to Cardwell;

Merlin goes to Blasy.

The king speaks of the peace-making with his counsellors.

Thus wrote vlphyn thengendrynge there anon at the kynges byddynge. and merlyne took the kyng on Syde, and hym there tolde at that tyde:

"Syre kyng, Ygwerne thou schalt take, and trosyly sche schal be thy make. and loke thou be war Jn alle degre that sche ne knowe nothing of the, Neper that thou hast be hire j-leye; j the defende be ony weye. For that schal ben cause, wel pou wost, that sche wele offen abaschen hire most. For jif thou axe that lady mylde be whom that sche goth so with childe, sche schal not konnen the answer ho that is the fadyr, Jn non manere, So pat gret schame to hire schal be, whanne pou to hire spekyst of swich degre.'

Thus took merlyne his leve there, and the kyng and vlphyn leften jn fere, and gommen to taken here jornay streyht to cardwell, the sothe to say. and merlyne forth to Blasye wente hym forto tellen his hol entente of this aventure and othere mo; Into scripture they deden it tho. So now we knownen be that scripture of these aventures, J 3ow ensure.

and whanne the kyng cam to kardweille, anon sente he aftyr his counseylle, and axede hem what was best to do of this pes-makyng, with-owten mo. thanne answered they hym anon ageyn:

"pes to pe dewchesse xaken, jn certeyn,
and to the dewkes Frendis also,
that to tyndagel now ben j-go”—
and that they scholde agreeen ouer al thing
in resouz to acordement of the kyng.
Thus wenten the barouns to tyndagel,
and the kyng abod at cardweille,
And took vlphyn there thanzme onside,
And to hym seide there Jn that tyde,
and axede hym of that cownseyl there,
how herby hym lykede Jn his manere.
and he answerede: "sire, ryht wel
me liketh therby now every del."
thanne seide the kyng to hym ageyn :
"vlphyn, the pes thow hast ordeyned, certeyn,
and with-jinne thyn herte thou hast it knyt,
and what it is, wel knowe Jch Jt!"
"thanne, zif that the pes be ordeyned by me,
and zif 3e it knowen thanne, Sykerle,
thanne connen 3e the sothe Seye,
zif that it owht 3ow plese, Jn feye."
Anon thanne answerede pe kyng vlphyn,
and seide: "it pleseth me now wel and fyn,
and lyk so as thow devised hast here,
J wolde it were wrowht Jn alle manere."
"Nou, goode sere, entermete 3ow non thing,
J schal it bryngen to good endyng."
Therto the kyng him preyde ful faste,
and that Jt myhte be don Jn al haste.
thus endyd they here crownsaille,
and forth wenten the messengeris, with-owten faille,
Tyl that they come to Tyndagel,
where as they fownden that lady Lele
and alle the dewkses Frendis also,
that to that lady j-comen weren tho.
thanne tolde these messengers pece anon,
Toforn tho lordis Everichon,
how that worthy dewk of high parage
there was slayn be his owne owtrage,
and seiden that the kyng ouerthowht ryht sore
of that dede that was don thore,
wherfore gladly he wolde maken the pes—
“and therfore vs hider he ches
To that lady and his kyn also;
This is the cause we comen sow to.”

The duchess's counsellors are favourably disposed,
that forto stryven, it wolde not avail,
and concentyd ful wel hem to.

And to that lady they wenten tho,
and tolden hire the answer, as it was,
of pe kynges messengeres jn pat plas,
and how he was slayn be owtrage—
“sowre worthy lord of hygh parage.
and wete 3e wel now, jn certeyn,
that azens the kyng mown 3e not geyn.
and perfore lesteneneth and tent that 3e take
what maner of pes that the kyng wyl make.
and jn swich manere mown they seye,
that they scholent not ben refused, jn feye.
For of tweyne badde it is good to take
the bettere, and jt not forsake.
lo, lady, thus to sow we say,
now 3e mown don as sow liketh this day!”

Thanne answerid this lady ageyn:
“sowre cownseyl j nele forsaken, certeyn,
For of my lordis cownseyl 3e were,
and so of myn 3e scholen ben here.
For j ne knowe non better jn my lond,
That j myhte better trosten, j vndirstond.”

Thanne departyd they from here cownseyl anon,
and to the kynges messengeris gonne they gon.
thazne [on] of the wisest to hem Spak there,
and thus hem answerede Jn this manere:
“Jt Js my ladyes hol entent
to weten what pe kyng meneth, verament,
of hire lord, that thus ded Js,
what his mendis scholde ben, with-owten mys.”
thazne answerede the messengeris ageyn:

5851. cownefalt, a corrected from c. 5877. MS. thâne of.
"we knowen not pe kynges wille, jn certeyn, But that he ful pes and gryth Wyle make to this lady for hire lordis Sake, and bad that 3e scholden vs leve, For as we seyn, he wyl Jt preve."
"thanne hopen we pe kyng wyl don wel and a-menden Jt everydel, and so trewe we holden 3ow therto, so that non otherwyse 3e wylen do."
thus was ajarmed into the xv day thanne after next Seweng, with-owten delay, that the lady and hire cownsaylle to-forn the kyng schold komen, with-owten paylle, To heren there the kynges wylle— "what a-Mendement he wele don 3ow vntyll." thanne seide the ladyes conseil ageyn:
"we wilen gladliche, Jn certeyn, So that we sauf cowndyt have From tyndagel thedyr to komen save, and from cardweille to tyndagel azen; lo, thus acordyd alle we ben."
thus knytten they vpe that ende pere, and hom they wenten jn fair manere, and tolken the kyng every del how that here massage was endyd wel, and that pe lady cowndyt wolde have— "that sche to 3ow myht komen Save," thanne answerede the kyng a-geyn:
"Sche ne axeth but resown, Jn certeyn!" thus at Cardweylyle Soiorned the kyng, and with hym vlyphyn Jn cowneceillyng, and spoken of manye dyvers matere, whiles that they weren bothe jn fere. that so azen the fyftenethe day the kyng Sente saufcondit, with-owten delay; So that the lady and hire cownsaille, To Cardweille komen they, sauns faille. and whanne assembled they weren echon, the kynges conseil and they Jn on, thanne let the kyng of hem enqwere,
The king appoints barons to settle the peace,

what amendis that they wolden asken þere. 5924
thanne answerede the ladyes conseil ageyn:
"this was not owre comeng, jn certeyn,
Forto asken here ony thyng,
but to knowen the wyly of the kyng,
and what þes and what acord
he wolde maken for this worthy lord.
and this is owre ladys entent,
we seye þow, sires, now verament."
thanne the counseyl vppon the kynges side
anon to the kyng comen that tyde,
and tolden hym of the ladyes answere,
that be hire conseyl sche seide there.
and whanne the kyng herde al this,
a wys lady he held hire, J-wys.
thanne clepyd he his Barouns everichon,
anon to conseyl thanne gommen they gon,
and axed of hem jn what manere
they thowhten forto maken þe þes þere.
thanne answered the counseyl ageyn:
"we knowen non so wel, jn certeyn,
that þe þes kan ordeyne and make
So wel as þe for the dewkis Sake."
thanne seide the kyng to hem there:
"jn þowre ordenaunce þe have put it here,
and what that evere to þe 3e do,
certeyn, þe wele concenten þerto,
and seue þowre ordenaunce þe schal with-seye,
what so evere þe demen, þin feye!"
thanne answerede the counseil tho:
"Sire, a grete charge 3e puten vs vono,
That we ne doren not vndirtake,
But þif þat Sewraunce 3e Welen vs make
that what so evere we granten of the,
there-offen to haven non mawgre."
thanne spak vlyphyn with-owten taryeng:
‘‘þrowe that a fool 3e holden the kyng,
whanne þe uelen not beleven his word,
þat he to 3ow seith be his owne acord!”
‘‘3is, hym beleven we, ful Sekerlye,
but of on thyng we wolden hym preye:
that 3e with vs myghten be
this pes forto enden feythfulle,
and to discuren to the kyng
what that Js owre conseillyng;
and we after 3oure conseil wil do,
what so evere belongetherto.”

Whanne the kyng herde hem axen this,
Semblance of gladnesse he made, j-wys,
and seide to vlphyn with wordis sadde:
“A riche man j haue the made,
ek norsched, and wis jou art perto;
perfore with hem schalt jou forth go
and conseille hem as thou best can,
For j holde the a ful wys man.”
thanne seide vlphyn to the kyng:
“Sire, j 3ow warne of on thyng:
that kyng ne prynce owhte not to be
tofamulyer with his meyne,
Nethyr to lowliche he scholde hym make
the hertes of his men forto take.”

thus wente vlphyn to cowneisle anon,
and alle the Barowns everichon.
and whanne ensembled they weren jn fere,
thanne axeden they of vlphyn there
what hym thowghte best to do.
thanne seide vlphyn hem vnto:
“wel wete?e what kyng
on vs hath put alle manere of thyng.
Now perfore to the lady let vs now gon,
to weten jif that sche so wyle don!”
thanne wente they forth anon jn hye
to pat lady & to hire conseil, trewelye,
and tolden hem of the kynges wylle,
how he ensured was hem vntylle
and forto holden hym fully agre,
what ende so they made, Sykerle—
“perfore we comen to weten of 3ow here
jif 3e wylen don jn that manere.”
All are to abide by the barons' decision. [CH. V.

The counselors of the duchess having taken the matter into consideration,

thanze answereden they, with-owten faille,
here-vpon it were good to taken consaille,
and seiden anon hem betwene
that in better cas myht it not bene
thanze pe kyng to putten it on his lordynges,
bothe high and lowh, of alle maner of thinges.
"what myhte the kyng bettere do?
perfore, lady, concenteth 3e perto!"
So that this lady with-owten more
Concented to here conseille thore.

Than Ulfen says:

"You know that the duke was killed innocently,
[leaf 111 b]
his wife is left with child,

and his kins-
men have suffered great losses;
hence compensation must be given.

On the other side, our king has no wife;

that he scholde deye,
and that the lady Js left with childe,
and perto hire loudis ben mad bothe bare and wilde,
and thereto a good womman sche is, Sikerle,
welful of wysdom and of Bownte.
more over the dewkes kynnes-men also
Ful mochel harm & los han cawht perto.
and perfore me Semeth ryght good resoun
that the kyng hem make restetuciom,
So that here love he myhte have
and ju his lord to dwellen more save.
On the tothir side 3e knowen echon,
that owre kyng ne haveth wyf non,
So that me semeth be myn avys,

6019. MS. hom. 6022. 3e added above the line.
6023. 3e through correction, daubed.
6036. 3n, i through correction.
the kynge may not wel mendyn thys
lasse thanne hire to his wif he take,
and thus hire amendis forto make;
the wheche schal torne hym to honour
and of al his nem to have favour;
For whanne they heren this jlke pes,
they welen hym loven, with-owten les.
and pat the dewkys dowhter wedden they wolde
To the kynge of orkanye with plente of golde;
and alle pe Remenaunt of his meyne,
Ful wel agreed scholen they be,
so pat they scholen holden hym for a ryht wys kyang,
and him loven and worschepen aboven alle thynge.”

“Now haven 3e J-herde what J kan say;
now ech man his avis tellith, j 3ow pray,
whethyr that 3e welen concenten therto
as j have here J-seid, owthir oper-wyse do.”

“we concentyn therto, Jn certeyn,
For the beste conseille thow hast J-told
that ony man myhte Seyn jn this mold !”

“3et seyn 3e not j-now,” quod vlphin tho,
“but welen 3e alle concenten therto,
and 3if 3e seyn so everychon,
thanne with this aansere forth wele j gon.
3e sen wel pe kyang of orkeneye js here ;
on hym schal stondyn mochel of my matere.”

Thanne toldde vlphin his avis
To-Forn the kynge and alle his.
whanne the kynge herde this acord,
anon he answerede and seide þís word :
“what that evere on me that 3e seye,
J schal neure breken this pes, Jn feye !”

and whanne the tothyr partye herden this,
they helden hem ful agreed, j-wys,
and comen to the kynges tente,
Conclusion of peace.

Then all assemble, and the lady was after sente, 6076
and the whole that at thylke conseyl were, anon to form the kyng they comen there.
Ulphyn rehearseth the conditions of peace.
thanne, whanne assembled they weren echon,
vlphyn there stood vp ryght anon, 6080
and amonges hem alle declared this pes
Then all assemble.
Jn every poynyt, er that he wolde ses,
and axede of pe barowns, with-owten faylle:
"was not this now 3owre consaylle?" 6084
Anon therto they accordeden alle,
bope that weren in tene ope in halle.
thanne seide vlphyn to the kyng:
"how sey 3e be this acordyng,
thus to maken these good meanes pes
and ek the ladys here neuertheles?"

These are accepted by the duchess's party,
"jis," quod the kyng anon tho,
"and the ladys and here frendis concentyn þerto." 6092
"More Over We ben Acorded Jn fere
that kyng Loth of orcanye, that Js here,
that the dewkis dowhter he schal wedde,
and as a qwene to his lond ben ledde." 6096

Avowed by king Uter,
thanne answered kyng loth ageyn,
and seide to hem there ful pleyn:
"Sires, non thing scholen 3e bydden me do,
that j wele gladlich concentyn þerto,
So that to the kynges honour it be
ope profyt to his crowne, certeynle!"

And supported by King Loth of Orkney.
thanne Spak vlphin to þe toper þartye,
that on þe ladys Side weren, trewelye, 6104
wheeche weren ferst pytows & of hevy chere,
and aftyr for joye they wepten there.
Weep for joy, and the same that answerede vlphyn thore,
vnethe myhte speken, he wepte so sore,
6108
Praise the amends,
and seide þat þer was neuere kyng ne kayser
That bettere amends myhte maken ther.
thanne wente the cownseil and þe lady jn fere, 6112
and amonges hem they seiden there
that ther was neuere non ethly man
and extol the king's justice and truth.
"For so just and trewe we knowen þe kyng,
that we welen acordyn to this endyng!"
and thus thanne was knyt ype the pes
on bothe partyes there, with-owten les.

thus wedded vter pendragown
Ygwerne, as tho was resown,
evene vpon he twentythe day
after that with Ygwerne yu hire chambre he lay.
and ek the same day j-wedded was there
kyng loth of orcanye with myre chere;
and vnder on feste bothe were they holde
with manye knyhtes bothe worthy and bolde.

Thanne thus the kyng Ygwerne hadde,
and to bedde with hym was ladde—
Tyl that sche barnesched wondir faste.
so that pe kyng hire axede atte laste,
and a nyht, as the kyng be hire lay,
there thus to Ygwerne he gan to say:
"hos is this child, my lady milde,
that 3e gon with so grete with childe?
For myn 3e knowen may yt not be,
Sethen j 3ow weddede, ful sikerle;
For yt scripturue J-pyt it Js,
as often as J 3ow knew, j-wys.
And with the dewk with childe not 3e be,
For hym Syen 3e not, ful Sikerle,
many day to-form that he ded was;
with 3ow ne cam he jn non plas."
and thus the kyng hire chalanged tho,
whiche browht Ygwerne jn mochel wo.

so there anon, ful sore wepyngge,
answerede Igwerne to the kynge:
"non lesyng Schal j maken, Sekerle,
what so evere that 3e don by me;
and that on me 3e haven mercy,
For sekery j ne Schal not lye;
and more over forto ensuren me
that 3e me Refusen Jn Non degre!"
"seyth on," thanne quod the kyng,
"and j wyle graunten 3ow 3oure askyng;"
The king promises Ygwern not to reject her.

Ygwern tells of the nightly visit in her bedroom.

The king requests her to keep the matter quiet, and to let him have the child, as soon as it is born.

so what so evere that 3e me telle,
For nothing 3ow Forsaken j Nylle.”

Anon whanne that Ygwern herde this, Ful joyful thanne was sche, j-wys.

“Sire, of merveilles J schal 3ow seyn, and the sothe tellen 3ow ful pleyn!”

Thanne Anon gan sche to telle how that adventure be hyre gan falle.
sche seide, a man, with-owten variance, to hire cam Jn hire lordis Semblance,

And with hym tweyne of his knyhtes Jn here owne Semblance owt-ryhtes—

“Jn whiche of alle men lyvenge my lord thanne trosted ouer alle thynge.

and so jnto my chambre entred he, that al my meyne it dyde pere se.

And so with me he lay that nyht, For my lord j wende it hadde ben nyht.

So that Nyht conceyved J was with this child, swich was my gras;

and that same nyht my lord was slayn, This wot J wel, Sire kyng; certayn.”

thanme, whanne the kyng herde hire so telle, anon to hire he seyde ful snelle:

“loke that 3e kepen this preve
From alle the peple jn cristiente.

and 3if that 3e that thing discure, to 3ow it is schame, J 3ow ensoure.

For wel 3e knowen, 3oure lordis jt Nys, ne myn nethyr, with-owten mys.

Therfore J preye 3ow, graunte it to me, anon as hit is j-born of the;

and that 3e wolde don my comandement, To deliueren hit to whom put me list, verament.”

“Sire,” quod thanne this lady so fre, “what evere 3ow list, 3e mown do be me, and of me haven al 3owre wyle,

what that evere 3e seyn me vntylle!”

6163. variance, the second a through correction, large.
6175. lord corrected afterwards from lor'.
Merlin wishes to atone for his guilt.

On the morwe tolde the kynge vlyphyn anon of alle these materis, how it dyde gon.

Thanne answerede vlyphyn to the kynge: "now mowen 3e knowne Jn alle thing that 3owre qweene is bothe trewe and wys, for of ertzly wommen sche berith the pris. now wete 3e wel sche doth not lye, ne non blawndise Jn hire konne 3e spye. and petro hauen 3e wel sped the Nede that 3e hyhte merlyne Jn othir stede, that thike same child he scholde have, were Jt a maiden oþer were Jt knave."

So Into vij mowthenhis Jt abod stylle, Tyl that merlyne cam vlyphyn vntylle, and with vlyphyn spak Jn prevyte of swiche thinges as desirede he. thanne desirede merlyne ouer al thynge, er pat he wente, to spoken with the kynge. And whanne assembled they weren Jn fere, thanne tolde the kynge Jn his manere to merlyne the wordis of the qweene, and what resouns betwene hem hadde bene. thanne answered merlyne anon ageyn To the kynge there, Jn certeyn, & saide pat—"vlyphyn hath wel agreed þe pes of the dewkis deth, with-owten les; but of my cylte am þe not clere, that þe hire deseyvede Jn swich manere, and wot Neueres hos that child Js with wheche sche goth, with-owten mys!" thanne seide the kynge: "ful Sykerle, Merlyne, J wot, so wys that 3e be, that 3ow 3e welen æqwytten ful wel; this knowe þe sekerych everydel."

"þe kyng seide: "gladliche that wyl þe do, for wel wot þe the child moste ben 30ure, hit Forto Norsche and to socowre."

Anon spak merlyne to the kyng than:

The king tells Ulfyn.

Ulfyn praises the truthfulness and wisdom of the queen.

and the prudent measure taken by the king.

After six months, Merlin comes to Ulfyn

Merlin is satisfied with what has been done, so far, but wishes to expiate his own complicischip in the deceiving of the lady.

and desires the king's aid to that end.
"There is in this country," says Merlin, "a passing good man (called Anton, or Ankor, with an excellent wife).

Send for the man, and give him of thy goods, that his wife, who has just had a son, may take your child.

and send her own out to be nursed by another woman."

The king sends for the man, welcomes him heartily, and says:

"I must tell thee a great secret, for I want thy help.

The king sends for the man, welcomes him heartily, and says:

"I must tell thee a great secret, for I want thy help.

Merlin wants foster-parents for the child.

The king sends for the man, welcomes him heartily, and says:

"I must tell thee a great secret, for I want thy help.

The king sends for the man, welcomes him heartily, and says:

"I must tell thee a great secret, for I want thy help.

The king sends for the man, welcomes him heartily, and says:

"I must tell thee a great secret, for I want thy help.
and conseyl to kepyn hit to sowre powere,
and it neuere discuref fer me xere!"

To the kyng thanne seide this good man tho :
"Sire, sowre comau?dement schal j do,
and to my powere hit fulfille,
what so evere 3e sein me vntylle.'" 6272

"Thus me dremede this oper nyht," 6276
Seyde the kyng thanye to this knyht,
"that thou were one the goode man
whiche is dwellyng jn my kyngeawm.
And so me thowhte on cam to me,
and me?veilles me tolde, certeyne:
Ferst that to me 3e been trewe lige
and that a child on 3owre wif engendred 3e han,
the whiche child, J-born it Js,
as he me tolde, with-owten mys.
So that man comanded me
pat jn alle wyse J scholde preyen the
that thy chyld owt scholedest pou do
To som oper womman and noschen it so.
And thy wyf anothir child kepyn scholde,
and there-with to have plente of golde,
the whiche child to hire schal ben browht;
but there-offen the peple may weten nowht.
Now do this, bewsire, j preye to the,
and ful wel thy mede j-qwyt schal be!"

Whanne that the goodman herde this,
anon to be kyng he answerede, j-wys :
"of a wondyr thyng 3e axen me,
that me semeth a?ens nature scholde be,
my chyld to Sowken ony oper womman
but his owne modyr that bar hym than.
3yt Nevertheless, Sire, this Wyle J do :
assyen 3if pat my wyf conceute perto.
And 3it of on thing J wolde 3ow preye:
whanne pat child scholde be born, me for to seye,
and whanne Jt scholde be browht to me;
of this wolde J knownen the certeinte."

6272. I dreamt the other night
that thou art a very good man,
6276. I expected thy discretion.
6280. I dreamt the other night
that thou art a very good man,
6284. and that thy wife has just had a child.
6288. Thou wert to send thy own child away,
6292. and let thy wife take another child instead,
6296. which will be brought to her.

[leaf 112 B] but says he will speak to his wife,
6300. it seems a wonderful thing,
6304. and inquires when it is to be.
6308. MS. pou ovet do, with ovet crossed out afterwards.
The man tells his wife.

The king can give no particulars, but makes fine presents.

The man goes home.

His wife likewise finds the demand strange.

But the man urges their duty to their king.

also the king's presents and promises.

The wife submits implicitly, and they make preparations for receiving the child.

than answerede the kyng ful snelle:
“sire, thereoffen the sope can j not telle.”
Anon answerede azen this good man, and to the kyng there seide he than:
“what thing in this world 3e comaunderen me, J wyle it don, that may plesen the!”
thazme 3af hym the kyng greit giftes thore, For which this goodman abascht hym ryht sore.

And hom to his wyf he goth ageyn, and of alle this mater telleth hire ful pleyn, whiche sche jt thowhte a strange thynge:
hire owne child owt to putten in norscheng, and sche anothir child to susteyne & fynde; this thowhte pe lady it were azens kynde, thazme answerede this goodman ful wilde, and seide to his wyf, that was hym by:
“there is non thynge that longeth hym to, but nedis for owre lord we mosten Jt do. and utho so moche tresor and Fe he hath vs 3oven, dame, certeynle. more ouer vs hath he behoten to do what thynge that vs behoveth also. and utho j wele that we fulfylle Jn alle thinges the kynges wyle. and utho more ouer J wyle also that certeyn, wyf, 3e conceten herto! thazme answerede anon this goode woman, and to hire lord & souerayn seide sche than:
“my sovereyn,” sche seide, “3owre owne am J, and so Js also this chyld, trewly, and there-fore with vs do 3e 3owre wyle, For 3owre comauadement am j rede to fulfille. for on thing J hote 3ow now certeinle: azen 3owre wille schal j xeure be, as ferforth as j have wyt utho komenenge!” thazme reioysched this goodman Jn alle thynge, and preyde his wyf ful tendirlye that a norse to geten hire Jn hye here child to norschen with honour, So that he myhte kepen both tyme & owr,
that whanne the tothir to hym were sent,
he redy to ben purveyed, verament.
thus this goodman thanne purveyed was
his child to ben norsched Jn honest plas.

And also the kyng Sawgh be his qwene
that hire delyveraunce sone scholde bene.
And also the day to-forn hire chyldyng
thedyr cam merlyn, with-owten lesyng,
and prevyliche spak with vlphyn there,
and to hym seyde Jn this manere:
“vlphyn, J alowe ful mochel the kyng,
that so wysly hath ordeyned for this thing.”
And thanne to the qwene he bad hym go,
& not to taryen, with-owten wordis mo,
there to seven warneng of hire chyldyng
and ek of hire delyveraunce, with-owten lesyng,
that Sekerly delyuered scholde sche be
on the morwen after midyght—“as j telle the;
ek that thow comande that lady so bryght
that child to deliueren anon ryht
To the first man that they konnen fynde
atte the halle dore there stondynge.”
And whanne vlphyn herde hym spoken so,
Ful sone axede of hym vlphyn tho:
“Wylt thow not spekyn With the kyng?”
“No, sire,” quod merlyne, “with-owten lesyng!”

Anon to the kyng vlphyn cam tho,
and hym tolde how merlyne wolde do.
Anon as the kyng herde this,
wel mochel joye he hadde, j-wys.
“Ne wyl not merlyne with me speke,
Er from this cowrt that he gynne neke?”
thanne answerede vlphyn to hym ageyn,
and seide: “sire kyng, no, Jn certeyn;
but doth as he hath comanded sow,
For it wil tornen to joure prow!”

Anon the kyng cam to the qwene,
and of prevyte spak liem betwene:
“dame, of on thyng J schal warnen the:
that myn comandement fulfyllen 3e.”
The king speaks to the queen.

"worthy lord," quod the qwene tho,
"3oure comandement now wyl j do."

"To morwen aftyr the mydnyht,
be the helpe of god almyht,
thanne deleyuered scholen 3e be,
as j 3ow seye now Sykerle.
and of on thing J 3ow preye:
that whanne Jt is born, be ony weye
To on of 3owre prevyest wommen
that anon hyt be deleyvered then,
and that sche take that chyld so kynde
To the ferste man that sche doth fynde;
and that 3e comauTzden that persone
that thedyr with that child doth gone,
that sche 3ow discure jn non degre,
how that of chyld deliuered 3e be.
For thanne the peple wolde seyn
Jt were neuere myn, Jn certeyn;
No more it were lyk so forto be,
Faire lady, sethen that j wedded the."
"Sire kyng," quod this lady thanne,
"Ho hit engendred, j not what manne;
perfore wyl j don 3owre comandement,
as womman that is schamed, verament,
of the grete mis-aventure
that to me is happed, j 3ow ensure.
but of on thyng sore wondryth me :
to myn deliueraunce 3e ben so preve."
"now j 3ow preye," quod pe kyng tho,
"algates my comandement that 3e do."
"3is, worthy lord, with-owten stryf,
3if so be 3at god graunte me lyf!"

Thus departyd bothe kyng and qwene
of the conseyl that was hem be-twene,
and the qwene abod 3ere goddis grace.

Next evening, the queen feels the threes.
So that on the morwen, jn that place,
at evensong tyme of the belle,
jn hire wombe felte sche throwes ful snelle,
and travaulled forth al that xyht
The child is born, and handed to Merlin.

the child is born, and handed to Merlin.

so that be goodis helpe delyuering sche was
after midnight, as happed the cas.
And anon as that child was pere bore,
a prevy woman clepyd sche to hire thore,
and Seide: "com hydyr, my dere frend,
do take this child bothe Fair and hend,
and bere Jt to the halle dore anon,
and there a man schole 3e fynden son.
For what man so evere he be,
this child hym deliure, j preye the.
And that man that 3e wel beholde,
Of What manere of kynde He ben scholde.
Goth now and doth as I 3ow preye!"
"jis, Sikyr, lady!" this woman gan seye.
this woman took that child anon,
and jnto riche clothes sche dede it don,
and so browht hit to the halle dore,
where as a ful old man fond sche thore,
that onlovely was of Face & lere,
and seide: "Sire, what bydest thou here?"
"I abyde that thou hast me browht,
For ellis hydyr hadde j come nowht."
"what answere schal j 3even my lady so dere;
to whom j have be-taken hire child here?"
thanne answerede hire this old man tho:
"what that j am, hast thou not to do,
but do that thou comauended were:
deliure me the chyld pere!" 6456
thanne took sche hym this chyld anon,
and thussone from hire was he gon,
that sche ne wyst jnto whiche plase.
Tho 3en sche wente as come sche wase,
and tolde the lady bothe word and ende,
how sche hadde delyverid pere chyld dene.
To ryht a passyng ful old man—
"but what he was, telle j ne can,
For as sone as the child he saw,
Syker, j ne wyste where he becam."
thanne was the qwene of hevy chere,
Merlin takes the child to Antron. [CH. V.

Merlin goes with the child to its intended foster-father, Ankor (or Antron), who is just on his way to mass.

Merlin appears to Ankor in another shape: that of a nice old man.

He gives him the child, asks him to keep it well, and promises him great rewards.

Ankor understands that the child is the one spoken of by the king.

Merlin tells Ankor to have it christened, and to call it Arthur.

and fulsore mornede & wepte there, but he that the chyld hadde tho, ful faste in his weye he gan to go, Tyl that he cam to this good man, that Ankor there was clepyd than. And as to masse ward as he wente, god to Serven with good entente, thanne took merlyne a-nothyr Semblauuice, of a fayr old man, with-owten variaunce. Thanne clepyd merlyne that good man pere, and seide: "Ankor, com speke with me here."

"j come to 3ow," quod Ankor tho, "with good wille to speken 3ow vnto."

quod pis old man: "j have þe browht a chyld, whiche that Js bothen mek and myld; and that thow it kepe as nichely and as thin owne þou wost don tendirly. loke that 3e don as j 3ow say, and gret profyt schalt þou hauen, with-owten delay, and þk thyne eyres encresyd scholen be, as j the Seye, Sire, ful certeinle."

"A," quod Ankor, "j trowe this be he that the kyng spak offen to me."

"So is hit, Ankor, with-owten faylle, as j the here telle þn consaylle, For hit js the preyere of the kyng and of goode ladyes, with-owten lesyng."

thanne took Ankor this chyld so fre, that was so 3ong and ful of bewte, and axede of this old man there 3if that this child owht crystened were. "Nay, but do thow it cristene anon in this mynstre, er thou ferthere gon."

thanne axede Ankor of hym tho what name he scholde seven hym vnto.

"Nemne hym Arthwr, j preye to the; For mochel worschepe by hym schalt þou se and ful gret enuces to the and thyne, and thow hit worschepe & hit propyne."

So thanne vnnethis schalt thou knowe
Whethyr thou love him bettere of er thy n owne.”

thanne axede Ankor of this good man what he was, and whennes pat he cam—

“And whom schal j sey that this child took me? of this, leve Sire, now preye j the.”

thanne answerede this olde man ageyn :

“of me ne knowest thow no more, certeyn!”

and so deparayed they asondyr ryht tho;

thanne speche Jn his wye forth gan to go.

So that Ankor cristenede that child anon,
and Arthewr him clepyd dere thus son.
This man that Ankor here j-clepyd Js,
his propre name Js Antron, with-owte mys.

thanne Antron to his wyf hyede ful faste
(that child hire to brynye hadde he gret haste),
and seide: “dere wif, lo, this chyld here
of which to 30w j spak Thanne ere!”

thanne answerede this goode lady anon:

“To me, Sire, hit is ryht welcom.”
Anon this faire chyld took sche there,
and axede zif hit cristened were.

he seide: “3e, dame,” thanne, “certeiny!”

thanne took sche the child and leide it hire by,
and dyde hit Sowken of hire pappe anon,
& hire owne to xorraye putte owt thus son.

thanne longe aftyr lyvede vter penderagon
with neste and pes Jn that regyown.
So atte laste thanne hit be-fylle
that the cowte cam hym vntyle,
and hym held bothen Jn hondis and feet,
So pat be non wyse hit xolde hym leet;
Jn whiche mene while, as j 30w say,
his enemies vp aryveden on a day,
and Jn his hond dyden gret owtrage
and sk to his peple ful gret damage.
thanne sente the kyng to his barowns anon,
and cownseilled with hem everyyon,
preyeng hem with al his myht
Defeat of the king's forces. Merlin arrives.

The barons promise their help,

Anon they seiden, with ryht good wylle his preyere thanne they wolde fullylle.

and encounter the enemies,

thanne reden these lordis forth anon, and with here enemys they metten thusson,

that a gret partye of the lond they haden j-treted jnto here hond.

but are defeated.

thanne this meyne vpon pe kynges side with here enemys assembled that tyde.

The king grieves.

Anon thussome j-seomfyt they were, and mocel of here peple losten there.

whanne this bode was browht to pe kyng, thanne jn his herte made he morneng.

so they that leften of the bataylle, to the kyng they comen, with-owten faille.

and the tothir partye enforsede hem faste, So that furthere jnto the lound ben they paste.

Then Merlin arrives.

Thanne merlyne, that knew of alle this thyng, Ful faste he hyede hym to the kyng.

The king, filled with joy and hope,

Anon as Pendragown merlyne þere say, Ful mochel joye made he that day,

welcomes him,

and thowhte of merlyne comfort to haue, be wheche his þem he hopede to Save.

and whanne that merlyne to-fore hym cam, anon be the hond he hym xam.

[leaf 113 b]

thenne merlyne hym axede of his chere, why that he thanne so hevy were—

“3yt Wel J Wot that syk þe be, and fulsore afrayed, as thinketh me.”

and tells him his distress.

thanne answerede Pendragoun æþen tho:

“merlyne, ful good eunches þaþ haue þerto, For myn owne æþen æþe lond distroye, that þaþ wended wolde me nowht anoye, and slayn my æþen þere þaþ bataylle, that litel þaþ wende wolde me asaylle.”

“Battle without a head cannot be,” says Merlin.

“Now,” quod merlyn, “here mown þe þe þat bataille with-owten hed may not be,”

“Thanne, for goddis love,” quod the kyng,
He foretells the king's victory and death.

"Merlyne, conseille me now of this thing!"

Anon seide merlyne to hym ageyn:

"on thing j schal telle the for certeyn, whiche word trewe proved schal be, 3if that thou now wilt leven me. Do semblen alle thy peple anon, and that to-gederis that they fast gon. Anon as they ben sembled ju fere, thanne do the ordeyn an hors bere, and to bataylle with hem thou go azens thy enemyes, fat thou do so. For wete thou now wel, ju certeyne, hem schalt thou ouercomen, ful pleyne. and whanne thou hast don this bataylle, thanne scha[1]t pou wel knowen, with-owten faille, what vaylleth the Lond fat jz lordles, whanne hit hath Nede rankewr to ses. Azens the Lond that hath Sovereyn, hit lyte avaylleth, j telle the pleyn. and whanne this bataylle thou hast j-do, herk me now what j sey the vnto: deparite thy good Ju dyvers manere For thi sowle, whiles fat pou lyvest here, and to the pore 3yve thou thy tresor. & why j seye, wilt thou se wherfor ? For j hit knowe wel ju my wynde that pou myht not longe lyven be kynde. therfore j welle that pou schalt knowe of hem that grete goodis han be rowe, and deyen, and leven hem behynde, & vppon here Sowles haven [not] wynde that to departen ju here lyvenge to pore ju here Sowles fortherynge, j sey, that good after here departynge, hit nys not here, with-owten lesyng, but here it is, & moche more therto, that for here sowlis litel wil do. For wete pou wel with-owten dwere

Merlin continues:

"Assemble thy forces, go with them on a horse litter, and thou shalt be victorious.

For wete thou now wel, ju certeyne, hem schalt thou ouercomen, ful pleyne. and whanne thou hast don this bataylle, thanne scha[1]t pou wel knowen, with-owten faille, what vaylleth the Lond fat jz lordles, whanne hit hath Nede rankewr to ses. Azens the Lond that hath Sovereyn, hit lyte avaylleth, j telle the pleyn. and whanne this bataylle thou hast j-do, herk me now what j sey the vnto: deparite thy good Ju dyvers manere For thi sowle, whiles fat pou lyvest here, and to the pore 3yve thou thy tresor. & why j seye, wilt thou se wherfor ? For j hit knowe wel ju my wynde that pou myht not longe lyven be kynde. therfore j welle that pou schalt knowe of hem that grete goodis han be rowe, and deyen, and leven hem behynde, & vgpon here Sowles haven [not] wynde that to departen ju here lyvenge to pore ju here Sowles fortherynge, j sey, that good after here departynge, hit nys not here, with-owten lesyng, but here it is, & moche more therto, that for here sowlis litel wil do. For wete pou wel with-owten dwere

6600. MS. _schat._ 6616. MS. _haven mynde._
The devil will appear to thee. He appears more particularly to rich people who do not give, while they are still alive.

The joy of this world is nothing. It falls. But heavenly joy lasts.

Each man of property must do something to earn everlasting life. All the more thou, whom God has sent so great wealth.

I have loved thee long;

but who loveth thee so truly as thou oughtest to love thyself?

All is in vain, if the end is not good.

"Thanne moste eche man Jn His Degre, that God to hath graunted lond opere fe, loke that he purchase Jn this lyf here the lyf evere lastyng elleswhere, than thou, that hast so rochel nichesse of tresowr, of goold, an of prowess, and al God hath sent the by grase, bethenk the in how lytel a spase! J haue the loved ful many a day, and 3it J do, with-owten delay. but ho loveth the so trewelye as thou thy-self owhst, pleynlye? J haue the told hit vndirfonge: aftir this victory lyvest pou not longe. For alle þe things that pou kanst make, Nis but a good ende forto take. and thow alle þe good þat pou myht do, but 3it thin ende be good therto,  

6624. that þe devel to the schal apere, and specyally to hem that han tresor, that to powre wil not depart to-for, whiles that they ben on lyve here; hit vailleth hem not, with-owten dwere.  

6628. and pou that Nedis moest here deye, j the warne, Sire, now certeinlye, Thy good departe, thy soule to save, Jn hevene blysse the joye to have.  

6632. For the joye of this world here a3ens that js nowht, in non manere. and for why, j schal tellen to the, 

6636. jn this world hath non man so gret joye, that hit ne schal faylle and hym anoye; and jn the tothir js joye endeles, that evere is dureng, & schal neuere ses. and ho that disseise Suffreth here, To him jn hevene js restored there."

6640. and he that disesse Suffreth here.

6644. "Thanne moste eche man Jn His Degre, that God to hath graunted lond opere fe, loke that he purchase Jn this lyf here the lyf evere lastyng elleswhere, than thou, that hast so rochel nichesse of tresowr, of goold, an of prowess, and al God hath sent the by grase, bethenk the in how lytel a spase! J haue the loved ful many a day, and 3it J do, with-owten delay. but ho loveth the so trewelye as thou thy-self owhst, pleynlye? J haue the told hit vndirfonge: aftir this victory lyvest pou not longe. For alle þe things that pou kanst make, Nis but a good ende forto take. and thow alle þe good þat pou myht do, but 3it thin ende be good therto,  

6652. but who loveth the so trulye as thou oughtest to love thyself?  

6656. All is in vain, if the end is not good,  

6660. For alle þe things that pou kanst make, Nis but a good ende forto take. and thow alle þe good þat pou myht do, but 3it thin ende be good therto,  

6664. "Thanne moste eche man Jn His Degre, that God to hath graunted lond opere fe, loke that he purchase Jn this lyf here the lyf evere lastyng elleswhere, than thou, that hast so rochel nichesse of tresowr, of goold, an of prowess, and al God hath sent the by grase, bethenk the in how lytel a spase! J haue the loved ful many a day, and 3it J do, with-owten delay. but ho loveth the so trewelye as thou thy-self owhst, pleynlye? J haue the told hit vndirfonge: aftir this victory lyvest pou not longe. For alle þe things that pou kanst make, Nis but a good ende forto take. and thow alle þe good þat pou myht do, but 3it thin ende be good therto,  

6668. and for why, j schal tellen to the,  

6672. and for why, j schal tellen to the,  

6680. "Thanne moste eche man Jn His Degre, that God to hath graunted lond opere fe, loke that he purchase Jn this lyf here the lyf evere lastyng elleswhere, than thou, that hast so rochel nichesse of tresowr, of goold, an of prowess, and al God hath sent the by grase, bethenk the in how lytel a spase! J haue the loved ful many a day, and 3it J do, with-owten delay. but ho loveth the so trewelye as thou thy-self owhst, pleynlye? J haue the told hit vndirfonge: aftir this victory lyvest pou not longe. For alle þe things that pou kanst make, Nis but a good ende forto take. and thow alle þe good þat pou myht do, but 3it thin ende be good therto,  

6696. and for why, j schal tellen to the,  

6704. and for why, j schal tellen to the,  

6712. and for why, j schal tellen to the,  

6720. and for why, j schal tellen to the,  

6728. and for why, j schal tellen to the,  

6736. and for why, j schal tellen to the,  

6744. and for why, j schal tellen to the,  

6752. and for why, j schal tellen to the,  

6760. and for why, j schal tellen to the,  

6768. and for why, j schal tellen to the,  

6776. and for why, j schal tellen to the,  

6784. and for why, j schal tennen to the,  

6792. and for why, j schal tellen to the,  

6798. and for why, j schal tellen to the,  

6806. and for why, j schal tennen to the,  

6814. and for why, j schal tellen to the,  

6820. and for why, j schal tellen to the,  

6828. and for why, j schal tellen to the,  

6836. and for why, j schal tellen to the,
Uter inquires about Arthur.

Ellis art thou Jn weye of lesyng,
Forsothe j the telle now, sire kyng.

and thowgh [thou] alle thy lyve hast lyved mys
and put thy sowle Jn gret distres,
thanne, 3if that thyn ende good be,
For3evenesse getest thou, sekerle.
Also j do the to vndirstonde
that nowht berest poun owt of thi londe—

but onliche worschepe & almesdede,

owt of thy lond schalt poun not lede.
For almesse with-owten worschepe do

ajens god ne vaylith not a slo.

Now j have declared thy lyvenge;
and thi qween Js ded, with-owte lesegene,
and Neuer ofer schalt thou haue non,

but whanne poun of this world dost now gon,

Thy lond with-owten eyr moost abyde.
therefore to thy-self loke at this tyde,

and loke, be thy sowle vel that thou do,
er that this world thow passe now fro.
thus from the, Sire, jow now gon,
For more with the have j not to don;
And Sey to vlfyn that he me leve,

For here-aftyr he schal it preve!"

thanne vter pendragon spak ageyn:

"merlyne, me thowhte J herde jow seyn
that j ju an hors bere to ben save
ajens myn enemys & victorye have.

but, merlyne, j prey the, telle me here
how god to zelden & what manere."

"Syre, j the Sey, make thou good ende,
and thanne to blysse thy sowle schal wende.
Fareth wel, non lengere J tarye with the,

but after pe bataylle thou thank on me."

Thanne axede vter Pendragon

aftyr zonge arthewr, that was his son.
Thanne answered merlyne to hym tho:

"Of hym hast thow not now forto do,
For he is become a fair long man,
and mochel mortarre forsothe he kan."
Thanne axede the kyng hym hertyle
3if evere his sone he scholde owht se.
"3e," quod merlyne, "ones, Jn fay,
and neuere more aftyr that day!"

Thus partyd merlyne and pe kyng,
as j 3ow seye with-owten leseng.
the kyng let Somowne his ost anon
vpon his enemies forto goun,
and let hym leggen jn on hors bere,
as 3e to-fore herden telle here.

Thus partyd merlyne and pe kyng,
as j 3ow seye with-owten leseng.
the kyng let Somowne his ost anon
vpon his enemies forto goun,
and let hym leggen jn on hors bere,
as 3e to-fore herden telle here.

Thus partyd merlyne and pe kyng,
as j 3ow seye with-owten leseng.
the kyng let Somowne his ost anon
vpon his enemies forto goun,
and let hym leggen jn on hors bere,
as 3e to-fore herden telle here.

Thus partyd merlyne and pe kyng,
as j 3ow seye with-owten leseng.
the kyng let Somowne his ost anon
vpon his enemies forto goun,
and let hym leggen jn on hors bere,
as 3e to-fore herden telle here.

Thus partyd merlyne and pe kyng,
as j 3ow seye with-owten leseng.
the kyng let Somowne his ost anon
vpon his enemies forto goun,
and let hym leggen jn on hors bere,
as 3e to-fore herden telle here.

Thus partyd merlyne and pe kyng,
as j 3ow seye with-owten leseng.
the kyng let Somowne his ost anon
vpon his enemies forto goun,
and let hym leggen jn on hors bere,
as 3e to-fore herden telle here.
The king is long sick.

His people are assembled about him.

The king is long sick.

The people say to him that the king is dead.

When he has lain speechless for three days, Merlin arrives.

But Merlin replies: "A man who has done so much good, cannot die.

And king Uter is not dead."

The people say that the king cannot speak.

Merlin replies that they shall hear him speak once more.

They all go into his room.
The people inform the dying king that Merlin has come.

The king recognises him.

Merlin asks the people to draw close to the bedside.

Merlin whispers into the king's ear:

"Sire, a fair end hast thou made.

After thee shall reign Arthur, thy son,

and he shall fill the round table."

The king turns round, and asks them all to pray for him.

Thanne seiden they to the kynge Jn fere:

"Lo, Sire, merlyne Js comen to 3ow here,
That 3e Weren Wonted to loven so Wel,
and he hath 3ow hit qwyt every del."

than to hymward tornede the kynge

with al his strengthe and his konneng,

and contenaunce made there to Merlyne,

so that he hym knew ful wel a[nd] fyne.

than spak merlyne to the peple anon,

bothe to temporal & spirital everichon,

and seide: "Sires, draweth 3ow now xere

that desiren 3owre kynge to speken to here."

than axeden they merlyne howhe that myhte be.

"Cometh," quod merlyne, "and stondyth be me!"

Thanne wente merlyne to the beddis hed,

and there to the kynge spak Jn that sted,

Softely rowneng Jn the kynges ere:

"Sire, a fair ende hast thow mad here,
3if hit Jn thy conciense now be
as thy Semblance here scheweth to me.
And on thyng J telle the Jn certeyne:

that be goddis grace aftyr the schal regne
Arthwr, that Js thy sone so fre ;
of al this newm kynge schal he be,
and he schal fulfylle the table rounde,
whiche that be the now Js here fownde."
And whanne the kynge herde this,

Ful sone to hym ward he torned, j-wys,
and preide the peple everychon

to God alle for hym to preyen anon.

than seide merlyne anon with-al :
"this pe laste word that evere spoken he schal!"

thanne wondreden alle that weren there,
how that he spak Jn Swich manere.
And so that Nyht he made his ende,
& to hevene blysse his Sowle gan wende.
Anon alle the prelacye of that lond

6784. MS. *afyne.*
with alle the Baronage, as j vndirstond,
jn the most worchepful and reverent gyse
they hym beryeden as they cowde devyse.

So was that lond with-owten eyr.
And on the morewen to-gederys the[y] gone repair,
of holy chirche al the prelacye
and alle the Baronage, with-owten lye,
Jn a paleys that cristene hyhte;
there semelden bothe clerk & knyhte,
and token cownseyl hem be-twene
how that the peple governed schold bene,
but Jn non wyse acorden they myhte.
thatane be-spak a ful gentyl knyhte:
“let vs alle be comowne asent
clepen merlyne to cownseyl, hat js present;
For he Js bothen wis and Ek redy
good cownseil to 3even vs, trewely !”
So that thus acordid they alle jn fere,
and aftyr merlyne anon senen there.

Whanne that merlyne to-forn hem comez was,
to hym they seyden there jn that plas :
“For a wis man, Sire, we the knowe,
and our kynge hast thou loved a gret throwe,
Ek therto, Sire, thou knowest ryht wel
that governour han we neuer a del.
For a lond with-owten governour
may not endureu ażens ony schowr.
wherfore, sire merlyne, we the preye,
al this hol cownseille, Sire, Jn feye,
vs to chesen swich a governour
the prelacye to plesen, the rem to honour,
and jn Savacyouu of the peple also !”
Anon thatane merlyne spak hem vnto :
“J nam not worthy Jn non degre
Non swich maner thing to taken on me,
Nethir non governour fortio chese,
but be my wyt J schal don 3ow ese,
Merlin advises the people to pray for a king. [CH. VI.

All declare they will follow Merlin's advice.

"Your king died at Martinmas," says Merlin.

"Christmas is coming, and I will tell you what to do."

At Christmas our Lord was born.

If you pray to Him, with good and humble hearts,

to hear your prayers

and to give you a king by some token,

3if that 3e wilen aocorden to me;
herketh now what my cownseil schal be!"
they seiden to hym the[y] wolden asente,
alle the hole cownseyl, veramente.

"This newm J have loved," quod merlyn,
"and ek al the peple that Js there-Jn.
3e knowen ful wel al jn fere
that 30wre kyng now ded Js here,
which deide atte qwyn3yme of seint martyn
this knowen 3e alle wel and fyn.

And hennes Jnto cristemasse
we ne haven but ryht a schort spasse.
and 3if 3e wilen don aftyr my cownnsaille,
J schal 30w Seyen, with-owten faylle,
god to worschepen, the world to plese,
and to 30wre hertes bothe joye and ise."
thanne seiden they alle to hym ageyn,
to hym they wolden concenten, certeyn.
"3e vndestondlyn alle ful wel
that now cometh the feste of nowel,
jn whiche the goode Lord was bore,
that savede hem pat weren forlore.
and as he Js lord over alle thyng,
Ek aboven alle oper he is kyng;
and as verrayly as a maiden hym bere,
of good cownceylle preye 3e him here!

For j dar be borewgh, and 3e him preye
jn this manere as j 30w seye,
and that kehe man preye jn his degre
with good herte and jn hymlyte:
lik as he was born Jn this feste,
a30wre preieris to heren, of mest and lest,
and as kyng of kynges he was bore,
a30wre Symple preieris to heren thore,
and as of alle thynges he is gouvernor,
a30w a kyng to chosen of honowr,
that at this Feste chosen myhte be
be som tokeneng that they myhten se,
the peple to governe and god to plese,
and ek the rem to setten Jn ese,
So that the peple knewen aryhte
that the Leccioun were be goddis myhte— 6892
and jif 3e wylen don as J 3ow seye,
Som tokeneng scholen 3e haven, certeinleye!
"The clergy shall have such a token."
thanne seiden they, so god hem Save,
Jt was the beste cownseil that they myhten have— 6896
"For there wys non man ethliche bore
that bettyr cownsell myhte 3even perchore."
thanne alle the clerghye there anon
thorwgh the newm dyde notyse thus son 6900
that Jn every chirche and abbye
bothe nicher and powre scholden preye,
what thorwgh here preyere and holychirche,
god to hem Som miracle scholde werche. 6904
herto acordid they al jn fere,
and merlyne of hem his leve took pre
Into othir contres forto gon.
thanne axeden they merlyne anon 6908
jif that this thuyng trewe scholde be.
"3e, j hope," quod merlyne, "Sykerle!
For no more xyle j comeu 30w to,
Tyl that the eleccioun be j-do."
"And Antron, that Norsched hadde Arthowr,
ate halwentyd with gret honour
6891. MS. knowe myhte aryhte, with o corrected into e, and myhte crossed out.
Antron, who has had his son (Kay) knighted at All-Hallows, also goes to London with his children.

On Christmas eve, there is a large congregation, praying steadfastly to God for a ruler.

Some, however, consider such prayers foolish.

Before mass, a holy man addresses the people:

"You are assembled here for the weal of your souls,"

his owne sone let dubben a knyht.
and Arthewr was woxen bothe strong & wyht, and was past Sevene 3er old,
ek perto was he bothe wyhte and bold;
and his owne Sone he dide hym calle, For so wende Arthewr it hadde befalle, and that his fadyr he hadde j-be, & thus wende Arthewr, ful sikerle. So that Antron to Londe gan go, and with hym his children bothe two.

Thanne vppon the even of cristemasse there sembled the peple more and lasse, bothe the clergye and the baronage and manye a man of hygh parage, to fulfille merlynes comamendement, that he hem bad with good entent. For but Symple lif ledden they there, and fulstelfast weren jn here preyere To god for swich a governour the cristene to defende Jn eueri schowr and cristes lawe to weingteigne. The lond to governe and to susteigne. And thus abyden they, tyl masse was don, gret multitude of peple and manion. And Some seiden that Folyys they were Swich maner of preieris to makyn there. "what, wene 3e," quod somme, "that god almyht here kyng to chesen down wolde alyht? lo, these folis wenen for here preiere be miracle a kyng to hauen here!" thus the masse there gan he Synge, a ful holy man, wel faste preyenge, and hit er that he the masse bigan, To alle that peple spak he than:

"Here Jn this plase assembled 3e ben
For thre Skelis, as 3e schole Sen,
and for 3oue profyt everywhare, and which they ben, J schal 3ow declare:

Ferst for the hele of 3oure sowles alle,
OH.

Prayers to God for a miracle. 185

and after for your worchepe, how so befall, The thrydde to knowen our Lordis myht, that god to 30w wile schewen be ryht of the elecuyown of our kyng, thys to sen be your preyeng, which schal ben your governwr and lord and holy chirche to sosteyne in good acord, which to vs alle it is Sustenauce and vs defendith from manye hard chaunce. Now sethen we ben alle ensemblyd here a kyng to chesin Jn this manere of on of 30w, which so that it be, but so wise be 3e not in non degre to knowen whiche were most profytable owper this lond to gourne most were able, and for that we ben Jn nown certein, perfore to crist let vs preyen, ful pleyn, that is of alle kyngges the kyng, so that vs graunte Owrre preieng, Swich A governwr that We Haue Ourre londes to meinteigne and to Save!" and thus diden the peple, with-owten faille, lik as this goode man hem dide cowsaille, thanne to masse wente he forth anon, also Faste as he myhte gon, tyl that the masse was atte gospel, and after they offreden wel and lel, and owt of the chirche thei gone to issue Jnto a voide place, this was ful trewe. and be that tyme the day gan dawe, where-offen the peple was ryht fawe. Anon the peple of this nowte Ful besyly Lokeden hem abowte, and behelden where that a foure-qwartered ston that there lay toforne hem echon. but of what maner ston that hit was, there knew no man Jn that plas. Somme there seiden hit was marbil gray, and somme seiden owpewise, with-owten delay.
The miracle of the sword.

In the middle of the stone is an anvil, and in the middle of this stone behelden they the sword, which was a very marvellous Stythy, with-owten mo, as though a smythis Styth it were, half a foot of heythe, with-owten dwere.

And whanne that they beheldyn this that owt of the minstre ferst wenete, j-wis, into the minstre they entred thanne, and tolde hit anon to this holy manne that here masse gan to Synge, which was erchebiscoppe, with-outen lesinge, Of Orbrice, as tellith this storye, and as hit is put into memoreye.

And whanne that the holy man herde of this, anon holywater thanne took he, j-wys, and wente to the sword with-jnne a throwe, and thereto obeyched hym wondril lowe; where as lettres of gold beheld he there, that in this manere endyted were, and seiden openliche declarenge: that swich a man schold ben here kynge that owt of the stethy the sword myhte drawe, he scholde be governour of lod and lawe; For god wyle that hit so now be, as schewyth be miracle, & non but he. and thanne this erchebiscoppe anon amonges the peple schewid it thus son. thussone this ston in the tothyr meyne that ston to Tate, and seiden that god ful mochel hadde j-do, that swich myracle wolde schewen hem so. thanne in they wenten anon to masse

7005. Small erasure after /ton.
7029. / squeezed in afterwards.
hit owt to here, bothe more and lasse, more-ower to zelden god here thankynge, and te deum laudamus thei gone to syngye.

And whanne that te devyn was j-doon, From the awter he torned anon, and seide: "sires, now mown 3e se that amonges 3ow somme goode men be, that god here now thorwgh youre preyere To vs swich tokenynges hath schewed here. wherfore here J comande 3ow alle that, vpon what man this lot besalle, For love, for hate, neper for enyve, whethir to pore or to riche it happe, trewlye, that non man a-gens this elexioun ne be, Sethen it is goddis wille, as 3e mown se. For Ho so contrarieth His signefiance, J drede on him that he wil werke veniance!"

Thanne forth this Goodman his masse gan syngye, 3eving to god bothe lawde and preysinge, and whanne the masse was al j-don, alle to that ston they wenten echon. thanne ech of other gan to enqwere whiche that ferst Scholde assayen there that sword owt of that styth to drawe, and to ben governour bothe of lond & lawe. thanne acordid they to-gideris echon that of hem ne scholde assayen it non othir thanne the erschebischope schold chese, Jn forveture his worschepe forto lese. thanne began there ful gret discord betwixen comunes, gentyles, and lord, that to ony enerytaunce hadden ryht. to that sword they wenten with al here styht, which that ferst styht wyman therto vpon that Sword his styht to do. thanne seide therchebischope to hem agein: "Amonges 3ow here, in certeyn,

7054. MS, whethir or pore or to, the last r corrected from t.
The archbishop admonishes the people, saying that no one knows the pre-ordination of God, and that noble birth and wealth avail nothing here.

All quietily withdraw from the stone.

The archbishop weeping commends their humility, and asks them to wait till after the festival.

So they do. Then the archbishop says:

"When justice was first instituted, the sword was given to uphold it; now, by means of the sword, our election shall be made.

Nis non So wis ne non worthy
that goddis wyl here knoweth, trewely,
whiche of 3ow that he wyle chese,
othir wich of 3ow the stat schal lese.
but of on thing J dar 3ow wel say : that Neythir gentrye ne richesse this day
ne schal not onlych his wille haene here,
Sauf onliche god be his powere.
For, Sires, 3it j sey 3ow furthermore,
J trove that he 3it ne be not bore
that this sword here owt schal drawe,
To ben 3owr lord of loud and lawe."
thanne acorderedyn they alle, with-owten faille,
amo to that erchebischoppis cownsaylle,
and withdrowen hem thane everichone
From that sword ryht alle anone.

thanne wepe the Bischope for pure pyte,
thanne jn hem he sawgh swich humylyte,
and seide : "this meknesse jnto 3ow entred Js
be vertw of cryst, with-owten mys !
and j wile that 3e knowen owt ryht
that aftyr the wylle of god almyht
J wile werken, Sires, ful otterly,
Goddis wraththe to eschewen pleyly.
Abydeth tyl that this feste be do,
and the sword to assayen schole we gon to."  

So whanne this feste was J-past,
To that sword they wentez jn hast.
"now, sires, beholdith here goddis myht,
that he for vs hath wroght aryht !
For ferst whanne crist ordeyned justise,
Sires, j 3ow seye, hit was jn this wyse :
be the spere and be the sword
he ordeyned to gouerne al middillerd.
For the sword was ferst betake,
holy chirche to defendyn from wreke.
and here be the sword is oure eleccioun,
this Reem to governen al and Som.

7102. Goddis, G through correction.
7116. Som, S through correction.
The sword is tried.

and therefore good counsel that ye make
ho that this wile on hym take,
be he neere so hygh, proud, or Riche,
and though he seeme non man him liche.
loke ye pore men ne ben not wroth,
thoughe that the Riche to 3ow ben loth,
thoughe they assayen the sword to-fore,
For grettere thanne ye ben & worthiere more. 7124
For vnknoweng hit is to 3ow alle
3it on whom the lot schal falle,
whethir on Lord, knyht, or squyer,
On powr, comown, oper on bacheler,
or which of 3ow alle kyng schal be,
hit is 3it vnknownen, ful Sykerle!"

Thus anon acordid alle that Ensemble
To therchebisschope, ful Sekyrle,
with-owten ony rankewr of herte;
there was non word that hem asterte;
but ho so wolde, scholde hit asaye,
thus acordid they alle, with-owten delaye.
thanne assentyd they everychon
To what lord therto wolde gon,
and to whom patent god wolde senden his grace,
openly to ben schewyd in that place.
thanne retorneid they al in fere
To therchebisschop anon there,
and ij .c. & .L. they chosen anon
of the worthyest, that myhte gon
Forto asayen there here myht,
On whom that god wolde schewen pe Ryht.
but amonge's hem ne was here non
pe sword to remewe owt of patent stou.
So thanne wente alle oper in fere
of commones, of powre men, patent weren there,
Forto asayen what they myhten do.
but al availled hit hem not a slo,
For remewe hit myht be for non man;
Swich miracle god gan schewen than.
So that hit was comandeid in hast
Finally, ten men are appointed to guard the sword, with orders not to prevent anybody from trying it.

Fruitless trying goes on for a week.

Then the archbishop holds forth the power of God.

The people vow they will not leave the town, till they see the issue.

All go to their lodgings.

Then a tournament is got up, and the ten guardians look on.

Sir Kay calls on Arthur to fetch his sword from their hostel.

To .x. worthy men to keep it fast, and that they Scholde non man lette hit to asayen, ho that myht it fette and forto taken it owt of that ston, That be were markyd ryht anon.

So that thus the sword asayed was .viii. dayes to-gederis In that plas, and whanne ech e man hadde asayed his myht, Thanne seide therchebishope anon ryht:

"Now mowne 3e alle wel vnderstonde that this is werk of goddis sonde, For power of this sword hath non man, pleyn, but hym that god hath chosen, certeyn!"

Thanne sworn they alle in that place that owt of thike town they wolde not pace, Tyl they wyster the victorye ho scholde have; thus Swore they alle, so god hem save.

thanne, whanne the masse thus was j-do, ech e man to his ostage gan forto go, and whanne thei hadden e ten everychon, to this sword they wenten alle anon, and þere ech e man torneyed with oþer, þe sone azens fadyr, brothir azens broþir, and evere behelden these x. worthy men Ho that the sword scholde beren then.

more oþer thei beheld the gret Tornaye, how ech e man his myht gan there asaye. (So happeide that antronys sone þat Tyde knyht was mad in armes to ryde, at halowyntyd to-fore þat hygh feste of cristemasse, as hit lyht in geste.) and the sothe to tellen, ful Sekirle, al that town sente to that torne. and whanne þat tornement begonnen was, that sire kay clepid arthewr ju þat plas. "þere brothyr," seyde sire kay anon, "That to owre ostage 3e wolden gon, and that my sword 3e bringen to me,

7156, 7160. thei, i squeezed in afterwards. 7196. hit, t on erasure.
how so euere hit happe, j praye to pe.”

Arthur artewr, hat was ful Servisable,
Forth took his weye, with-owten fable,
As faste prekende As He myhte Ryde,
hom to his ostage that jike tyde.
and whanne to his ost that he was gon,
Nethir man ne womman fonde he non,
but alle weren they gon, with-owten delaye,
Forte Sen that grete Tornaye.
So whanne his brotheris sword he myhte not gete,
Ful tendirly the teres he dide down lete,
and so wepyngly he torned ageyn,
Tyl hat to-fore the wynstre he cam, ful pleyn,
and sawgh that sword where hit stood
Faste jn pe ston, & perto he 300d,
For toforne asaied he euere that game
The Swerd to geten to haven a fame.
For jif the sword he myhte arere,
To his brothir he wolde hit bere.
and asonne as he gan asaye,
the sword he gat with-owten delaye,
and vndir his lappe hit kepte preve,
and per-with to his brothir he gan to fle.
and whanne sire kay sawh hym komenge,
asens his brothir he gan to flynge,
also faste as he myhte ryde,
his sword to haven at that tyde,
and seide: “Brothyr, J 30w praye,
3eve me my sword, & not 3e delaye!”
“now certein, brothir, j ne have hit nowht,
but here anothir j have 30w browht.”
and from vndir his cote he drowh it owt.
Anon he hit knew, with-owten dowt,
that the same sword hit was anon
whiche tofore pe wynstre stood jn pe ston.
Anon he thoughte whanne, with-owten lesyng,
that be that sword he scholde be kyng.
thanne commaunded he his brothir artewr anon
Kay's false pretence. Antron disbelieves him. [CH. VI.

Kay sends Arthur to fetch his father.

After Antron his Fadyr Forto gon,
where pat evere he myhte hym gete,
and pat for non thing he scholde lete.
So longe wente arthwyr, that he him fond,
and Forto hym pere brouhte be pe hond.
thanne, whanne Sire kay his Fadyr beheld,
where as he hovede vndir his Scheld:
"Lo, be-hold, fadyr, j schal be kyng ;
This swerd to me is good tokenyng.
For this same stak In the ston,
whiche han asayed hyt ful manyon.
So that Thus is now my destene
that nedis be this swerd kyng moste j be !"
Antron finds out the truth.

Kay confesses the truth.

Antron demands the sword from him.

Arthur does so.

Then Antron commands his son to try and take it out.

But Kay cannot move it.

Antron is now sure, embraces Arthur, and asks what reward he shall have, if he makes Arthur king.

Antron tells Arthur that he is only his foster-father.

7285. *Artheyr*, t through correction.
7295. *ntron* on erasure.
7302. MS. *your’es.*
MERLIN.
Arthur weeps with disappointment, and wonders how he, being of obscure birth, can attain such distinction.

Antron inquires again about his reward, in case Arthur should have that grace.

Antron further relates of his wife’s sacrifice, and of their joint tender care.

Arthur implores him still to consider him his son.

Neper ho the be-gat, j hit not knowe, whethir he were man hy oyer lowe!” and whanne Arthwyr this vudirstood, That his Fadyr denoyede his blood, he wepte ful harde teres smerte For tendirmesse with humble herte, and seide: “dere sire, howgh may this be, that swich good oyer worschepe scholde turene to me, this or ony othir worldly thing, Sethen ze me knownen not of myn E[n]gendryng?” “jis, Sire, a Fadyr hauen ze be kyndc, what so evere j putte 3ow in mynde. but, Sire, and hit be pe wille of god almyht That to this grace ze comen be ryht, and 3if hit mowe be Fortheryd by me, Sire, what schal thanne my made be?” thanne answerid Arthwyr to hym welsone: “What ze wilc desiren of ony bone.”

thanne sette on Antron also blyve, and tolde Arthwyr of al his lyve, And How His Norse that His Wyf Was, and Norsched his sone kay In othyr plas, and sook the mylk of a straunge womman— “and my wyf 3ow Fostred, as she wel can; Therefore to me, Sire, and to myn sone 3e owhten to Sen a good Gwerdone. For 3ow haue j norsched as tendirly, bothe J and my wyf, Sire, trewely, as euere child norsched myhte be, j telle 3ow, sire arthwyr, ful sikerle!” “thanne preye j 3ow,” quod Arthwyr thanne, “lik as ze bien a worschepeful manne, That ze wolden not disnoyen me, but J as 3owre sone euere forto be. For 3if that 3e wyle me thus forsake, thanne wot j not how on to take, and 3if that god this grace me sende, to 3ow & to 3owre sone j wil ben ful kende.

7316. MS. Egendryng; cf. E[Fured], i. 5998.
For what thing that 3e desiren of me,  
certain, Sire, grauntyd sone schal jt be!"
  "Sire," quod Antron, "j ne schal axen non thing  
That myhte tornen to 30wre hyndring,  
nethyr 30wre Lond, ne 30wre nichesse,  
ne non thing that 3ow schal distresse.  
But of on thing J wolde 3ow praye,  
and that 3e hit me not with-xaye,  
but that kay, my sone, 30wre steward be  
alle 30wre Londes forto over-se;  
And thowh that he to 3ow forfeete,  
owntir to ony other, Jn Jre or hete,  
Nethir for non trespas that he may do,  
From that offys to putten hym fro,  
but as longe as his lyf may endure,  
of 30wre stewardschepe to ben Sure.  
And thowgh he be vnkurteys or vnkynde,  
thanne jn 30wre herte 3e have jn mynde  
That of a-nothir my[1]k Norsched was he  
thanne of his owne modyr, Sekyrle.  
and þerfore Suffren him more 3e moste  
Thanne to ony other, as J 3ow troste.  
wherfore of this bone J preye to the,  
and that 3e wylen not wernen it to me!"  
Thanne answerid Arthewr ful sone anon:  
"Alle 30wre hole askynge j graunt Sone."
Thusson Antron took Arthewr anon,  
and to the hygh awter þanne gonne they gon.  
there Arthewr Swor on his Surawnce  
that heste to holden, with-owten varianuce.  
And whanne he hadde thus his oth mad,  
Thanne antron & sire kay were ful glad.  
So toward the Toranye thanne gonne they gon,  
but homward they comen everychon;  
And that day fynysched was the gret Toranye,  
So that toward the mynstre they comen jn hye  
There alle here evensong forto here,
For 3it of theleccious they weren in dwere.

Thanne clepyde antron his Frendis anon, and tofore therchebisschope gone they gon, and Seyde: "Sire, here J 3ow praye, Lesteneth to me now what J schal Saye. Sire bisschope, j haue a song Sone here That Js non knyht, and 3it wolde he lere To asayen the swerd that Js Jn the ston aforne these Lordynges here everychon. Sire Bisschope, of this he doth me preye, Therfore the arende here J to 3ow Seye."

Thanne clepyd weren alle the Barouns to semble, aforne that ston to aperen, ful Sykirle. So whanne assembled they weren echon, Antron to Arthewr thanne seide anon: "go forth, and asaye this swerd ryght here, Hyt Owt to drawen 3yf 3e konne lere."

Anon Arthewr to this swerd wente aforne alle the peple there presente, and that swerd there pulde owt Ryht sone, anon to the Byschope there-with gan gone, and offryd hit vpe Jnto his hand Toforn alle pe peple bat there dyd stond. The Bysschope nescyved hit ful blyve, and ful joyful was in his lyve. So that Arthewr Jn his armes þere gan he brase aforne al the people Jn that plase, and Te deum lavdamus he gan to Synge, Therto alle the bellys anon gonnen rynge. So thus to the wynstre they gonene hym bere, The Bysschope with the clergye bat was there. Thanne alle the Baronage that þere was, Gret sorewe and morneng maden Jn þat plas, and Seyden, certein, hit Scholde neure be, a knave to be set Jn so hygh degue, Neyther to ben here Sovereyn ne kyng; They wolde hit Suffren for non thing.

7382. dwere, the first e added above the line. 7414. Maden, N corrected from f.
Anon Therschebisschope wax ryht wroth, For here wordis to hym weren ful loth, and seyde: “Lordynges, wylen 3e vndirstonde Of hym that is kyng of See and Londe, he knoweth bettere what is to done, thane alle the compenye of 3ow echone!”

Anon Antron and alle the comunes jn fere To Arthewr anon assembelden there, and the Barowns the contrarye helden anon a3ens Arthewr and the comunes echn. Thanne spak Therchebisschope with angry herte wordys ful bolde, whiche put hem Smerte: “knowen 3e wel, Lordynges here present, That this Js holy owre Lordis entent, how this persone only joure kyng schal be Of his owne elecciouz, Lordynges, Sykerle! wherfore j schal 3ow schewe, et 3e hyt crave, what affyauueze jn god here-offen that j have. Now go forth, arthewr, my sone so dere, Goddys wyl to schewen among this peple here. Goth and sette the swerd there as Jt was, Openly to-forn the peple jn this plas.” anon arthewr with good herte and wylle Therchebisschoppis wyl wente to fulfylle, and pyhte the Swerd Into that Ston; and also Faste hit there helde anon as evere hyt dyde ony tyme to-fore, as sad, as Faste, and al so sore. and whanne thus that arthewr hadde don, Thanne to hem seyde therchebysschope anon: “A fayrere eleccioun neuere there was Thanne God hath Schewed 3ow jn this plas. Therfore goth now, bothe powre & riche, jufaye, vpon the Swerd 3owre wyht al to asaye.”
anon assayed every man jn his degre, but For hem alle hit wolde not be. Thanne seide to hem Therschebisschope ageyn: “now ben 3e alle grete Foles, jn certeyn, Oure Lordys wyl to contraryen here,

CH. VI.]  The barons do not acknowledge him. 197

7420  The archbishop angrily reproofs the barons.

7424  The commons assemble about Arthur, but the barons still oppose.

7428  The archbishop cen- sures them again,

7432  saying that he will show them God’s will. He tells Arthur to put the sword in its former place.

7436  He tells Arthur to put the sword in its former place. Arthur obeys,

7440  and the sword sticks as firmly as ever.

7444  He then tells the others to try. But all fail.

7448  The archbishop then exclaims: “You are fools to oppose our Lord’s will!”

7452  He then tells the others to try.

7456  “You are fools to oppose our Lord’s will!”

7425, 7428. MS. cœnēs.
The barons want to wait till Candlemass, [CH. VI.

The barons reply that they do not oppose God's will, but are annoyed at Arthur's low birth.

They therefore desire the archbishop to let the sword remain in its place till Candlemass.

The archbishop assents.

At Candlemass, people try the sword again, but ever in vain.

Arthur, at the word of the archbishop, draws it out as easily as if nothing kept it.

Anon whanne the Barouns herden al this, Ful sore they weren abasched, j-wys, and besoughten the Byschope alle jn Fere that thike sword myhte stytle abyden there Into the Feste Seweng of kandilmasse, hyt there to asayen bothe more & lasse that neuere the Swerd assayede to-fore, thanne here myghtes to asayen thore. Thussone therchebisschope hem grauntyd anon That al here askyng there scholde be done.

So whanne this Feste tho comen was, The peple gan sembllen jn-to that plas, and hit assaieden there everychon, but of al that peple was there not on That the swerd there owt taken myhte; hit was the lasse wonder: they hadden non Ryhte. Thanne Seyde the Bysschope anon ryht to hem alle: "Now knowen 3e what ryht to 3ow doth falle, therfore welen we now assayen goddis wylle." And anon to arthewr he seye vntyle:

Go forth now, Arthewr, my child so dere, To schewen what god wyl don for the here; and 3yf he wyle that thou here Lord be, the Swerd go take owt, now let se!"

Thanne wente forth arthewr ryht anone, and that Swerd pulde owt thussone, and as lyhtly took hit jn-to his hand, as thowgh non thyngh hyt hadde withstand, and took hyt to therchebisschope anon ryht, 7459. MS. a3eng.
Thankynge only god of his grete myht.

The archbishops and the clergyes alle beheldyn how this kas be-gan to falle.

They wepten alle for joye ju that place, and only thankyd god of his grete grace.

Thanne axede the Bysschope hem jn vyrown:

"which of 30w may contraryen this elecciown?"

Anon answerede the niche men ageyn, and preyden the Bysschope, in certeyn, 3yt forto Suffren that sword to stonde—

"Tyl hyt han assayed mo men Jn Londe; that schal ben at Pask now next sewenge, so longe to abyden, for ony thyng.

And 3yf at that tyme there be non man that thazme the sword owt taken ne kan, ellis, Syre bisschop, be thin comauendement hym wilen we obeyen alle, verament.

And but 3yf 3e welen granten vs this heste, elles everyman let don his beste!"

" wylen 3e," quod therchebisschope thanne, "with good herte obeyen, everymanne, and J hyt Suffre jnto that day?"

" 3e, sire," they seyden alle, with-owten delay.

Thanne seyde therchebisschope to Arthewr tho:

" dere Syre, to the ston a3en that 3e go, and Setteth the sword there-jnne ageyn. For of on thing j dar Seyen 3ow pleyн : 3e scholen neuere fayllen of that thyng that 3ow hath behoten owre hevene kyng."

The archbishop and the clergy weep for joy.

Thanne Arthewr styrte hym forth before, and the sword jn his place putte nyht thore.

Anon was ordeyneb be comaundement

That sword to kepen tho, verament, Ten worthy men, and clerkys Fyve, and fyve lower men of good lyve.

The sword that tyme as faste there was as evere to-fore hit stood jn that plas.

Thus abod the kynges Arthewr Sacreng

7512. alle daubed.
The choosing of Arthur's officers.

The archbishop exhorts Arthur to a good life, and advises him to choose his councilors and retinue.

Arthur leaves this with the archbishop and Antron. They choose two counsellors, and make Kay steward.

On Easter eve the barons are summoned to the archbishop's palace.

Into the feste of esterne next comeng.

Therchebyschop Seyde to Arthewr thanne:

"thou schalt ben here kyng, here governour & manne,
Therfore loke evere a goodman that thou be
From this tyme forward Jn alle degre.
and chese now whiche of thy conseyl scholen be,
and jn thin houshold to haven onest meyne,

Evene as this day that thou were kyng alone,
lik as thou schalt be helpe of hevene kyng in trone."

"Sire," quod arthewr, "j wyle ful wel
jn goddis ordenaunce putten me echedel ;
and aftar soure counseyl, Syre, wyle j do,
whethir hit me torne to wele oher wo.
and therfore Swich meyne that [3e] me chese
bothe god and holychirche forto plese.

And clepyth my Fadyr to 3owre counsayl,
For he is a man that may mochel avayl."
Thanne clepyd the bysschope his fadyr Antron,
and bad with hym that he scholde gon.
thusson he tolde hym every word,
how Arthenur and he weren atte acord.

thanue anon chosen they tweyne conseylleris
of worthy men and gret perys.

That so be here counseyl, j vndirstond,
sire kay was mad steward of his lond.
and alle the remenant abyden stylle
into the feste of Pask with ryht good wylle.
and whanne that feste was comez than,
To Londone they comen every man.

Vpon Pask evenen the bisschope forth Sente
after alle the baronage, veramente,
Jn his paleys to maken here Semble ;
This was his wylle, ful certeinle.
Thanne axede he hem of alle here wylle,
3if to that chyld they wolden consenzyyn vntylle.
Thanne answeryd the Barone ageyn :
" we wyl not contraryen, jn certeyn,
The wyl of oure Lord, hevene kyng.
But vs merveilleth of this child so yng
and thereto so lowe j-born of degre,
That Swich a pore man our kyng schold be."
"Now certein," quod the bisschope thanne,
"j ne holde 30w none goode crystene menne
To contraryen goddis owne elecciown,
that to 30w here is schewed al & Som!"
"Syre, that wyl we not jn non partye,
a3ens goddis wyl here not applye.
but Sethen 3e knowen of his degre,
and of his Byrthe e seyn, sykyrle,
Sire, to vs alle hyt Js vnknowe
and to alle this Baronye vppon this Rowe."
"thanne wyle 3e letten now hys crowneng,
at this tyme forto maken hym kyng?"
"3e, Sire Bisschope, tyl we knowen more,
and we Scholen Seyn 30w a skele wherfore.
Tyl we knowen bettyr what he Js,
and whens he cometh, with-owten mys,
Respyt we preyen of this Sacre,
3if that 30wre wylle hit myhte so be."
quod therchebysschope to that Baronage :
"now knowe j wel alle 30wre owtrage!"
"Nay, Sire, non lengere thanne Pentecost
we hit not axen, with-owten bost;
and thus we preyen that 30 wolden do,
3if that 30w lyke to consentyn therto."
vppon this quod the Bysschope thanne :
"we schole ben avysed every manne."
So thus departyd there that cownsaylle,
Arthewr to worschepe, pe baronage to dysaylle.
So that vppon the morewe, Aftyr masse,
To the ston Arthewr a3en gan passe.
and that swerd he took owt fulsone,
lyk as to-fore tymes he hadde there done.
Thanne held they hym only For here kyng
with-owten more varyance other lettyng,
and preyden hym to putten the swerd jn a3eyn

7572 The barons still take exception to Arthur's low birth,
7576 wish for information on that point,
7580 wish for information on that point,
7584 and desire prolonged respite,
7588 and desire prolonged respite,
7592 and desire prolonged respite,
7596 and desire prolonged respite,
7600 and desire prolonged respite,
7604 and desire prolonged respite,
7608 and desire prolonged respite,

7601. <downdraft>, a corrected from e.
There as to-fore Jt stood, with-owten leyn, and that to hem he wolde speke and somewhat of his herte to hem breke.

“Sires, that schal j do with good wylle, and 3e to me wyl lestene vntylle ; and of what thing that 3e preyen me, J Schal Jt 3ow grawnten, Sires, certeynle.”

Thanne laddew they hym to the mynstre anon To spoken with hym there everychon.

“This, we vndirstonde Jn owre entent That 3e ben owre Lord, verament ; and what 3e desiren from this day, we wylen hit performen, with-owten nay, and therto owre londes of 3ow to holde, and homage to don 3ow ful manyfolde, of 3oure Sacryng espyt that 3e do into pentecost, certein, with-owten mo ; and xeuere the lasse kyng scholen 3e be, and kepen 3owre stat, worschype, & dignete.”

“How Schold j,” quod arthwv thanne, “Homage Resceyven of ony manne, Tyl J-Sacred Fulliche that j be and jn my stat at alle manere degr6 ; But of the respyt that 3e me preye, j wele not denyen hit Jn non weye. 3yt, that j schal not Sacred be, Sires, j Sey 3ow now certeine, That nethyr kyngdom ne worschepe j desire but be wyl of the kyng of the hygh empyre. And ek 3if that 3e consenten therto, Ful moche the bettere hit may be do.” Thanne answeryd the Baronage ageyn, and of this chyld Seyden, Jn certeyn :

“jif he mowe lyven and enduren may, [he] Schal ben ryht wys, the sothe to say, [F]or wondyrly he doth vs answere here
Arthur's liberality.

[j]n every poynt, with-owten dwere!"

Thanne seide to hym the Baronage ageyn:
"Sire, of on thing we preyen 3ow pleyn:
now at this pentecost 3e Sacred scholen be
and rescseyven 3owre crowne and dignete.
and with-jnue this Terme obeyen welen we,
To don 3ow homage, Servyse, and Fe,
[a]s owre erchebisschope wyl vs telle;
we wylen werken aftyr his spelle."

Thanne alle ornemenntis browht they forth, sykirle,
That to a kyng belonged Jn alle degre,
Forto assayen Jn here manere
3yf owht coveytous that he were.
Thanne axede this worthy Arthevvr anon
of these estates alle be on & on,
and what eche man was jn his degre.
So that good departed there anon thanne he,
and 3af bothe Riche Robes, gold, and Fe
To Erl, Barouns, & knyhtes, ful gret plente;
and the gold and pe Sylver that hym browht was,
anon he departyd jn that plas
To sweche as hym thowhte best weren there,
So that Love he gat hym every where.

Thus departed Arthwrr His 3yftes Alle
that to hym weren browht, bothe grete and smalle.
and thanne they syen hym of alle things so gent,
anon they Seyden Jn here entent
That a worthy man he Scholde be
and Neuere coveytous jn non degre.
"But verrayly vs semeth Jn his avyse,
and he hadde Resceyved his dygnete,
that to hym gret grace scholde Resorte,
as Evere to ony man that was of his porte.
For Every man he Rewardyth aftyr his degre,
and Every stat gwerdoneth ful pryncypale!"
And Neuere Evel tach jn hym they fowndede
of alle that tyme Jn thyke stownde.

7646, 7652-56. See the preceding footnote.
7663. gold through correction.
Preparations for the crowning. [CH. VI.

So thus the Sacreng there gan abyde
into pentecost, that holy tyde. 7684

Thanne Sembled they echon ageyn
at Londone eftsones, J Sey 3ow pleyn.
There the sword a3en they gone asaye
To pullen It owt, ho so pullen maye. 7688
but there was non man jn that plase
That sword to taken, ne hadde non grase.

Thanne therchebisschope anon nyht
alle things aparayllede, j 3ow plyht,
Bothe corowne, Septre, and the saerynge,
al this he ordeyned, with-owten lesynge.

Vppon the whitsonne even, saturday at nyht,
therchebisschope took cownseyl at Barown & knyht, 7696
and that nyht Artheur knyht was mad,
er ony more dignite that he had,
and that Nyht in preyeris lay everyman, 7700
Tyl vppon the morwen that hit dawen began.
So vppon the morwen, whasne hit was day lyht,
To the maister chirche cam bothe barown & knyht.

Thanne bespak therchebisschope Ful sone:
“Sires, 3e weten what 3e han to done. 7704
Lo, here this man of goddis chesing
To ben bothe 3oure governour & kyng !
beholdith here vestures, and robys ryal,
and the corowne of this lond with-al,
Be the cownseyl of Ryalis and of o3er mo
this coronacioun here fortu ben do.
3it wolde j weten not For than
3if that here be ony Swich man 7712
that this eleccion here wolde with-seye ;
of this the sothe wolde j knowen, Jn feye.”

thanne answerid they alle be on assent:
“we wylen he be crowned, verament.” 7716

“Thanne with this,” quod the bisschope thanne,
“So he haue the hertis here of every manue,
what a3ens hym hath be wrowht jnto this day,
he it to 3ow for3evith for evere and ay.” 7720
Thanne knelyd they down al jn fere,
and to Arthewr cryden mercy there.

Thussonc a2ens hem he knelede vpon his kne,
and vpon hem he wepe for pure pyte, Seyeng to hem there, fulsore weeping:
"J forgve to 3ow alle 3owre trespasyng,
and so j preye to god an hy
that he hyt forgve, & so wyle J."

Thanne Rysen they alle be on assent,
and hym connne embrace with good entent,
and hym vp boren, and there forth ladde
there as the Robes the bisschope leyd hadde.

So thanne they hym vestured anon,
and the bisschope thussone to masse ward gan gon.

Anon As the Bysschope there Redy Was,
To Artheur there cam he jnto that plas.

"Sire, to the Sweorde now 3e mosten go
and hyt vptaken, as tofore 3e han do,
wherwith holychirche defenden as a knyht
and also cristendom with al jowre Myht."

Thanne wenten they forth on procession,
bothe prelats, lordis, and comunes echon,
Tyl they comen there as the sword was
Stekyng jn the ston jn the forseid plas.

Thanne seide thecherbisschope to Artheur there:
"Lesteneth now to me, and 3e scholen here.
3yf hit so be that thou wylt Swere
and to God avowen & his modyr dere,
Ek to Petyr and Powl, enswre thou me,
and to alle Seyntes that jn hevene be,
holy chirche to susteynen jn hire ryht
and pes jn thy Lond with al thy myht,
Ek the vnconseylled forto crowseylle,
Thy peple to worschepe and avaylle,
To thy Power this schalt thou do,
and nyhtful lawes to meynteyne also,
with this com forth, take vpe this Sweord,
whom god hath chosen jn this middilerd!"

Anon so Arthew[r] herde al this,

7734. ward added above the line.
7759. MS. *Arthwr*. 
Arthur's coronation.  His court.  [CH. VI, VII.

Arthur swears, for pite he wepe, & many mo, j-wys.  7760
So that he there Swor be god almyhty altthis to susteyne with herte ful trewly—
"And be alle thynges that jn erthe be, J schal hem Sosteyne jn my dege."  7764

kneels down, with this anon Arthewr he knelyd adown amonges al the peple that was jn vyrown.
takes up the sword, Anon the Swerd there vpe he took, Seenge many man that on hym gan look,
and as lyhtly took vpe nyht there, as Jn the ston hyt not ne were.  7768

bears it to the altar, So bar he the swerd forth jn his hond, and to thawter they hym ladde, 3e vndirstond,
and is crowned. and there hym Sacryd, with-owten dowte, & as to here kyng they gone to hym lowte.
Ek anoynt he was anon therto, & alle that belonged to a kyng also.  7772

After the coronacion j-endyd was, Whanne this coronacion j-endyd was,
and the masse j-Fenysched be goddis gras, and the masse j-Fenysched be goddis gras,
owt of the mynstre alle wente they anon, and behelden there aftyr this Ston,
and behelden there aftyr this Ston, But they ne wyste where hit was do,
so sodeynliche aweye was hit hem fro.
And jn this maner Arthew[r] kyng chosen was, as 3e han me herd nehersyn jn this plas.  7776

The stone with the anvil is gone! Thus Here-Aftyr the Storye Doth telle what aftyr in kyng Arthewris cort befelle,
That aftyr his coronacioun the 3er Sewenge To his cowrt nepyrede bothe knyht & kynge.  7788
To that court cam the kyng of orkanye with Fyve hundred knyhtes jn his compenye.
Also thedyr kam pe kyng of core, pat hyht vryens, with Foure hundred knyhtes Jn his presens.  7792
thanne kam the kyng newtris Garlot,

7769. ad corrected from as.  7774. MS. gonne.
7782. was, w corrected from a.  7783. MS. Arthev.
7784. The remainder of the column blank; in the left margin: Coronacō arthu' .
7787. aftyr', r' squeezed in.
that kyng Artheuris Sostir weddid, wel j wot,
and with him vij hundred knyhtes of pris.
And aftyr hym to cowrt þere kam j-wis
the kyng that was of ryht Gorre,
that Carados of brebas hyht, Sykerle;
Therto he was knyht of þe table nownde,
and with hym vj hundred knyhtes Sownde.

Aftyr hym kam kyng augwysyaax so fre,
that kyng of scotlond was, Sykerle,
a long man, ful hardy, & gret of prowesse,
with fyve hundred knyhtes, more ne lesse.
Aftyr hym to court kam kyng ydyers
with fowre hundred knyhtes stowt & Fers,
wel j-armed & harneysed owt ryht,
Thowgh anon they scholde gon to fyht.
whanne these kynges were Sembled jn fere,
of hem gret joye made kyng Arthewr there,
and many gret festes he hem made
with grete presente &ȝiftes to maken hem glade.
Every lord there aftyr his degre,
grete jewelis he hem 3af, Sykirle.
whanne these Barowns beheldyn al this,
the grete presente and jewelis of pris,
and the grete festyng that he hem made,
anon there-offen dysdeyn they hadde,
and amongis hem-Self they goune to say:
"we mown ben Sory to abyden this day,
To sen a knave of so lowe degre,
kyng of this ðem that he scholde be!"
Anon his ȝiftes they refused echon,
and streyth to the kyng wenten anon,
and deden hym wel forto vndirstonde
they ne held hym non kyng of that londe,
and boden hym faste thens to hye
ownt of that lond ryht Schortlye,
For but ȝyf he wolde the lond forsake,
they wolden hym werche bothe tene & wrake,
Merlin comes to the rebellious barons.

Merlin arrives. The barons send for him, take him into a palace, and ask his opinion of the new king.

Merlin greatly commends him. The barons urge Arthur's low birth.

King Arthur must fly and be in hiding. [CH. VII]

and but 3if he thus dede, sekerlye, 7832
ellis to the dethward he scholde hye.
whanne kyng Arthewr herde here grete manas,
thanne owt of streugthe of karlion gan he pas,
and there logged hym prevyly jn the town,
For mochel he dred hym of tresown;
where as he abod fyftene dayes,
pat but fewe wyster where, pe sothe to saye.
thanne happed it aftyr, as j 3ow telle,
that merlyne jnto pat town cam, as befelle,
and jn his owne Semblawnce aperede openlye,
For that of the peple he wolde be seye.
And thusson as they hym Sye,
cretly they merveilled, Sekirlye.
Anon the lordis aftyr him gonne sende,
and merlyne ful gladliche to hem gan wende.
Anon as these Barowns Syen him comeng,
azens hym they wenten jn metynge,
and of hym gret joye they made,
and jnto a fair paleys they him ladde,
that stood be a reverys syde,
& jnto a fair yede there gonne they byde.
Whanne Jn that place that they Were,
anon merlyne they aresownd there,
and this to hym was here askyng,
how that hym likede be here newe kyng—

"That therchebisschope of dover hath crowned here
agens our e leve Jn alle manere."
"Certes, lordynges," quod merlyne tho,
"they myhte non bettere hanen j-do."
"what mene 3e?" quod the barowns thanne,
"how speke 3e of this jlke manne?
jn this rem many worthy lordis there be,
more worthy to ocupien that worthy degre
thanne a knave that noman doth knowe
whens he cam, of hygh oper lowe!"
"3e Seyn as that 3e thinken," quod merlyne,
"but now wylen 3e heren of counseyl myn,
and undirstondith what j schal Seye:

7838. to, MS. ta. 7867. that corrected from the.
Merlin.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series, No. cxii.

1913.

Price 15s.
Merlin,

A MIDDLE-ENGLISH METRICAL VERSION
OF A FRENCH ROMANCE,

BY

HERRY LOVELICH,
SKINNER AND CITIZEN OF LONDON (AB. 1450 A.D.)

EDITED
FROM THE UNIQUE MS. 80 IN CORPUS CHRISTI COLLEGE,
CAMBRIDGE,
WITH AN INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND GLOSSARIES,

BY

DR. ERNST A. KOCK.

PART II.

LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY KEegan PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD.,
BROADWAY HOUSE, LUDGATE HILL, E.C.
AND BY HUMPHREY MILFORD, OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS
AMEN CORNER, E.C., AND IN NEW YORK.
1913
Merlin suggests a meeting.

he is as hygh a born man, in feye, as the beste of jow that js here,
For here to his Fadyr pere nys non pere.
For Antronys sone nys non thing he, nethyr sire kay his brothyr nys, sikerle, that his steward chosen is this day, but only of norture, as J 3ow say." 7872

"where-offen speken 3e?" quod 3e barouns tho, "moche more merveyl js this vs vnto." 7876

"3e doth aftyr me," quod merlyn thame,
"and j schal counsilleu 3ow as j kanne.
Aftyr kyng Artheur that 3e don sende Jn Ryhtful trews, as 3e ben hende, and aftyr vlphyn, that worthy man that cownseyllour was to Pendragon ; and aftyr antron that 3e senden also, that kyng Arthwyr hath norsched hedirto ; and thanne scholen 3e knowen al this thing, holiche the begynneng and endyng. And weteth wel, Lordynges, with-owten leyne, that j make non lesyng to 3ow, in certeyne." 7884

Thanne quod [the] Barowns be on assent :
"we wylen fulfylle thin comaundement, we wilien hym behoten, ful vtterlye, Sauf to comen & to gon, certeinye."

"Clepe forth Breteaus," quod merlyn tho, "For this arende he Schal wel mown do." 7892

thanne clepyd thy forth Breteaus anon, and to hym the Barowns seiden thussen that thys arende he scholde do, this jlke peple to bringen hem vnto.

thanne seide merlyn to Breteaus there :
"Ek therchebisschope of dover in alle manere, that he com forth in here compenye, and ek the bisschope of londone, ful pleynlye." 7900

"Sire," quod Breteaus, "this sechal be do." he took his leve and forth gan go, and juto that place he wente anon

7877. 3e added afterwards above the line.
7891. MS. quod Barowns.
The meeting of Arthur and the barons. [CH. VII.

where as kyng artheur he fond thusson.

"Syre kyng, the Baronage aftyr 3ow doth sende,
and therchebisschope of dover with 3ou schal wende,
the bisschope of londone, and Antron also."

and from thens Breteaus to vlphyn gan go,
and seide that he moste come to the Baronye,
also faste as he myhte thanne hye.

whanne vlphyn of merlyn herde Spoken aryht,
thanne jn his herte he was ful lyht,
and ful grete joye he hadde thanne, Sykirlfe,
for he wyster wel the trowthe discovered schold be,
al the Rote and al the Endyng

Of the Birthe of Artheur the kyng. 7920

Thus Wenten they Forth Alle Jn Fere
To the barowns in the paleis there they were;
and grete joye vlphyn of merlyn made,
and ech of hem mad othyr glade.

Thanne Arthewr and the Bysschoppes also
to-ward the paleys connex they go,
and with hem Antron jn compenye,
also faste as they myhten hye.

vndirstondith that Arthewr armed was ful wel
vndir his robe with an haberiown of stel.
whanne to-fore the Baronage that he cam,
on ech partye stood there many a man
merlyne to 3even there good awdyence,
whyles that he stood jn the kynges presence.
and whanne the kyng they Syen comen, trewelye,
alle the Baronage azens hym gonne hye ;
atte reverence that Sacred he was kyng,
azens him they wenten jn metying,
and jn reverence of therchebisschope also
Ek azens hem gonne they go.

Thanne Seten they down everichon,
Sauf only therchebisschope stod alon.

"Now, Lordynges, lestene what j schal say,
and beth wel avysed alle, J 3ow pray ;

7917. MS. Sykirc.
The archbishop and Merlin speak.

and ek for goddis love and for charyte,
what j schal See, taketh kepe to me.
J 30w preye for charyte,
of schedyng of blood 3e hauen pyte,
whiche is cristene blood, as 3e wel knowe,
as wel of the hye as of the lowe.
and thinketh but on man that 3e be,
and as one here deyen Schole 3e,
& as one deyeth the Riche as the pore,
and of þe owr of here deth knoweth no more.”

thanne quod the Barowns to hym anon that tyde :
“Sire, we 30w preye a whyle to abyde,
Tyl we han spoke here with merlyn
of certein thinges of his devyn,
and whanne declared to vs hath he
a thing that to vs Js vncerteynte,
For sethen we comen jnto this lond,
of Sweche thingges cowde we neuere vndirstond.”

the Bisschope Seide: “Seres, with good wylle,
what that evere merlyne seith 30w vntylle.”

thanne sat þere therchebisschope a-down,
and merlyne gan spake to hem jn vyrown :
“Now, Lordynges that ben here present,
what j schal Seyen, take 3e good entent.
J schal 30w declare þere ful openly
hos sone Arthewr was trewely.
weteth wel alle, Sires, now jn certeyn
that vterpendragones sone he is, pleyn,
and on ygwerne he begat hym that Nyht
whiles the dewk, hire Lord, was slayn in fyht.
And on the morwen, whanne he cam owt
From that Lady, with-owten dowt,
a bone j hym axede there anon Nyht
of that he hadde begeten on hire that Nyht,
For alle the Benfetes and my Servyse
that evere j hym dyde jn ony wyse.
and he me graunted there anon
That al myn axynge scholde be don,

7958. thinges, g corrected from h.
Merlin tells of Arthur's birth

Merlin tells of Arthur's birth [CH. VII.

the sealed confirmation of the promise,
wher-offen lettres vndir his Sel
j haue to Schewen, bothe goode & let,
whiche zit kepith vlyphyn, that is here,
and hym-self there was, wytnesse to bere.”

“ Whanne that Pendragon hadde weddyd ygwerne,
To barnesche with chylde sche wax full 3erne.
And so after, hyt happed as j 3ow Seye :
As jn bedde they lyen bothe tweye,
The King Hyre often gan to Repreve,
and seyde : 'now, lady, be 3owre leve,
This chylde js neyther the dewkes ne myn,
how kozne 3e this preven be ony devyn?’
Anon thys lady abassched hyre Sore,
and euere the lengere more and more.
whanne the kyng Sawh hire scomfyture
and hire schemfulnesse, J 3ow enswe,
hym forthowht sore hyre hevynesse,
that he hadde hire put jn swich distresse.
And for so moche morneng by hyre he Say :
‘dame, of on thing j schal 3ow Say :
Sethen hit nys not myn jn maryage,
kyng may he not ben after myn age.
Therefore anon as that born hyt Js,
J 3ow cownseylle with-owten mys,
whom ferst 3e fynde atte the halle dore,
The child to ben deliuered with-owten more.'
And the goode lady hym grawntyd anon
that al his desyr scholde be don,
For that sche wolde jn non degre
that hire lord with hire wrotch scholde be.
and thus, certein, whanne hyt was bore,
To me it was delyvered at the halle dore.”

“ And whanne delyveryd hit was to me,
To Antron j wente, ful certeynle,
and this chylde there j hym betook,
and that of his wyf hyt scholde Sowk,
For deliuered sche was half zer to-fore
7994. 3e added afterwards above the line.
of sire kay, hire sone, with-owten more, 213
that jnto anothir place was put to norrye,
and Arthewr here forth sook, ful Sekerlye.
thus Sire kay Arthewris brothyr Js
be his modrys pappe, & non othyr, j-wys.
& this was kyng vter pendarouues preyere,
and so dyde sche, as j seye 3ow here,
and therto hit crystenede the same day,
and arthewr hit nempned, as j 3ow say.
Therfore j seye 3ow, Lordynges, here,
God thinketh on his Man in alle Manere,
that hym doth Servyse ower onowr,
he hym forsaketh in non Maner stowr.
More over, atte Reuereence of so worthy a man
and of the kynde that he of cam,
God wyle here zelden his gwerdon
bencheson of the seed, be good Reson.
and weteth wel now, Jn certeyn,
that god the ston hyder sente, ful pleyn,
and the swerd there-jnne, as 3e myhten se,
To proven the sothe, ho that kyng scholde be.
and al this that j have seyd 3ow here,
Jt js Ryht trewe, as j 3ow lere.
Record of vlyphyn, let hym now seye
3if that j varye jn ony manere weye,
and also of Antron, that here js,
3if that in ony thing j seye amys."

thaune axede the Barowns jn pat plase
3if hyt were trewe that seyd he hase.
they answeryd anon: "3e, certynlye; 8048
merlyne jn these wordis ne doth not lye.
and 3if 3e wylen not vs beleven here,
lo, here the lettre patentis al jn fere
that kyng Pendragon betook to merlyne
vndyr his owne Seal wel and fyne."
these lettres they token anon jn hye
to therchebisschope to Reden by & bye;
and he hem radde, as hyt gan falle,
on he on there toforn hem alle.
And evene as merlyne told hadde before,
The barons still reject him. [CH. VII.

214

"Openly to the Baronage He declared Hyt thore. and whanne the comune peple herde al this, and cursede alle tho that azens hym were Jn ony dege here armes to here.

And whanne the Barowns vndirstoden al this, that the peple so with hym held, j-wys, and seyden that hit was be goddis chaunce that his man he wolde so here avauance, thazne bethowhtes hem the Baronye To speken of here kyng more velonye, that for me Rehersed schal not ben here. but they seyden that a bastard yn non manere kyng of that Lond ne scholde neuere be, xethyr that Rem governe yn non dege. Therchebysschope answeryd hem ful sone: "sethen that god this eleeceyonz hath done, he wyl hym leten for non maner of thing, but hym Susteyne as a trewe kyng, bothe jn his werris and his fyht, he wyl hym susteynen as his owne knyht."

Now Arthur's adherents depart to his court, and the comown peple, Sekerlye, herden the vntrowthe of the Baronage, how Fers they weren and how owtrage, To-cyderys they helden hem everychon, and toward Arthewrs court gone they gon. and alle the Baronage departyd away, Ful wroth and angry, the Same day, and seyden: "now every man hym defende that with Arthewr halt jnto the ende. For oure kyng schal he xeure be, we hym defye and his progene, and al the helpe that he may haue, be hym we not sette, so god vs save." Thanne to ostage wente they anon and hem dyde armen there everichon.

And Arthewr jnto pe mayster towr wente
with mochel peple with hym, veramente, & there hem armeden in that plase, 
ëk al the peple that with hym wase.

So whanne that alle assembled they were,
Sevëne thowsend harneyssed weren they there;
but of knyhtes hadde he but fewe,
Thre hundred and Fyfty in that Rewe,
that Sworen his helpe Forto be,
Tyl deth hem departed, ful Sykerle.

So whanne the kyng and his meyne
weren alle j-armed, Ful Sykerle,
they comen owt Anon of the towr,
here Bodyes to kepen From dolowr.
and the Baronage, as j haue told,
hom to here ostage wenten manyfold,
and harneyssed here men on hors to Ryde,
with the kyng to meten in that Tyde.
So eche man assembled to his Banere
of fourse thosend knyhtes that weren there,
with Seriauntes and arblasterys
and gret foysown of Sqwyers that weren ful fers.
whanne that alle assemblyd they were,
thanx axed of hem the Baronage there
3yf that the paleys thei wolden assaylle.
Somme seiden 3e, with-owten faylle,
and some seyden, to the Baylle they wolden go
and that besegen with-owte ony mo—
“that So we Scholen afferen hem with-june,
that in non weye they Scholen owt wyne.”
So that Whyles they Weren Jn this Talkynge,
Towardes hem cam merlyne faste hyenge,
and seyde: "Lordlynges, what wyle 3e do?
thikken 3e ægens 3owre kyng to go?
yht schal be to 30w more velenye
and gret hyndryng and los, ful Sekyriye,
and swich veniaunce on 30w schal falle,
that Fowlyche scholen 3e ben schamed alle,
Merlin speaks with Arthur.  

and of 3owre londis disheryted to be,  
For wrong to hym 3e thinken, sykerle.  
and of the eleecion that god hath sent  
3e don gret wrong, Sires, verament.”

“behold,” quod [the] Barouns amonges hem there,  
“what this enhawntour telleth vs here!”

thussone on hym they gonne to lye,  
eche of hem to othir, ful Sekerlye.

And whanne merlyne Sawh they tooken on so,

Toward kyng Arthrewr faste gan he go,

and sayde: “sire, hauwe thou non drede,
For aegns thyn enemies wel schalt pou spede,
And aegns hem as mochel helpe schalt pou hauve
as alle they conne cryen other crave.”

So whanne hit woixen was to eve,

kyng Arthrewr took merlyn be the sleve.

Ek therchebisschope, and Antron also,

Sire kay & sire Vlyphyn to-gederis gonne go,

and Sire Bretel with hem in compenye,

tese vij in cownsayl to-gederis gonne hye.

the kyng clepyd merlyne to hym tho,

So that alle to-gederys gonne they go.

The king says to Merlin:

“Dere frend merlyne,” thanne quod the kyng,

“lesteneth now to my talkyng.

I haue herd told, ful certeinle,
thath with my Fadyr thou were preve.

So wolde j 3ow preyen, with-owten faylle,

That 3e wolde ben of wyn cownsaylle
and cownsayllen me of this thing among,

3if that this weyne wylen me ony wrong.

wherfore j wolde 3ow hertelyche preye
my cownsayl to be & the sothe me seye
lyk as to my Fadyr, kyng vterpendragon,
3e 30ven hym cownsayl in many areson.

And wete 3e wel, Sire, ju ful certeyn,

that j wyl neure don 3ow ageyn,
ne thyng that schal 3ow mysplése owher,

8139. MS. quod Barouns.  8142. hem, e corrected from y.
8156. MS. Sothat
as fer forth as lasteth Jn my power, 8172
and sethen 3e holpen me ju myn 3ong age, 8176
Sosteyne me now azens this Baronage
and rk my lond here to Susteyne.
For thorwh goddis helpe and 3ow tweyne, 8180
thorwh 3owre help and my fadyr Antron, 8184
j hope myn enemyses to overeomen echon.
therefore, God, thorwh thyn grete myht
So Save my peple and me aryht!”
8188

“Syre,” quod merlyn, “drede 3ow non thing
of non of hem, with-owten lesyng.
For assone as 3e delinuered be
of these baronage, that 3e scholen se,
whiche that scholen comen 3ow to assaylle,
Thanne aftyrward werk be my cownsaylle,
and alwey aftyr as j schal 3ow lere,
doth be my cownseylle every-where.
8192
the knyhtes that were of the round table,
That 3owre fadyr held bothe fern & stable,
Jn-to Here contre J-passed they be
For the grete vntrouthe and dysloyalte
that they Syen ju this Rem with-june,
Eche knyht to his owne contre gan he wynne.
But there is a Rewm here bysyde
of whiche Leodegan Js kyng this tyde;
the Rewm of Tarmelyde j-clepyd hit js,
of wheche Rewm the kyng an old man is, j-wys;
And his wyf ded Js ek therto,
and children hath he lyveng no mo
But a dowhter, that schal ben his eyr,
to whom al his lond schal repeyr
after his deth, the sothe to Say.
but gret werre he hath 3it be his day
azens the kyng Ryown of Jeawnteʒ
and of wildernesse, that fewe men hawnteʒ.
And the cause j schal tellen 3ow why:
For so many merveylles pe re ben seyn, trewely,
8177. \(r'\) help added afterwards, \(r'\) on, helpe above the line.
8180. MS. pe'ple.
bothe be day and ek be Nyht,
that men mown feren of that Syht.”

“This kyng Ryowns that j of telle,
a myhty man he js and Felle,
and wochel peple with hym hath he,
that myhty ben & ful of crewelte.
and conqweryd he hath be his myht
twenty corowned kynges ju fyht,
and alle here Berdes kut of hath he
Jn gret dispyt, as 3e Scholen Se,
and closed they ben, with-owten lette,
and eche day to-forn hym at his mete
a knyht hem halt, as 3e Scholen here,
as for gret dispyt, with-owten dwere.
And 3it kyng Ryowns swereth, with-owten faylle,
neure to leven werre nethir Bataylle,
Tyl that thrytty kynges conqweryd hath he.
and this kyng vpon leodegan werreth, Sykerle.
Now leodegan marcheth vpon the,
and 3yf that his rem dystroyed be,
thy newm schalt thow lesen, with-owten faylle,
but 3if thou werke be hym cow[n]saylle.
and so hadde he his newm, ful Sykyrle,
xere knyhtes of pe Rownde table hadde j-be.
wherfore, and thou wylt don aftyr me,
with hym a while schalt thou be,
and his dowhter to wyve, with-owten say,
and al his rem aftyr hys day.
also therto sche is bothe 3ong and fayr,
and of alle his goodis schal ben his ayr,
therto the wyseyt j-cownted that may be.
and of thin owne newm nothing drede the,
For the Barowns that aȝens the werre,
So moche scholen they han to done from ferre,
that lytel while scholen they abyden there,
So mochil here bodyes scholen ben put in ferre.

8230. MS. cowfaylle.
8244. The line was omitted and then written up the right margin, preceded by the crossed-out line: that nethir to have myde on mon ne fierre.
but Sore occupyed Scholen they be hemself to defende, ful Sykyrle.
and 3owre strengthes jn warde scholen 3e pytte
Jn dyvers hondys to kepen hem qwyte,
3owre cytes and 3owre castelys bothe
with arblasteris and seriwnts, forsothe.
and ek therchebisschope schal therto
acursen hem that 3ow wrong wyl do,
and hym-Self schal tho
T0 alle the clergye thus schal hyt go
thorwh the rem to ben declared So.
and 3e scholen sen, in tyne comenge
what schal behappen of al this thinge.
thorwh the helpe that j schal 3ow do,
they scholen ben affrayed, er they go.
and weteth wel, Sire, jn certeyn,
That to 3ow evere J schal ben ful beyn.
and whanne ony xede that 3e haue,
j schal comen to 3ow, er that 3e me crave.
And loke, anon whanne j to 3ow crye,
that 3e opene 3owre 3ates ful redylye,
and lete hem entre there everychon,
and thanne that amonges hem 3e ben anon.
thanne So Sore abassched Scholen they be,
so pat Some scholen Sone there fle,
that discomfyt scholen they ben alle ;
Swych aventure on hem þere schal falle.”

Thanne departyd they there fulson,
and vpon þe walles þe bisschope went anon.
and there kyng Arthewr apparylyde his men,
an merlyne a baner to hym made then,
werby he hadde gret Sygnifyaunce,
and to his adversaryes ful gret dowtance.
vpon a lawyne that Baner was pyht
with an oryble dragown in here Syht,

8260. affrayed, əl squeezed in afterwards.
8270. The line was omitted and then written down the right margin.
The barons outside the walls.

[CH. VII.

that Flawn & Fyr there owt he caste, where-offen the barouns agrysen ful faste; and thereto he hadde a ful long taylle, where-offen they mevveyled, with-owten faylle. Thanne kyng Arthewr took this Baner, and Syre Kay, his Styward, betook hit ther in this manere, as j sow Say: that whyles he in this world lyven may, his chief Banorer forto be, Whiles he may lyven in prosperyte. Thus arrayed weren they with-june, and they with-owten to Fyhten wolden not blynne, but there they pyhten here pavylyouns, with Baners displayed and comfanouns, and whanne therchebysschope beheld al this, anon to hem he clepede, j-wys, and bad hem comen here myhtes to preve, 3yf the towr they myhte wymen er Eve. they answeryd æzen, with-owten faylle: “Non men but we hyt scholen assaylle.”

Thanne therchebisschope nyht there anon hem cursede alle there everychon that æzens kyng Arthewr dyden ony thyng, his newm to damage other hyndryng. Thussone the Baronage answerwyd ageyn: “of alle thy cursyng we setten not, pleyn, but hym chasen Scholen we ful ytterly, owt of this Lond to dryven hym in hy. and 3if we mown taken hym be ony weye, he schal not asckapen that he Schal deye.” Anon whanne merlyne herde here bobounce, Fulsone he wrowht hem gret myschauance: on hem he caste his enchawntemen, vpon Tentes and pavylyouns, with-owten defens, and alle vpon a tyr there hem Sette, That non of hem ne myhten hyt lette. So thens they fledden everychon,

8284. they, t inserted above the line.
that none ne wyste of hem whedyr to gon.
Thanne kam merlyne to the kyng anon,
and Seyde: "Syre, now is tyme 3e gon;
openeth 3owre 3ates and pat Ryht Faste,
and vppon 3owre enemies that 3e haste."
Anon the 3ates faste opened they were,
and every man owt prekedeth there,
So that to here enemies faste gonne they ryde
with Baneiris displayed fulsore that tyde,
where-offen the Barowns abassched were,
whanne they Syen hem aprochen so xere;
For they Wenden, Ful Certeynle,
that swich a peple in the Towr hadde not be.
kyng Arthewr on hem rod with scheld & spere,
and moche noysawnce dyde hem there,
For astoned they weren of the fer,
that but lytel power ne hadden they ther;
hem to defende they ne hadde non myht,
So that moche peple they lotsten in fyht.
There 3onge kyng Arthewr kydde his prowsesse,
and putte his enemies to gret distresse:
hors and men ful faste he Slowh,
and alle the Barowns thens they flowh
Jnto anothyr prevy partye.
and there they Seyden tho, pleinlye,
a schame hyt were to hem echon,
and he so lyhtly schold from hem gon.
thanne spak kyng Newtris of Garlot there:
"alle this were ful Fenysched were,
3if that Arthwur here now were ded;
j to 3ow kan seyn non better red."
"goth forth," thanne quod the nemmanat tho,
"that this thing were thanne J-do.
and 3if that ony mestere that 3e haue,
we scholden 3ow helpe that 3e ben Save."
Thanne wente kyng Newtris forth, ful pleyn,
as a 3ong knyht and joly, jn certeyn,
and with hym a thryftfy compeny
of Bacherelis bolde and chevalrye.

and ryght a gret spere kyng Newtres bar,

and with kyng Arthewr he mette ryght thar.

whanne that kyng Artheur hym say comeenge,

\[8356\]

with a gret lawnce, the hed of stel,

wherwith he besteryd hym ryht wel.

For they that him Syen come prekynge,

they merveyllede that evere a man so synge

and so sore to-gederis come they ryde,

that here hors Fowndrede jn that tyde.

kyng Newtris Arthewr so sore mette,

that his spere to-brak, so sore he smette;

and kyng Arthewr hym smot ageyn,

thorwh Scheld & arm hit wente, ful pleyn,

\[8360\]

ek thorwh the Scholdere there he hym bar,

and down of his hors threw hym ryht thar,

his hed to the grownde, his helys on hye,

that al the Erthe denede, ful Sekyrye.

but whanne kyng loth of orkanye this beheld,

that his cosyn gernayn lay jn the feeld,

his hors with his Spores he took anon,

and toward kyng Arthewr rood ful Son

\[8364\]

his half-brotheir to avengen there

(For two sostren hadden they wedded, as j 3ow lere).

and whanne kyng loth he say comeen so,

kyng Arthewr azens hym gan to go,

as ther of hym nothing he ne rowhte,

but fullaste on hym kyng Arthewr sowhte,

\[8368\]

Tyl that to-gederis ful sone they mette,

and ful grete strokes to-gederis they sette.

and so sore they cowntred there,

that bothe here speris to-borsten were,

\[8372\]

thanne sone here swerdis comen they vnbrase,
and so sore strokis toc-cederis they smette, 
that kyng loth was feld, with-owten lette. 8392

Thanne Began thore A passyng Scry 
on bothen partyes, ful Sekerly. 8396
and a ful gret stowr began thare thanne, 
the kynges to Socowren, of eche manne; 
bothe of knyht and ek of kyng 
there was wondyr gret distorbelyng. 
and kyng Arthewris meyne cam also 
ym forto Socowren what they myghten do. 
thanne began thare a ful gret stowr 
on bothe partyes with gret langowr. 
But certein, al this jlke stownde 
bothe kynges lyen atte crownde. 
Whanne kyng Arthewr thus anoyed was, 8400
his swerd he drowh owt in that plas, 
that in the drawyng hit zaf a clerte, 8404
that alle the peple there myhte hyt se; 
as thowli xx torches hadden ben lyht, 
So that there hit semede to alle here Syht; 
ther to the same swerd, hos wyle hyt look, 
That kyng Arthewr owt of the ston ferst he took. 8412
and abowten the S werd wreten was ful wel 
Escalabort, þe wheche was graven in steel. 
a name of ðebrew hit was, j-wys, 
that in frensch Trawnchefyst j-clepyd Js, 8416
that is englesch Foro telle 
as Trenchauwt, and scharpe, & cuttyng ful snelle. 
and that, forsothe, ful trewe hyt Js, 
as that here-aftyr 3e scholez heren, j-wys. 
whanne that kyng Arthewr reconered was, 
and his swerd drawen in that plas, 
jnto the grettest pres he gan to go, 
There as most pres thane say he tho, 
and thussonc there wyth a knyht he mette, 
and swich a boffet there thane hym sette, 
the arson of his hrs he smot atwo,

8410. Abbreviation mark in darker ink.
The kings' joint attack on Arthur.

224

and the knyht to dethe he wounedyd tho,
that bothe hors and man they fyllen to grownde;
and ful gret slawhtre he mad that stownde,
So that his strok dorste non man abyde,
So Ferd of hym they weren that tyde.

Whanne the Seuen kynges Syen this damage,
that Arthwr wroght hem so moche owtrage,
thanne ful Sorewful jn herte they were,
and alle to cownsycyl they drowen hem there.

"Let vs assemblen on hym everychon
and down to the erthe bringen hym anon."
So that with here sperys, that weren so stronge,
Towardys hym faste gone they fonge,
also faste as they myhte ryde,
hym down to beren jn that Tyde,
and alle they grated on hym at onys,
him to han Slayn for the Nouys;
but kyng Arthwr was armed so wel,
bothe jn erne and jk jn steel;
but down they boren hym to the grownde.

that say vlyphyn, Antron, & kay, & Breteaus pat stownde,
and so dyde more alle here lynage,
To Arthwr thei wenten with gret corage,
and whanne the vij kynges they Syen this,
ajens this weyne they wenten j-wys.

and pere Syre kay with kyng angwys mette,
and thorwh the lefte Scholdere ful sore him smette,
more over down to the erthe him Bar,
thanne as for ded he lefte hym thar.

and antron Karados so smot thanne,
that he to-brosed hym bothe body & paune,
and jn ded sowone lefte hym pat tyde,
So that he ne myhte nethyr gon ne ryde.

And Vlyphyn Kyng Newtres mette Anon,
that hors and man to-gedervys gone gon.
and Syre Breteaus & kyng Ydieres
theyre swordis they broken, they weren so fers,

8428. thei, i squeezed in afterwards.
8459. lefte twice, the latter crossed out.
CH. VII. | Arthur is relieved. The common people join him. 225

Eche on othyr in that place,
So strong betwixen hem the skyrnesch wase,
and al this whyle the Barownes in fere
at the erthe with Artheur, as he lay there,
and so on the helm there hym they bete,
hym there to maken his lyf to lete,
that so sore astoned kyng Artheur was,
he wende haue deyd jm that plac.
and whanne Syre Kay al this beheld,
his Swerd he drowgh owt jm that feld,
and thedyr as that kyng Artheur lay,
as faste he hyeth as he kan open may.
and with kyng Loth there he mette,
and swich a strok he on hym Sette,
that bothe hors and man there wente to grownde,
So sore he hym smot that ylke stownde.
thanne be-gau there a fulstrong melle
bothen partyes to Socowre, ful sykirle,
and gret manlawhtre, with-owten pyte,
of men & hors there myhten they se.
but so faste thei besyed hem, pet meyne there,
Tyl that kyng Artheur azen j-horsed were.
but gret peyne the[y] hadden ther to
and gret los of peple also.
whanne that pe comunes Syen Artheur so fyhte,
Fulfaste they cryden anon pere ryhte,
So that the cry there ros al abowte,
and to Artheur they comen, with-owten dowte,
and seyden to Artheur there as blyve:
"we scholen the helpen, whyles we han lyve;
For lyven and deyen we scholen with the here
and thin ryht to Sosteyne al jm fere."
thanne this comune peple anon
vpon the vj kynges gone to gon,
and pere was bataille wondyr strong,
but non rawnsom wolden they fong,

8467. *in fere* added afterwards.
8485. *thei, i* squeezed in afterwards.
8487. MS. *the.*
8493. MS. *a/blyve.*
MERRIN.—11.
The kings are put to flight.

but lyf for lyf and hed for hed,
thus pleyden bothe partyes jn that sted.

King Arthur

Thanne kyng Arthwyr so ful of Yre
owt sprang on horsbak as spark of fyre
To-forn alle his othyr meyne,
and with kyng Ydyers some mette he.
and vp his swerd he lefte on hy
him to han smeten ful grevously,
but of his purpos he fayllede tho,
and kyng Ydiers hors nekke he smot atwo,
that down they fyllen bothe to grownde,
bothe hors and man in that stownde.

8504

8508

8512

8516

8520

8524

8528

8532

8536

Thanne returned kyng Ydiers meyne
hym forto Socowre, as hit myhte be.
thanne strengere fhit was jn that plas,
than of alle daye to-forn there was,
and more harm & more occisiwn
there was don that tyme jn vyrown.

for kyng Arthwyr dyde moche harm jn that pres
bothe of hors and men, and wolde not Ses,
with Trenchefust, his Swerd so good,
that bathed was al in mennes blood ;
al his harneys and his armure
with mennes brayn was soyled, j the ensure.
So that Ydiers and his meyne
as discomfyt fledden, Sykirle.
So that ful Longe Lasted this chas
after these vj kynges jn that plas.
and of al the good that they thedyr browhte,
the valew of twy pens awyey boren they nowhte,
that alto-gederis j-lost was there,
what thorwh bataylle and thorwh Fyre,
which that merlyne vppon hem wrowhte ;
Sauf Gold oper Sylver Saved was pere nowhte.

Whanne kyng Arthwyr hem hadde conqueryd,
these Syxe kynges, as 3e haven herd,
Be the counseyl of merlyne,
To cardewyl jn wales he turned ageyn,
and Sente faste abowtes jn that contre
afyry Sowdyowrs ful gret plente.
Bothe Robes and fees he 3af hem there,
To alle the Sowdeowrs that with him were,
bothe to powre, sqwyers, and to knyht,
So that they Sworen be cod almyht,
with hym they wolden both lyven and deye ;
thus they hym enswred be here feye.
whanne Kyng Arthewr hadde thus j-sped,
& the hertes of pe peple geten jn that sted,
and gret love abowtes jn that contre
of alle the peple jn here degre,
and afyry he suffedde his cytes echon,
his castelis, his caresouns be on & be on.
and sethen to logres he wente, j vndirstond,
that now is Clepyd Londone jn Engelond.
and there his parlement began he thanne ;
To hym there Semblyd many a manne.
This cowrt there began, with-owten delay,
In Septembre vppon owre ladyes day.
atte that cowrt, with-owten dowte,
Many knyhtes he made, both stronge & stowte.
and to hem he 3af bothen grete rentes & fe,
and to hym dyden they homage & fewte.
To every man he 3af swich gwerdon there,
So that here degre wel Sosteyned were.
and thus he cat hym love plente
of knyht, Sqwyer, and commenalte,
So that they hym enswrede here trowthe & feye,
with hym to lyven and ek to deye.
and sethen they dyden him Socour, Sekyrlye,
as afyry 3e scholen heren jn this storye.

Aftyr that kyng Arthewr thus hadde j-do,
and j-mad thre hundred knyhtes & mo,
and al his strengths j-stuffed ful wel,

8565. plente, le blurred. 8567. trowthe, o daubed.
Merlin tells Arthur his story.

Merlin withdraws to have a consultation with Arthur and Ulfh.

He tells of Holy Blaisy, who saved Merlin's mother (Ch. I).

[leaf 120 d] of king Fortager and his tower (Ch. II).

of Merlin's acquaintance with Uterpendragon (Ch. III).

of the engendering of Arthur (Ch. IV).

and the marriage of his parents (Ch. V).

Further he tells of Arthur's sisters and half-sisters.

bothen cytees, townes, and castel (aftyr merlynes counseil pis wrouhte he, and ek moche more, ful certeinele), and whanne he hadde al this j-do, kying Arthour on syde merlyne took tho, and so to counseylle to-gederis they wente, and Vilphyn with hem they token presente. "Syre kynge, a thing j moste 3ow telle (that 3e and Vilphyn herkenen my spelle!): There js a good man jn on forest, that jn wildynsesse lyveth as a best, whiche that Js jn northhumberlond, and an holy man he is, 3e vndirstond; and to me he is bothe leef and dere, For my modyr he savede and me jn fere." thanne began he to tellyen, verament, how that his modyr scholde han be bren't For A Blame and For A cryme that on hire was put be old tyme, 8592 and how Fortager hym dyde seken also, ek how his modyr veyled a nowne was tho, and how the towr lasteth Jnto this day, and stonden hit schal for 3ever and ay, ek of the dragowns the Signifiance, al this hem tolde, with-owten varyaunce.

Thanne tolde he, aftyr the deth of Fortager how with Vterpendragon he qveynted ther; 8600 and of the grete bataylle he tolde also That vppon Pendragon was j-do; and how be the dewchesse he made hym lye jn the castel of Tyndagel, Sekyrlye— "Jn wheche place engendrid 3e were"; and how Vilphyn purposyd the maryage there— "be-twene 3owre Fadyr and 3owre modyr, the queene"; alle these he tolde hem be-dene; 8608 and how fyve dowhtre he hadde sche bore (what maruyed & ded they weren to-fore),
CH. VIII.]  **Arthur to be supported by relatives,** 229

and twyane be the dewk hadde sche;
of wheche on weddyd king loth, Sykerle;
kyng newtres anothyr hadde to wyve,
lyk as aftyr 3e scholen heren as blyve;
and the thrydde wedded kyng Vryens;
and pe fourthe wedded kyng Brydens—
“the wheche that ded now Js he,
Fadyr he was to kyng Gwyseans, Serteinle,
that js now kyng of Scotlond,
as j do 3ow to vndyrstond;
and the fyfthe, at londone hyt is,
and there to Scole it is set, jwys,
and moche clergye forsoth hit can,
as of pe age doth ony man.”

“and wete thou wel, kyng Loth hath here
Fyve Sones be his wyf so dere,
of whiche on js thy n ful blod, Sykerle,
that thou engendredyst in londone cyte;
and Semly 3onge me they ben echon,
of wheche that Gaweyn hyhte pe ton.
and he schal be the trewest knyht,
and his Lord loven with strengthe & myht,
Therto pe worthyest that owher may be,
and therto gentelest, Sire, certeinle.
and 3ow schal he love over al thing,
and don 3ow worschepe as to his kyng.
For wete wel pe he schal be pe same man,
be whom thy lond geten thou kan.
and thy weyne to hym mek Scholen be
and him don worschepe Jn alle degre.
king Newtris, anoter brothyr hath he,
that galatyns hyhte, ful Sykerle.
kyng vriens anothir hath also,
that yweyn is clepyd, with-owten mo,
that the schal Susteyne with body & herte,
per nis non prowesse schal hym asterte.

8612 of whom one
is married to
king Loth,
one to king
Newtris,
and one to
king Uriens;
the fourth
is a widow,

8620 and the fifth
is at school
in London.

8624 “King Loth
has five sons;
one of them,
Gawein, shall
be the truest
knight

8632 and a great
help to thee.

8640 King Newtris
has a brother,
and king
Uriens
likewise a
brother,
Iwein.

8611. A second and crossed out before be.
8614. The line was omitted and then written down the right margin.
8627. blod added above the line.
They shall both be dubbed by thee, and bring lots of people with them.

and were pou wel, pat dubbed scholen they not be,
Tyl pou hem armes 3yve, ful Sykyrle.
and they scholen bringen the gret compeny,
For love of here kyne, certeynlye,
Of Barowns sonses & oper mo;
moche peple with hem cometh the vnto
The Forto Don Alle maner of Serveysce, whyles that they lyven as jn here wyse." 8648

Further, in Little Britaynde, there live two kings,
with children that shall be brave men;
These twoyne kynges, children they han,
that stalworte scholen ben and myhte men.
and so worthy knyhtes they scholen be,
theyre pere schal ben jn non contre.
The eldest of the twoyne kynges of fame, kyng Ban of Baynoc js his Name.
the tother kyng, of gawnes Sire Boors hyhte,
a worthy werroure and moche of myhte.
but a felonus Neyghebour hath that kyng,
that hym doth gret Travaylle & hyndryng,
and alle he hit doth for enuye,
For he ne may hem not justefye.
and for they ben so trewe and so stedfast,
after hem j wolde thou wost senden jn hast,
and sende hem to seyne, over alle thyng
that thow wost ben of here aqwyntynge,
and with the to ben at al halwen feste.
thanne to the moste comeyn bothe lest and meste,
To thy parlamente, and the obeye.
Some comeyn for good, as j the seye,
and some for evel jn othyr dege,
buthese twoyne kynges, as j telle the,
they comeyn with hertys deboneyrre,
here to thy court Forto Repeyrre.
8660 8664 8668 8672 8676 8680 8684

8650. Abbreviation mark in darker ink.
For they ben ful good men and trewe, bettyr of condissions fyndest pou but fewe, and perfore agens hem j wyle thou go, and thy Servyse to hem offren also. and mochel thank they scholen konnen the, and to pe don hommage and fewte, thanne whanne al this js j-do, and thy cowr they welen gon fro, anon thow hem clepe to thy cowsaylle; and sey to hem, with-owten Faylle, that jnto Tarmelyde thou wylt go, There to ben avenged of thy fo, Preyeng hem to gon with the (For ryht goode men Syker they be), there to abyden with kyng Leodogan, and so preye pou as wel as pou kan; For goode knyhtes ben they bothe, and here lond of the hath nester, forsothe. For thin Enemyes agens the the lond wilen defende, but they scholen not Therto louge attende, Nethyr Sosteynen non whyle agens the, thorwgh helpe of these tweyne kynges, sykerle, that jn thy compenye scholen abyde." "3yt to 3ow mor J seye this tyde: a costom J have, j Sey 3ow pleylye, that to the forest j moste me hye be enchesoun of my nature, thyder j moste, j jow ensyre, bencheson of hym that me dyde gete: this thing at this tyme wyl j not lete, and for anothyr cause also to the wyld forest wyl j go: with holy Blase to speken there, For An Holyere man Knowe J Nowhere, and thou schalt neure have xede of me, but Sone that J schal ben with the,

8688. Receive them with honour, 8692. make them your counsellors, 8696. and ask them to go with thee to Tarmelid, 8700. They will want thy help, 8704. and thou shalt have theirs. 8708. I must go to the forest partly on account of my nature, 8712. partly to speak with Blasy.

8702. hath, the second h squeezed in afterwards. 8703. MS. the pe the, with be crossed out. 8706. helpe added in the left margin. 8711. MS. enhenoë.
Arthur's promise to Merlin. Festivities. [CH. VIII.

the to cowneyllen what that j may.
but of on thing j schal 3ow say:
often-tymes schalt thow me se
jn other semblance, ful sykerle,
thenne pou sixt me to-forn pe now here,
often-tymes toforn pe schal j apere;
For j kepte not alle xen knewe
whazme j with the spak, but 3if it were fewe.
more over j wylle that thou swore to me,
that be the xeuere discured j be
of non thing that j haue told the,
but that thou kepe hit evere preve.
and 3if thou do, j schal the Seye:
hyt schal the Torne to angyr and treye."
and the kyng hym swoor there anon ryht,
he scholde xevere discume hym to non wyht,
xene xeuere schold don thing a3ens his wylle;
thus the kyng Seyde hym vntylle.
and merlyne ensward hym ageyn
that he wolde deserven hyt, certeyn.

Thus the covenamont was fenysched there,
be-twene the kyng and merlyn jn fere.
gret joye maden they jn that cyte
of here kyng so long jn his degre,
that so worthy a man of armes he was,
and thereto so hardy jn eche a plas.
so that for joye of that solemnite
the worthy Burgneys of that cyte
a qwyntyn they reyrd there besyde
jn a fayr medewe that jlke tyde,
the 3onge knyltes to bowrleyen there
with scheldes hangeng abowten here swere.
this nevel lasted Fully viij dayes
with grote feste, as this storye sayes.
and whanne the feste was al j-do,
To londone ward the kyng gan go,
there to abyden his parlement,

8732. MS. EVerE with an CF-mark above.
Ulfin and Bretel go to Little Britain.

at halwe mass e to ben holden present, that homage and fewte scholden don.

So pat som partye come at his sonde, and som partye hit dyde with-stonde.
thanne sente the kyng to hem ageyn that they scholden hit amenden, certeyn, ouer ellis he wolde hym-self ful blyve,  

Thus sent kyng [Arthwyr] Forth Ryht anon, and bad Sire vilphyn & sire bretel gon

To kyng Ban of Baynok ful blyve and sethen to kyng Boors, his brother be wyve; and evere they wylen his love crave owther his Fresnechepe Forto have,

That to hym they comen jnto grete breteygne, at al halwen masse feste, with-owten leyne.

Thanne wenten forth these twyne knyhtes these two kynges to seken owt-ryhtes.

these kynges emporyssched weren in vyrown  

thus passeden the knyhtes ouer the se,  

Tyl jnto lytel breteygne they comen, certeinle; and thorwh a place of desert they wente, That destroyed and brend was, veramente.

Thanne comen they to Anothir cyte, that boorges in berry is clepyd, Sekyrle, which that kyng clawdas of desert hyt kalanged openly and apert.

this kyng clawdas of which j 30w telle, anothyr castel kalanged ful snelle, which that kyng ban hadde there sette with-jnnen his loud, with-owten lette.

kyng clawdas can evere hym withseye, and seyde the Lond was his, in feye, where-vpon the castel stood; he wolde hyt haven for Evel oyer good.

Arthur sends Ulfin and Bretel to call king Ban

and king Boors

to the same parliament.

The two knyhtes cross over to Little Britain.

On their way [leaf 121 c] to Bourges in Berry, a city claimed by kyng Claudas, they find the country laid waste. This is what had happened:

king Ban had built a castle; his neighbour, king Claudas, disputed his right

8764. Some refuse to come; they are warned by the king.

8760. and issues a summons to another parliament.
and kyng Ban than answeryd ageyn, and seyde hit was neuer his, in certeyn. 8796

So that thorwh this, grete werre began; but kyng Ban wolde leve hit for non man, that the castel he dede vpe make, owthe for drede owther for wreke. 8800

thus began gret hate, werre, & envye, betwixen tho two kynges, Sekyrlye. This werre al here lyve dyde haste. 8804

Thus Claudas invade the country, and hym defyede in many a d[e]gre, and in that Lond dyde grete adversyte 
Jn Townes that vnwallfed were; 8808

Sone on fyre he sette hem there, of wheche he took many grete pelages; the peple he Slowh and dyde Owtrages, For he was with-owten pyte. 8812

but as towching to the castel, Sykyrle, that kyng ban hadde areryd there, he ne hadde non myht to don hyt non dere. This castel kyng ban hadde Stuffed wel With Seriamates and arblasteris everydel. 8816

and pere-jmne hadde he put an old capteyn, hos name was graeyen, with-owten leyn. and on of Bannes sones with graeyen was, that Bayynyn was clepyd jn that plas. 8820

this Baynyyns was sethen of gret worthynesse, a worthy knyht, and of gret prowesse; more thane at this tyme pe Storye doth [not] spelle. but now of kyng ban j schal zow telle, 8824

that ful wroth & ful angry was For the harm he hadde jn many a plas, and whanne he knew the certeynte, To-gyderis he gaderyd his myne 8828

agens kyng clawdas forto fyhte, for alle passages he knew ful nyhte.

8805. MS. dyre, g being tampered with, as if a correction had been intended. 8823. MS. doth spelle; p squeezed in. 8829. Claudas, la blurred.
Whanne these tweyne ostes scholde fallen mete, 8832 gave battle. 8836 killed lots of people.
To-gederis to Fyghten they wolden not lette. 8840 and put king Claudas to flight.
So that there was ful gret mortalyte on bothe partyes thanne, certeynle.
and so moche peple Slowh this kyng ban, 8844 king Boors invaded the enemy's own land.
and dissemde the membres of many a man, 8848 destroyed it so thoroughly [leaf 121 d]
that a man myhte han seyn jn the feld hepes as of Swyn oper of schepe lyn ded. 8852 that there was not a house left within twenty miles,
So that Fawht kyng Ban & his meyne, 8856 and crushed king Claudas entirely.
That kyng Claudas fledde & his compyeune, 8860 Thus king Arthur's messengers find the land desolate.
and loste al his harneys and his Pelage, 8864
that he to-fortymes took be owtrage, 8868 They ride on to Trebes.
and the presoners rescued weren everychon. 8872 MS. fyhteg. 8843. and, d through correction.
on anothir partye entryd kyng boors anon, 8876
that half-Brothyr was to kyng Ban, 8880
juto kyng Claudas Lond entrede he than, 8884
and þere brende and dyde distrocciown 8888
Abowten Al His Lond Jn Vyrown
Jnto the cyte of desert; 8892
thedyr he brend ful sone and apert, 8896
and that lond distroyede al abowte, 8898
that nowher for hym now man myhte rowte. 8900
So gret distroccioun there he dede, 8904
that jn twenty myle of lengthe & brede 8908
No man jn that Lond loggen myhte, 8912
To liggen drye he day ne be xylte, 8916
but þif vndir roche oper vndir erthe hit were, 8920
cowde no man drye loggen hym there.
So was kyng Claudas emporysched there tho, 8924
that he ne wyste what he myhte do. 8928
So on the kynges dorste he non more werre make, 8932
lest hit scholde hym torne to Sorwen and wrake, 8936
thus fownden they this lond distroyed & brent, 8940
they that on kyng Arthwris message went, 8944
and merveyllde mochel of this thing 8948
as jn the contre they paste rydyng.
So ryden they forth, with-owten les, 8952
Tyl they comen to þe castel of Trebes,
The messengers come to the castle of Trebes. [CH. VIII.

That kynge Ban there dyde aree,
From his enemies to defenden him every-where.

They there find Ban's fair young queen, Kleine,
whose sister is married to king Boors,
ask for the king, learn that he is with his brother,
and depart again.

They now have to pass through a country infested by robbers,
whom the two kings certainly try to put down.

Before long, they meet seven of king Claudas' knights.

Whanne these knyhtes from Trebes were gon,
Vlphyn and Bretel to-gederys alon,
and er fyve xyles they hadden past,
vij knyhtes there they Syen in hast,
that were of kynge clawlas meyne,
that theke pas they kepten, Sykerle.

8869. Abbreviation mark in darker ink. 8888. by, y corrected from e.
and weren repayed owt of desert tho, there what to geten that they myghten also, and whanne the Sevene knyhtes pat per were Syen Vlyphyn and bretel come rydyng there, "behold," quod the vij knyhtes thanne, "Se on what hors pat comen these menne; and but we letten hem the weye, we ben but cowardes, be my feye: For they ben not of this contre, Nethyr Here Armes We Knowen not, sekyrle." "Sertes," quod on to another thanne, "they semen bothe welfareng menne, bothe on horsbak and tk on foote, they seme good men, wel j woote. and 3if ocer mennes Servantes that they be, Thanme a good man Serven they, Sykyrle. therefore hem to dispoylle let vs now hye, For per-of hauen we nede gret, ful Sykirlye. here hors and here harneys bothe vs nedyth to han, ben they neuere so lothe." Thussone on of hem prekyd owt From alle his Felawes (he was so proud), and azens these messengeris gan he ryde, jn a gret haste that ylke tyde, and seyde: "lordynges, of whens ben 3e, whom Seken 3e jn this contre? and whethyr that 3e Serven kyng Ban owther kyng Bors, his brothyr, telle vs now than. and 3yf with kyng clawdas that 3e be, thanne scholen 3e passen whyder so wyl(en 3e. For ellis, certeyn, scholen 3e ben ded, and non furthere to passen jn this sted. For we ben set here, Certeynlye, this weye to kepyn ful streetye, that noman schol passen be this contre, but 3if pat we wyten what so they be. and 3if to kyng clawdas wyl(en 3e pase, These agree not to grant free passage

These agree not to grant free passage


The first attack.

You will have to give up your harness and your horses."

thanne forth to passen scholen 3e han grace, and Ellis 30wre harneyz moste 3e leven here, and bothe 3oure hors to-gyderis ju Fere.

thanne with-owten deth passen scholen 3e, oper payeng of rawnsom, Sykyr 3e be. therto presonement scholen 3e non have, but hey[1] & al hol to passen here Save,

Sauf 3oure hors and harneyz scholen 3e forgone,"

thus seide this knyht pat to hem cam alone.

thawne that Bretealx vndyrstood this, that the knyht to Vlphyn so spak amys, he seyde: "sire knyht, thou thinkest ful ylle, but of thy bost j schal the some felle."

with his spores bretel his hors smot blyve a3ens that knyht to ryden wel swythe. and pat beheld thanne this knyht anon, and Faste a3ens Brelte he gan to gon, and abowtes his nekke he heng his Scheld, there-with to defenden him ju that feld. and there fulsore to-gederys they mette, So that on Brelte a gret strok he sette, and Brelte ful sore smot hym a3eyn

That thorwgh the left scholdere he bar hym, pleyn, Tyl that pe tromchon schewede on pe tothyr syde, hal[f] schaft and more ju that ilke tyde.

8944. thawne forth to passen scholen 3e han grace, and Ellis 30wre harneyz moste 3e leven here, and bothe 3oure hors to-gyderis ju Fere.

8948. Sauf 3oure hors and harneyz scholen 3e forgone,"

8952. For anger he lokede as red as blood.

8956. For nethyr hors ne harneyz g[e]tyst jou not here, For er thou have, thou beyest hem ful dere. J trowe thou wene hem some forto gete, and pat schalt thou not, for j schal the lette."

8960. Whanne that Bretealx vndyrstood this, that the knyht to Vlphyn so spak amys, he seyde: "sire knyht, thou thinkest ful ylle, but of thy bost j schal the some felle."

8964. with his spores bretel his hors smot blyve a3ens that knyht to ryden wel swythe. and pat beheld thanne this knyht anon, and Faste a3ens Brelte he gan to gon, and abowtes his nekke he heng his Scheld, there-with to defenden him ju that feld. and there fulsore to-gederys they mette, So that on Brelte a gret strok he sette, and Brelte ful sore smot hym a3eyn

8968. That thorwgh the left scholdere he bar hym, pleyn, Tyl that pe tromchon schewede on pe tothyr syde, hal[f] schaft and more ju that ilke tyde.

8972. Whanne that Bretealx vndyrstood this, that the knyht to Vlphyn so spak amys, he seyde: "sire knyht, thou thinkest ful ylle, but of thy bost j schal the some felle."

8976. thawne forth to passen scholen 3e han grace, and Ellis 30wre harneyz moste 3e leven here, and bothe 3oure hors to-gyderis ju Fere.
The second attack.

& pere to pe growsnde he bar hym ful ryht,
both hors & man pere in that fyght.
There Swowned this Knyght for Angwysch & peyne,
as this Storye here telleth, Syres, in certeyne.

than azen sire Bretel his spere owt drowgh thore,
al hol and as sownd as hit was tofore,
and seide to pe knyght thanne in that tyde:
“here mown now 3e wel resten and abyde
this weye to kepen for man othir knave,
and geten swich avantage as 3e mown hawe.”

Whanne that Ulfin beheld al this,
Ful wel lyked hym, pe justis, j-wys,
and preysede Bretel for his jorne,
For wel had he qwyt hym, ful Sykerle.
thanne forth they neden but a lytel weye,
that the vj knyhtes behelden, in feye,
hough that h[er]e lord sore woundyd was
and in the Feeld lay in that plas,
and seide that glad scholden they neuere be,
Tyl here lord venged were, ful certeine.
thanne of these vj, tweyne gomen Owt rylene
to ouertaken pe messageris in that Tyde,
al so faste as here hors myhte hem bере,
So that they ouertoek hem anon there.
and whanne that they were hem faste bye,
anon these messengeris they gonne ascrye,
and therto hem manacede wondyr sore,
but fullytel there-offen they 3oven thore.
and whanne they hem Syen aproximchen so ny,
ageyns hem they торнedен ful worthyly
with here scheldis and speris anow niht there,
that with-jnne schort while jsembled they were,
so that alle iiiij there so sore they mette,
and so grete strokis to-gederys they sette,
that on peces to-schateryd here scheldis,
and the gobettes floweren juto the feldys,
that persched was bothen hauberk & habiriown.

8993. MS. he. 8999. MS. af fo faste.
of Bothe partyes there jn Vyrown.

thanne aftyr, Bretel with his Lawnce
Smot his adversarye atte owtrawnce:
thorwgh hawerk, haberiown, & porwh pe throte
he hym there some bar, god hyt wote,
that ded of his hors pere fyl he down,
into the Feld over his arsown.

and Vlphyn his adversarye smot so tho,
that his spere thorwgh his lyft scholdere gan go,
and down of his hors fyl he into the feeld,
where as he lay stylle vndyr his scheld.

Two more
knights ride
to attack,

are met by the
messengers,

and des-
patched in a
similar way.

Bretel renews
his scolding
speech,
[leaf 122 c]

of Bothe partyes there jn Vyrown.

thanne aftyr, Bretel with his Lawnce
Smot his adversarye atte owtrawnce:
thorwgh hawerk, haberiown, & porwh pe throte
he hym there some bar, god hyt wote,
that ded of his hors pere fyl he down,
into the Feld over his arsown.

and Vlphyn his adversarye smot so tho,
that his spere thorwgh his lyft scholdere gan go,
and down of his hors fyl he into the feeld,
where as he lay stylle vndyr his scheld.

Two more
knights ride
to attack,

are met by the
messengers,

and des-
patched in a
similar way.

Bretel renews
his scolding
speech,
[leaf 122 c]
And at this lowgh Vlpyn welfaste; Ulfin lauffs, 
thanne forth jn here weye to-gederis they paste. and both set off together.

Anon jn here jorne ryden they forth there, 9052
as wery men that forfowhten were. 
So jn here weye they reden forth nyht, 
that to the cyte of Baynoyc they comen pat nyht, 
wher that they fownden ful gret plente 
of divers peple there, ful Sykerle. 
For bothe kynges there weren jn Fere, 
and ful gret cowneelyn hadden they there.
these two knyhtes ryden forth here weye, 
Tyl that to pe paleys they comen, ju feye. 
and of here hors they lyhted adown, 
and preyden a good man of the town 
here hors to kepen and here harneys bothe, 
and into the cowrt they wente, forsothe. 
There some axeden they aftyr kyng Ban 
and aftyr kyng Bors, his brother, than. 
they seiden, jn chambre that they were 
Jn gret cowseylle to-gederis jn fere. 
thanne pe messengeris they weren ful gladde, 
that bothe kynges to-gederis they hadde. 
So that the messengeris style abyden tho, 
Tyl that the kynges here cowneyl hadden j-do. 

And whyles they stooden Jn this degre,
there cam a knyht there forth, Sykerle, 
that Leownces of Paerne was his name, 
& with hym kam a knyht of gret Fame, 
that fulwel he lovede jn alle degre, 
and Sire Pharens hyhte he, Sykerle. 
These twayne knyhtes comen jn fere, 
To axen the messengeris what they wolden there. 
they seyden that weten wel they Scholde, 
3yf that they so longe abyden pere wolde, 
tyl that here message were don there 
To bothe bretheren that kynges were. 

9073. MS. Jnthis. 9078. Sykerle, h in darker ink. 
9083. there crossed out before were. 
MERLIN.—II
The knights and the messengers recognize each other as dear old friends.

Hand in hand, they go to the kings.

The messengers are introduced to the kings, and welcomed by them.

[Leaf 122 d]
They are asked about their errand, and about the barons and their king.

The messengers give a full account

and whanne they herden hem bothe thus seyn, thanne eche of hem othyr knew, ful pleyn.

anon eche othyr there gan forto embrace, and mochel joye they maden in that place.

thanne axedan they 3if they spoken scholden with the tweyne kynges, and what they wolde, and they seyen: "3e, sires, ful sekyrly, For therto haven we nede, trewely."

anon thanne in hondis they tooken in fere, and so to-gederis into chambre wenten there.

thanne anon as the kynges these two knyhtes sye, achem hem they wenten ful hastelye,

For wel wisten they thanne, with-owten Fayllynge, that they scholden here som newe tydylgne.

Thanne seyde Leownces to these kynges tho:

"Behold these messengerys that fer komen Fro!"

For they comen owt of gret Bretaygne with 3ow twayne to spoken, in certeyne."

and whanne the tweyne kynges herdyn this, they seyen that they weren welcome, j-wys.

thanne gret joye to-gederys they made, and ech of other they weren ryht glade.

Thanne down they seten alle pere in Fere.

Thanne Axeden the Kynges of Hem there what nede that drof hem in-to that contre,

For ellys hyt myhte non othirwyse be.

thanne furthermore, as j vndistond, they axedan tydylynes owt of here lond,

and 3yf here Barowns hadden ony kyng aftyr here owne wille, with-owten lesyng.

For of the Eleccyown knewen they ful wel, and of the sword and pe ston, everydel,

that on cristemasse day there gan apere afrom the mynstre and the peple there.

Thanne tolden the messengeris here tydyng, how that jt was, into the endyng.

9088. MS. kyngc; cf. ii. 9279, 9788, footnotes.
9101. Bretaygne, r' corrected from o.
9119. Abbreviation mark perhaps added afterwards.
and ask them to go to Arthur.

and of alle the Stryf that was there
of kyng Arthewr & pe Sevne kynges jn fere ;
and of the merveillous Fyr also
that merlyne amonges hem wrowhte tho,
and ek of the grete chevalrye
that pe zonge kyng Arthewr dyde, Sykyrylye.
aftyr they tolden hem word and ende
how merlyn cownseyllede, for hem wende
that they scholden come to kyng Arthewr
and not Jt to letten for non langowr ;
where-offen Vlphyn preyde jn haste
answere to haven, er that they paste ;
For here tyme was schort therto,
and here xede ful grete also.

Thanne answeryd the kynges ageyn,
and seiden that—"gret werre we hau, certein,
ajens kyng clawdas jn this contre,
that mochel Noyssance doth to owre meyne.
and 3yt emporyscheled he js jn partye,
But 3yt we dreden vs now, Sekerlye,
that and we owt of this contre were,
est he wolde don vs meochel dere."

That kepten we not, Syres, jn certeyn,
But merlyne sente 3ow forto say :
whiles that 3e walkyn jn his jornay,
3e doren not of non damage drede,
For he wyl 3ow both wyssen and rede."

Whanne kyng Ban & kyng Boors
herden of merlyne so grete a los,
and merveyllede meochel of his werkyng,
that he knew thinges pat werea comeng,
thanne seyden they to pe messengeris anon,
that syker thanens Scholden they not gon,
but hol thre dayes there to abyde ;
the messengeris hym thankyd pat tyde.

the kyng comanded disarme hem anon
(For furthere, certeyn, scholden they not gon,
9141. were, w blurred.
The messengers stay for three days. [CH. VIII.

but in his owne place abyden perse style), and hem vnarmed and rased at wylle. 9160

whanne that these knyhtes vnarmed were, thussone there comen the two knyhtes there, and behenhyn her harneys and her armure, Where-often they merveyllleden, j sow ensure, how that here scheldis so to-broken were, and here harneys so forbled was there, they preyden hem, of genryce, the sothe to seyne, that al the trowthe to tellen hem, pleyne. 9168
thanme begonnen they anon, ful vttyryye, alle the trowthe to seyn, ful pleynlye, Of the vij knyhtes, put weren so bolde, And How that Hen Asayllen they Wolde. 9172
“But thankyd be cod and owre Ladye, we ben now here in sowre compenye!” and whanne the twywe knyhtes herden this, That of tho Sevone they weren delyuered, j-wys, thanme of hem maden they gret preysynge, For they hem knew, with-owten lesynge, that they weren bothe knyhtes worthy, and for goode men and trewe, certeunly. 9180

thanne kyng Ban dyde hem sytten anon, and with worthy deyntes Served hem thusson. what Leownees of Paernne and Phareens To hem they dyden al here deligens; 9184
of alle tho deyntes that myhte ben fownde To hem they browhten in that stownde. For toforn tyme they syn in gret bretaygne hem Servyde with alle deyntes, in certeugne, jn tyme of kyng Vter Pendragown, that kyng Arthewres fadyr was be resown. Thussone kyng Ban & his brothyr in Fere Forward they gommen to arayen hem there, 9192
So that Redy thei weren be th[e] thrythe day with these messengeris to gon forth here way, and tooken here londys Jn govername
To Leownces of Paerne, with-owten varyaunce, 9196
For that he was here cosyn gerneyn and therto bothe good & trewe, in certeyn.
Therto Pharens was left in his compeine, and ek the steward of Baynoyc, Sykyrlye.
Thanne seyden the kynges to hem there that—"3yf nede be, aftyr helpe 3e enqwere." 9200
For they wisten not thanne, in certeyn, what tyme that hon they comen ageyn.
thanne lefte kyng Ban certein tokenyng with his Barowns of many a thing.
"and 3it more over, 3yf grete nede be,
my Ryng j schal sende 3ow, certeynle."
thanne Leownces herde that hyt trewe was
That the messengeres seyden in that plas,
Thussone they maden hem redy forto go,
Tyl that to the Se they comen vnto.
So that Schepyd they weren, bothe lest & mest, and esyly over pasten with-owten tempest, of which mater this Storye maketh an ende,
and Forth to kyng Artheur now doth hyt wende, that js at londone in gret Bretaygne,
that logres tho was clepyd, in certaygne.

Now Scheweth Forthere this Storye that from Arthewr the messengeris gomen hye, and stuffeden thanne every carnesown, every good cyte, and every town, with arblasteris and seriawtis also;
thus merlynes commandement dyde they tho.
For he knew alle tho that trewe were, lik as this Storye Reporteth here,
For merlyne knew ful wel that compeyne, that be hem Treson scholde neure now be.
and whanne they hadden thus j-don, thanne to hem cam merlyne anon,

9200. Baynoyc, o blurred.
9218. The remainder of the column blank; in the left margin: obvino Regem.
Preparations for receiving the kings. [CH. IX.

and seide they hadden ryht wel j-do.

than tolden the to merlyne vnto

how that the weye assaylled they were,

and hou of vij knyhtes they delinere hem there,

ek with the two kynges j-spoken also,

and how here londys they hadde delinere tho

To twyne barouns of that conte,

and the tokene of the kyng also tolden hee.

Anon seide merlyne to kyng Arthewr thanne:

"Goth, ordeyne sow to meten these worthy meane,

For thin owne men ful Syker they be,

and Born of hygh lynage, ful Sykerle,

and ek here wyves Jn that same wyse

hyghe Born as ony man kan devyse."

thanne answeryd the kyng to merlyne ageyne:

"As thou me redest, j wyl don, certeyne."

thanne quod merlyne jn alle haste:

"that the weyes ben clensid ful faste,

and pert o alle the maidenis that pou miht gete

hem to meten dawnysing jn that strete,

& thus with songe & dawnysyng with-owten pe town

hym so to meten in merie processiown,

and thanne youre-self with alle youre chevalrye

ek hem to meten ful worshepfullye."

"Now, goode merlin," quod Artheur the kyng,

"whanne mai j be seker of here comeng?"

"a sondai next comeng, er pe owr of Tyerce,

hidyr scholen thei comen bothe heyl & ferce."

whanne that kyng Arthewr vndirstood al this,

thanne aftir merlines wil he wrowhte, j-wys,

and merline him tawhte what he scholde do,

and hou to the kyng he scholde spoken vnto,

that jn non wise jnterrupt scholde he not ben

Jn non thing that he Scholde don other sen.

Vppon this him ordeyne Artheur the kyng

azens these kynges to gon encontryng.
Thus abyden they stille til ypon the sonday.
Thus toward the cyte passeden they there,
where as dawnsyng many maidenis were
at that tyme was these maidenis among.
and thus thorugh the cyte thei gozne to ride
To the grete towr that ilke tyde.
Anon as these kynges to pe paleis weren browht,
grete jewelis and jiftis sone weren vpe sowht
and to the kinges presentyd there;
also cowrseris, palfreyes, & with destrere,
Ek robes, and armures bothe goode & riche
To these kynges he 3af and to oþer j-lyche.
and al this wrowht he be ðerlines cowsnaille,
For aftyr hit dede hym gret availle.
So that grete love he gat him there
Of Riche and powre thanne Every-Where,
and of hem that neuere hym sye
Toforn tyme ne aftyr with here eye.
Ful mochel merveylleden the peple tho
whens that alle tho jewelis comeon fro,
and jn so short time hit was j-don,
bothe to hye and to lowe þere nihst anon.
So that eche man jn his degre
kyng Artheuris man swor forto be,
and for nothing hym Neuere to faylle
jn pes, in werre, nethir jn bataille.

Whanne that these kynges jn þe cite were,
daunsyng of ladies Syen thei there,
Torneyeng of Bacheseris ʒonge,
that alday lasted jnto evensonge.
more ouer alle the stretis of the cyte

9279. kynges, f squeezed in afterwards.
9301. Abbreviation mark in darker ink, between i and s.
Festivities.

The streets are hung with cloths of silk. The weather is fine.
Lamps filled with balm spread sweet odour all around.

The royal party attend mass, which is sung by the archbishop, and then have a splendid dinner.

At table serve Kay, Ulfin, Bretel, and Girfles.

After dinner, the quintin is raised.

The names of the knyhtes so 3onge J schal 3ow declareyn Ju Englysch tonge. the ton hyhte Lucans the Botelers, the tothir sire Gyrfles, a knyht ful fers, thus with these knyhtes the halle served was with gret deyntes thike day in that plas.

Aftyr noon was vpe set the qwynyn, the 3onge knyhtes pere justed wel and fyn, and Boordeieden there alle theke day, and aftenward to toreneyng, with-owten nay.
The great tournament begins.

So weren they devyded on partyes tweyne,
on eche side vij hundred, in certeinge,
of whyche of the rem of Baynoic, yttelye,
the vij hundred weren in that compenye.
and whanne these parties assembled were,
alle thre kynges weren they there.
and mochel of the clerye were also,
and of astronomers that in pe rewme thon.
3it vndir hem alle cowden they not telle
on whiche syde the better befelle,
Sauf only neulyne he cowde declare,
whiche side the better scholde han thare.
Thus the thre Kynges And therchebeyschope tho
at Fenestris and wyndowes lokeden tho,
and hon to-gederys they goumen torneye,
ek hon that here hors gouwen for to neye,
and hon that the erthe hyt denecl also,
So faste to turneyeng goun they to go.

The knights are divided in two parties.
Clergy and astronomers are present.
The kings and the archbishop look on from a window.
[leaf 123 d]

Thus whiles they turneyedy there,
Jnto a renge aperyd thanne there
Sire Gyrfles, the sone of cardwelle,
vppon a stede that was stowt & felle ;
jnto that renge he róf ful faste.
& azens hym cam on atte laste :
a knyht of Baynoic, that hyht Ladmas,
with sire Gyrfles mette in that plas ;
and assone as they to-gederis mette,
Grete strokes on eech other there sette ;
with sperys and scheldes toforn here breest
To-gederis they mettyyn at here Treest,
and so sore to-gederis they romen there,
that eech vppon other barst his sper,
For worthy knyhtes they weren bothe two,
and eche be hym-self desirede also :
the toon desired worscheppe, trewelye,
The toper richesse and Seygnourye.
So sore they turneyedent togederis thanne,

1. First Girfles juysts
2. with Ladmas of Baintol.
3. They break their spears.

9344. in Comp crossed out before weren.
that hem thowhte the brayn was owt of h[er]e paerne, and ek the eyen owt of here heul.

So sore they torneyed jn that sted. 9380
and ek of hem to erthe ower there bar, that jn Swowneng stille they lyen thar.
So that the peple wenden, pat stoden abowte, that bothe hadden ben ded, with-owten dowte. 9384
For so crwel a fyht Syen they nuere ere be-twixen two men that knyhte were.

(2) Then ensues a general rush,

Thusseone to-broken the renges anon;
to resewen these knyhte weaten they ful son. 9388
there on partye with another to-gederis gonene mete, that on ryther partye lay jn the strete.
Ek so sore to-gederis metten they there, that eche man on othyr brak his spere. 9392
whanne that here sperys to-broken were, anon here swerdis they pulden owt there.
So that there a melle began ful strong.
betwixen tho knyhtes hem among. 9396
3yt was there thanne anothyr knyht, that ful merveillously bar hym in fyht, that Lucans le boteler was his name, cosin germayn to Gyrfles, a man of fame. 9400
This Lucans so on gan taken there, that bothe hors and knyhtes he gan to fere. For so harde he took on thanne, that his strok ne dorsten abyden non maene. 9404
he rente the helmets of hedis adown, here scheldes caste ouer here arsown, and swiche maistirys werken pere he began, that of hym merveilledede many a man. 9408
and so deden these kynges thre, and of hym merveillededen jn many dege.

Lunge lasted the torneyeng that Tyde at Londone faste by temses syde. 9412
and it knew non man the bettyr partye,

9378. MS. he pīne.
9406. from crossed out before oth.
ho pe victorye scholde hauen, sykynlye.  
For so many goode men there were  
here myht to preven on bothe sides pere.  
whanne Gyrfles and his felawe vpe weren sette  
and on horsbak pere, with-owten lette,  
Whanne they Aventyd Weren Jn that plas,  
aen they torneyedan with-june litel spas.  
thanne sire Gyrfles and sire Iwcans in Fere  
Ful grete maystryes begonnen they there,  
and of hem of Baynoic gotten they loud,  
and from here place remeved hem, j vndirstond.  
whanne that this they of Baynoye Sye,  
that here Feleschepe gonnen so forto flye,  
they komen to resewen hem with alle here myht,  
that toforn not ne hadden komen in fyht.  
thanme komen of Arthewris thre hundred knyhtes  
agens hem of Baynoye pere anon ryhtes.  
and thus they entermellyd bothe in fere,  
tyl that me'vcellous werkyng maden they there;  
for so sore to-oederis connen they ryde,  
that here speris to-borsten in that tyde.  
and whanne here speres toborsten were,  
anon ech man his sword drowh owt pere.  
and pere began ful gret Tornement  
of the worthy knyhtes, verament.  
For a man the sothe myhtye knowe,  
the worthynesse of knyhtes al be rowe,  
and ek of zonge knyhtes that pere were,  
that lerned to torneyen with scheld and spere.  
but of alle othere in that plas  
Sire Gyrfle & Sire Iwcans gonne hem pas.  
Whanne hyt was komen to the owr of noon,  
Syre kay with xvij felawes there cam anon,  
that fit non strok j-smeten they hadde;  
thussone jnto the reng pere he hem ladde.  
So that pe ferste they gonne there mete,  
down they hem boren a-myld the strete.  
So sore they justed vpon that crownde,  
that here speris to-borsten pat ylke stownde.
and whanne there speris to-broken were, 9456
and anon here swerdis they pulden owt there.
that so sore they fyghten begonne,
and fowhten, whiles they hadden ony sonne,
that sire kay on his partye hadde the gre,
on pe tother side Gyrrfe3 & lyweans, sykerle,
thanne wenten these knyhtes tho jn fere
Forto aventen hem owt of pe place there.
thanne to that resorted pere anon ryht
of Baynoye Lordis of ryht gret wyht,
hol Names j schal 3ow telle,
and 3e wylen herkene to my spelle. 9464
There was Vsmerawnt of pe Roche, ful prest in age,
and Gawnes de bloy, & Vryens of pe forest savage,
also Belyas Amowres of mayd yn castel,
and Flawndres le Blans, and Graciens the Lez,
and Blyes de la kasse, and Bliebens of desert
with melyadus pe blys & madyens of cripes, apert,
and placydas the caws with hem, trewelye;
alle these to torneyeng comen jn compenye.
whanne this fresch peple cam to tornement,
There they so torneyeden, verament,
that non man dorste hem there abyde;
So sore they torneyeden jn that tyde.
and whanne Sire kay be-held al this,
that here lond his felawes hadden lost, j-wys,
and there aventying as he was
& with hym his felawes jn that plas
behelden hem of Baynoye lond
putten his felawes to pe wers, j vndirstond,
Thusowe pere haste hym thanne syre kay
And His Felyschepe With Hym, Jn Fay,
and prekeden jnto the grettest pres
that he myhte fynden, with-owten les,
and with hym his fyleschepe in compenye.
there gomen they sore to torneyen, trewelye,
So that but a lytel whyle hadden they ben there,
that they of Baynoye Scomfyt they were.

9490. Baynoye, e squeezed in afterwards.
thus wroght Sire kay in that Turnement, that his Name declared was, verament, as this storye here-after schal declare, hos that there-afyr wil loken thare.

Syre kay, that of his modyr newere norschad was, but of anothyr womanman in dyvers plas, a tach of his nourse there he cawhte, that of hym geten myhte hyt be nowhte. 3yt his modyr a worthy lady was, and moche worschepe cowde jr every plas, and perto sche was ful of Bownte and ful of gentrye in eche degre. but this Sire kay a custom hadde, that he ne rowhte to speken good oper badde. 3yt he ne spak hit for non velonye, but moche pat he seide was but folye. For often-tymes they that herd hym speke, on lawgheng they musten sone owt breke ek for disport and his Folye, that jr his speche they founden, trewelye. And perto azenward 3it was he the beste Felawe that myhte be. whanne sire kay cam to tornement, as to-forn time han 3e herd present, and Sire Ladmas, that ful wel hadde J-do vppon kyng arthewrs men 3it thedirto, and Sawh his Felawes put to the flyht, whiche so him grevede anon per ruylt—whanne that Sire kay al this beheld, that his Felawes forsaken hadde pe feeld, Ful Sorweful he was thanne jr his herte, and Forth on horsbak he gan to sterte To Sire Ladmas jr that pres, and of his Torneyeng he made him ses, and made him to meyen owt of pat place, there as to-forn tyme ful bold he wace, and so sore smot hym jr the Scheld,

\(9500.\) cowde, d immediately corrected from c. 
\(9518.\) grevede, the second e blurred.
He tilts Ladnias and Gracien's off their horses,
and relieves their horses, and resewed his felawes echon.
thussone his name discried was anon,
that Scomfyt they wenden forto han be.
thanne torneden they alle azen ju fere,
and of al that day ne dyden not so wel pere.

These jostes beheld wel Artheur pe kyng,
yrng Ban and kyng Boors, with-owten lesyng,
and behelden the chevalrye of syre kay,
that he there dyde that ylke day,
and seiden he was a worthy knyht,
vayllauat & vysable ju every fyht.
and whanne Lucans the Botelers Sawgh kay so do,
yhm forto helpe hym Nede not to go.
Thanne took He His Hors With His spores Anon,
and into the grettest pres he gan to gon,
and smot Syre Bloys so sore there,
that al on peces to-barst his spere,
and to the grownde him bar down ryht,
and his swerd owt drowgh pere forto fyht.
thanne began pere gret Torneyenge
here felawes to socowr forto brynge.
Thanne cam Sire Gyrlfex, armed ful bryht,
as feste prekinge as that he myht,
and Sawgh there Blyobers & his felawes tweye,
that abowten Sire kay weren, trewelye,
and with here swerdes on hym they leyden faste,
that wondyr hit was he myhte hit laste,
For grete nede of socowr there hadde he,
For he was but on azens hem thre,
and thike thre pe best men were
of Baynoykes meyne pat was there.

9538. MS. sowel, e blurred.
thanne mette he there with placydes, and his helm to-barst in that pres.

Aftyr Rod he to Blyobers, that thike tyme was bothe stordy & fers, and smot evene a-myddes pe scheld, that he there fylDown in the field, and drowh owt his sword anon thanne, and smot sire placydes so on pe panne, So that sore astoned pere he was, and from his hors fyl down in that plas.

Thazane what tyme Syre kay beheld al this, vp ful sone he hym dressed, j-wys, and beheld sire Gyrfles, his socourer, and thowhte that kyndenesse to qweten owther.

So from that day evere aftyr-wardle they loveden to-gederis ful strong & harde; 

Al the whyle they leveden here, myht non man departin hit fer ne nere.

Whanne S[i]re Gyrfles Sire kay rescue 9584
and thens as he lay thanne forth hym ladde, Kay rises,

thanne aspyde Sire kay on pat hyht 3eroas, that hym sore anoyede in that plas.

anon his Swerd Sire kay owt drowghe. 9588

and, shortly to seyne, there hym he slowghe. There is an outcry,

thanne be-gan there gret noyse & cry on the tothyr partye there, certainly.

thanne comen they thedyr fast prekyng, and ek on sire kayes syde, with-owten lesinge. 9592

So that gret melle there began, and a fresh tumult,

that hurt and anoyed was manc a man, 

er alle fyve felawes rescwe 9596

owthyg er to-gederis they mo[w]n semblen there. in which the five knights

but whanne to-gederis they weren alle fyve, wel mochel deseysy they wrowhte ful blyve.

and zif 3e wil knowen whiche fyve they be, J schal 3ou here declaren, ful sekerle:

Ferst Ulfin, Bretel, and Syre kay pere, 9600

(Ulfin, Bretel, Kay, 

9583. MS. Sre. 9586. MS. jnthat. 

9586. MS. m6, o on erasure.
The great tournament is concluded.

Sire Gryfle; and Sire Iwanes pe boteler.
and whom so every pese fyve metten in place,
to therthe they wente, ther nas non oper grace,
For so wel these Fyve gommen hem be-stere,
merveylleng to alle tho that there were,
and how they myhte so longe endure,
These thre kynges merveilleden, j sow Ensure.
So that thus ther Was Ful strong melle
on bothe partyes there thanne, Sykerle.
and gret poyntes of armes pere was j-do,
and tyt hyt was even, hyt lasted tho.
thanne comen these thre kynges adown
this Torneye to breken al and som.
So that they comen jn-to the place
there as this Torneyeng al day was,
and helden bothe partyes parygal.
Anow thanne comen they jn with-al,
For they cowde not wel declare
on whiche partye the gre schold fare.
and there departed the Torneye anon,
So that eche knyht to his jn hom gan gon.
and the kynges wenten forth to evensong,
and aftyr to here Soper gonne they fong.
and whanne the Soper was j-do,
of this tornement thanne spoken they tho,
and ho that best bar him thar,
and whiche of armes pat wyset war.
thanne anon hem answerede there kyng Ban,
& seide: "Xvj knyhtes j have here than
that jn this Torneyeng bettere han doon
thanne alle the roundaunt everichon,
and on this partye heyhhte there were,
For stronge & harde they payned hem here,
and many merveillous armes dyden they,
mo thanne at this tyme j kan wryte oper sey."
so vppon this long weren they jn talkyng,
and paume atte lasche for the gre yeveng.
So that the los was joven, and the prys,
CH. IX.  Familiar converse in the king’s chamber.

To Sire kay steward after here devys,
To sire lucans the botelere, and to Sire Gyrle,
To these thre for pe beste, wit[h]owten les.

Thanne whanne the tables j-drawn were, into a chambr the kynges wenten there,
Therchebisschope and Antron ek also, which chambr on pe never stood tho.
and with hem these two knyhtes wente,
Sire Vlphiln and sire Bretel, veramente.
thanne thus of manye thinges they spooke, and atte laste kyng Arther gan loke,
and aspyde these two knyhtes with-jome a whyle,
thanne anon kyng arther beg-an to smyle, whanne he bethowhte hym vpon the jorne, as merlyne hadde hym told, ful Sykerle,
whanne that on his messa[ge] pey wenten, apert, hou that they thanne spedden jn desert,
& hou from vij knyhtes deliuered they were, he preyde hem to pe kynges to tellen hit pere.
and thanne the kynges preyden hem also
The sothe hem to telle—“er that 3e go.”

Whanne they herden the kynges preiden soaste, Bretel on sire Vlphiln lowgh atte laste.
thanne answerid sire Bretel to the kyng:
“what nedith 3ow vs to axen of swich a thing, whanne that 3e knowen hyt as wel as we, as merlyne 3ow hath told, ful cernelne,
So that hyt were not but wordis jn veyn of swiche thinges to speken, certeyn?”
than answerede anon kyng Ban:
“Now, leve sire, ho pere-off 3ou telle kan, that 3oure kyng js thereto thus preve?”
“Jis, Sire kyng, quod sire Bretel, sykirle,
The wysest man of al this Lond

9640. Sir’ twice, the latter crossed out.
9641. lucans in the left margin; the insertion mark is erroneously placed after (instead of before) the.
9642. MS. wit oull; cf. l. 9182, footnote.
MERLIN.—11
Other of Al crystynond, J Vndyrstonde."
"Now where is he?" quod the kyng Ban tho,
"and what his name, telle thou me also."
"Syre, hit is merlyne," quod Sire Bretel thanne,
"that we holdeyn ryht a wyse manne,
and in my chambere he lyth to reste.
he is a man of counselyl of pe beste,
For be his counseyl we kommen for 30w,
wheeche we hopen schal ben for 30ure prow."
Thanne spak kyng ban anon thanne
To kyng Arthewr there of this manne :
"Now, good Syre, letse ye vs now hym se;
For gret lust therto we han, parde,
For merveiilles that we han herd of seye
of that man in manye a weye."
kyng Arthewr seide, with ryght good wylle
That anon he scholden comen hem vntylle.
Anon thanne sente he For Sire vlphyn,
and preyde hym gon to seken after merlyn.
And as Sire Vlphyn gan forth to gon,
ryht ther there with merlyn he mette anon.
thanne seide Sire Vlphyn: "welcome ye be;
the kyng wolde gladliche speken with pe."
"j come ryht anon," quod merlyne theo,
"For j ne nekke toforn whom pet j go."
Thus entrede merlyne jnto that pres,
and many things seide, that was non les,
bothen of his knonnege and of his lyf,
there he hem tolde, with-owten stryf.
thanhe hadde kyng Ban a clerk there,
a wyser man ther nas nowhere,
and aposyd merlyne of many a thyng;
his name was Guinebant, with-owten lesyng.
And what evere of merlyne he gan to freyne,
merlyne hym answerede anon, certime,
For merlyne knewen neuere non xamer of man,
that hym so aposede as he dyde than.
And evere these kynges stodyn ful styelle,
tyl bothe clerkes hadden seid here wylle, 9712
and tyl the dispetesoun was al j-do
er that'ony of hem wolde themes go.
So that there aqweyntawnce they took,
and neure there-aftyr hit forsook.

Thanne whanne al this was thus j-don,
מִרְלְיֵּנֶה to these two kynges gan to gon,
and seide: "3c ben lordis bothe goode & trewe ;
my Lord kyng Arthewr hath sweche to fewe.
beholdeth now my lord and kyng, ful sikerle,
For heoure Sovereyn and lord Moste be,
and of hym youre rem to holden vnder gage,
and him to don bothe Fewte & homage,
and he schal youre Socowr and helpe be
a3ens alle youre enemyes, Sykyrle."

"Now, merlyne, telle vs, we preyen the,
ju what maner he was chosen kyng to be,
and if that Antron wyste, verraylly,
kyng vter pendragones sone he were, trewely."
"3e, Sires," quod merlyne, "with-owten lesyng,
that was pe cawse he is chosen kyng.
and of his eleccioun, with-owten dwere,
they konnen beren witnesse pat ben here,
bothe therchebisschope & vlpyn also ;
bothe konne they seyn how hyt gan go." 9732

"merlyne," quod the kyng thanne,
"We holden the for a ful trewe manne ;
perfore we wolden preyen the for thi lordis sake
of on thying vs sewr forto make ;
And For A trewe man We Knowen the, sekyrlye,
and for non ertzely good thou wylt not lye."
"A," quod merlyne, "3e wolden that j swore
that hit were trewe pat j tolde 3ow to-fore."
thanne gommen these kynges to lawghen anon :
Swyche on knewe they neure but hym alon.

9712. hadden, the first d through correction.
9713. waf, f added afterwards. 9718. MS. gantto.
9730. fone added above the line.
9731. merlyne, the final e blurred.
9741. we crossed out before man.
Merlin is willing, but puts it off till the next day.

All go to bed.

the kings, the archbishop, Guinebant, and Merlin, in the same chamber.

Thanne seide merlyne to hem ageyn:
“what Je so me axen, j schal tellen zow, pleyn.”

So that respyt they tooken that nyht, Tyl upon the morwe hit was day lyht.

thus they departyd here counseyl thanne, and to bedde they wente every manne.

thanne jnto on chambre wente that meyne:
thre kynges, pe bisschope, Guinebant, & merlin in compeyne;

For departen wolden they jn non weye, and namly pis clerk Guinebant & merlyne, jn feye.

For a gret clerk held hym this merlyne, as aftyr this storye reporteth wel and fyn.

Thanne to bedde these kynges wented ful sone, and alle these meyne everichone,

and spletten on the morwe tyl hyt was day,

Tyl that to Servysse they rongen, jn fay;

For abowtes halewen-tyd tho hit was, whanne tymne they weren jn that plas.

thanne cam merlyne to hem anone, & pere two wyndowes he openede thussonë, For he wolde som lyhte that there were hem onestely to arayen with there.

so that they hem dîhte, & gonne to gon to the chef mynstre thanne anon.

there therchebisschope the masse dyde Synge, and at pat masse merlyne, with-owten lesynge,

Swarzon the sacrement jn that place that kyng Artheur kyng vterpendragones sone was, and that on Ygverne begeten was he the same nyht pe dewk was slayn, Sykerle—

“So that he is the moste ryhtful eyr That to this lond cowde repeyrt.”

9747. feilde, the first c blurred.
9758-59. Between these lines there is a blank corresponding to about eighteen lines. Similarly between ll. 10080-81, 10174-75 10258-59, &c.
9776. The n-mark in darker ink.
the same oth Sire Vilphyn swoor,
Ek sire bretel, sire kay, that weren thoor.

Whanne these two kynges herdyn al this, that this sewrawnce thus was mad, j-wys, anon to kyng Arthewr they deden homage, as to a worthy kyng of hygh parage.
kynge Artheur hem resceyvede debonowrly, and for Joyce he wept ful tenderly, and there he hem kyste ful often-sythe, For of the kynges he was ful blythe.

Thanne to halle every man wente, And thankyd God With good entente, where as here mete was redely dyht, For kynges, erle3, baroums, and knyht.

and whanne that this mete was j-don, thanne to cownseyyl wenten they anon, merlyne and the thre kynges jn fere, Vlphyn, Bretel, & ek Sire kay was there. thanne to hem seide there merline anon:

“3e ben trewe men pat here ben echon, For that j knowe as wel as 3e that Syker alle trewe men 3e be.
Beholdyth here now 3oure Lord & kyng, this worthy sire Artheur, that is so 3ying! and 3e knowe wel that haterede hath he of his Baronage, ful Sykerle, that hym nelen don homage ne Servyse, as that they owhten be many a wyse, But with hym thus were they holde. there-fore j preie 3ow many folde that aftyr my cownseill 3e wolden don, and good counseille j schal 3even 3ow son.”
and they hym answeryd, with nyht good wylle what so he seyde they woldeen fulfylye.

“Thanne, Lordynges, wylen 3e vndirstonde that here kyng Artheur is kyng of this londe,

9780. Ulfin and Bretel take the same oath.
9784. Then Ban and Boors do hommage to king Arthur, who weeps for joy and kisses them.
9788. All return to the hall, where a meal is realy.
9792. After the meal the kings go to counsel.
9796. Merlin, commenathing the faithfulness of Arthur's counsellors, and reminding them of the barons' hostility,
9800. and they promise to do so.
9804. "Well then," says Merlin,
Merlin advises the three kings

"King Arthur here has no wife. I know of a beautiful princess, and that non wyf haueth now he; wherefore j knowe on, ful sykerle, that is bothe comen of kyng & qwene, and a Fairere mayden han se not sene, and is dowghtyr to kyng Leodegan of Tarmelyde, ryht a worthy man. and no no children now hath he but only this lady, ful Sykerle. more ouer an old man js that kyng, and gonmore hylte that mayden so zyng; thereto eyr schal sehe ben aftyr his day. but gret werre he hath, with-owten delay, with on kyng Ryoun of Geamtes lynage, a myhty man & a riche & of gret parage. and he conquerde kyng leodegan, kyng Arthuiris lond next him lyth than. For 3if that Tarmalide conquerid be, thanne schal neuere kyng Arthewr, sykerle, his lond ju pes thanne non whyles holde For this kyng Ryown that is so bolde, and 3if pat the knyhtes of pe nownde table ne hadde be, kyng leodegan his lond hadde lost, ful Sykerle. Hitherto this were now myn cownsaylle, that thyder 3e wente, with-owten Faylle, with kyng Arthuir ju this manere as thowh alle Sowdeours pat 3e were, and there a eyr oper two forto ahde, his aqweyntance to geteron the same tyde. For non whylle scholen 3e there not be, that he wel schal 3ow loven, Sekerie, better thanne hem pat with him now ben, and that ryht some scholen 3e now sen. and j vndirtake for kyng arthur here that to him he schal ben so leef & dere, that his dowhter he schal hym 3yve to wyve and eyr of that lond aftyr his lyve. For anon as weddyd thane he js, anon the jeamtes scholen han knoweng, j-wys;
CH. X] to assist king Leodegan. 263

and from that day forward, with-owten lye, the jeuntes doren not abyden, trewelye, not be a grete jorne there abowe; This is ful trewe, with-owten dowte."

Thanne Answerede Anon Kyng Ban, and to merlyne sayde he there than: "my leve frend, j schal tellen the: what aventure scholde thane this be Now to forsaken our owne lond, Lyke jn werre as hit doth stond? This is ful trewe, withowte/dowte."

Thaune Answerede Anon Kyng Ban, and to JieHyne sayde he there tlian: "jviy leve frend, j schal tellen the: what aventure scholde thane this lie Now to forsakenoure ownelond, Lyke jn werre as hit doth stond? how scholde we thanne taken on jne, with hem that on vs don so werre and our londis distroyen & brenne? wers wylen they don, and we ben thenne. For but 3if we jn owre lond abyde, hit wyle vs hyndren jn every tyde, but 3if that kyng artheures barownes here our londis to sosteyne, & we not there, and ful gret peryl now hit Js, other men our londes to defendyn, j-wys."

"A, Sire," quod merlyne to the kyng thos, "to me 3e speken, as 3ow lyst forto do, but j 3ow enswre, ful certeynyce, that and 3e there lesen on penye, two hundred therefore scholen 3e gete, and of this j dar 3ow wel behete. For ther ne schal comen jnto 3owre contre distrocciou nethir to town xe cyte, while3 3e ben jn kyng Artheures presens ; J schal 3ow warantuen ful Syker defens, and there a Ryal Rewn scholen 3e wynne, and therto al the Lordschepis pat ben with-june, that this Lond defenden schal evere with-al vndistroyed, and lasten for ay & fynal."

thanne answerede kyng Ban to merlyn anone, and there to hym he seyde thus sone: "We the knowen for man ful wys; J schal the Seyn now xyn avys.

9856. dath, d corrected from f. 9862. 9864. 9868. 9866. Err crossed out before ay.
But first Arthur's opposers must be beaten.

Sethen hit is so as thou dost telle, Aftyr thy counseylle don we wylle, but telle vs now whanne we scholde wende, and we scholen pere-offen maken an ende, and pertu ource retenu scholen we calle, that they mown ben resly alle."

"Al betymes," quod merlyne tho, "For hit schal be midlentone, er pat 3e go, and zit er that 3e gon, with-owten faille, here moste we han a gret bataylle agens the barouns, that ryzen ben kyng Artheur to werchen treye & teen, therefore j wolde pat 3e anon nyhte to gete as moche meine as 3e myhte, and that 3e don hem loggen ful prevylyye jr a fayr lawnde here faste bye, that js jr the Forest of Bredygam, there as that meyne neuer ne cam, and dubblefold harm scholen they have thanne ony of 3owre, 3e mown ben save."

Thanne there anon tho spak kyng Ban, and there to merlyne he seyde than: 
"3if pot for men into my lond j scholde sende, scholden they be tyme hidere to me wende?"
"3e, certein, Syre," quod merlyne tho, "For nyht wel hyt may be do.
and on this message, Sire, wyl j wende alle this water to bryngen to an ende. For this message hastyd most hyt be agens the bataylle, sire, Sykerle, the whiche at candel-masse schal be-tyde the forest of Bredygam there be-syde, therefore zoure meyne moste hasted be Hedyr Betymes to come, Sekyrel.
For they mosten Ryden bothe day & nyht this jorne to sped, and they don nyht, and wete 3e wel, the sothe forto preve, that j schal be there to morewen er eve."

9892 9896 9900 9904 9908 9912 9916 9920 9924 9928

9914. MS. tome, t corrected from c.
and whanne the kynges herden this,
here-offen they merveilleeden sore, j-wis.
 thanne clepede merlyne kyng Arthure anon,
and bad he scholde ordeynge forto be don
bothe arblasteris and ek worthi seriawns
to-gederis assemblen, with-owten varyans,
the moste prevyeste wyse—"that they mown wende,
and with hem plente of vitaylle that 3e sende
junto that lawnde that j haue 3ow told;
among to 3e peple deparate hit manyfold.
and that eche man for hym-self have
vytailles for xv dayes, to kepyn hym save,
of mele and Salt flesch ek therto
besiden opar vetaylles; do 3e nyht so."

thanne lweans the Botelers and sire Gyrlfes
anon they pasten owt of that pres,
Also Sire Vlphyn and Syre Bretel,
whiche pat weren knyhtes bothe the trewe & lel.

Anon seyde merlyne to kyng Ban:
"Sire, as 3e ben kyng and honest man,
3oure Ryng to taken me in this threwe,
To 3oure cosin le-ownes that j myhte it schewe,
that the bettere he myhte leven me
of what thing that j hym telle fro the."

Whanne the two kynges herden this,
Of hym they merveilleeden mochel, j-wys,
For they wenden, with-owten lesinge,
that no man that was thanne levenge
hadde knowen that he toldde hem there;
so not sore astoned thanne they were.
"Now, Lordynge," quod kyng Ban,
merveille now 3e not of this man.
For he knoweth al thing that js,
Be hit wel don opar mys;
be hyt nenee don so prevyle,
he hit can tellen, ful Sykerle."

thanne answerid they some ageyn:

9962. The line was omitted and then written up the right margin
"Sethen hit is so as that 3e seyn,
That 3e taken hym 3ounre ryng anon,
and that he were forth past & gon.
for 3e scholen heren merveille3 mo,
whazone that he cometh 3ow a3en vnto."

"Now, be myn hed," quod merlyne thanne,
"3e han seyd Ryht as a wys manne.
For more of this scholen 3e han encre,
thane oni of 3ow kan seyn, with-owten les."
thanne delyverede hym pe kyng his ryng anon,
and pe-wit forth merlyne gan to gon,
and be Blasie, his maister, he took pe weyc,
and of alle thinges tolde hym, Sekerlye:
that juto hit lit Breteniues he scholde go;
of the message eke he told him also;
whiche that Blasie wrot in that throwe;
and elles how scholde we hit knowe?

Thus merlyne from Blase departed anon,
and forth on his message he gan to gon,
and dyde his message al in good tyme,
For he was pere he wolde er the morwe at pryme,
and tolde sire Leowne the kynges wyllle,
and the kynges ryng took hym vntyli.
there they beleved hym anon,
and deuen al that was forto don,
And senten Anon bothe fer and Ny,
and faire retenu to gaderen, trewly.
So that with-june fowrti myles abowte
thedyr they gadered with gret rowte,
so that they weren to-forn the cyte
viij dayes te-forn cristemasse, Sykerle;
thanne good warde putten to pe townes alle
that to the twyne kynges he riht schold saffe.
jn that on hold they putten a lady Bryht,
that worthy lady was and of gret myht:
the cyte of gawnes kepte seche thanne
and with hyre ful many a worthy manne.

Early next morning, he arrives at Bainoik, and delivers the king's message.

Troops are gathered from forty miles around,
and keepers are set in the cities:
in Gawnes, a fair lady,
CH. X.] where an auxiliary army is levied. 267

Ek Phareeus there meryne preyde also
that al his power he wolde do,
and that he hym grawntyd, ful sekerly,
juto al his power, ful ytterly.
on the toper syde, juto Baynoye cyte
they putten a man of gret degre,
Sire raier, the Lord of Hawt mure,
a worthy knyht and vaillant, j 3ou ensure.
and jn the castel of Trebes
they putten Sire graciens, with-owten les,
the whiche was godsone to kyng Ban.
and jn that castel with him hadde he than
Two sostren of Raynes, the worthiest
knyht pat pere was be est oper west.
For it was the strongest castel
of alle pat contre be many a del.
and at mowntloyr, pe castel of kyng Boors,
that was don kept with strengthe & foors:
Sire placydes, that was a worthy knyht,
That castel he kepte bothe day & Nyht.

And whaone alle these ordenauces weren jdo,
meryne with his meyne forth gan to go,
and that was be the tyme of Nyht,
For theke tyme the mone schon ful bryght.
and meryne condeyede hem the weye
From alle enemies, as he wel kowde, jn feye.
and to the se he Browht hem ful sone;
there Faste to schepe gonne they gone.
and kyng Arthewr, yppon the toper syde
To bataille hym arayede the same tyde,
also prevyly as he cowde thane do.
So that moche peple him cam vnto:
bancheson of the ziftes grete
that he hem 3af, they wolde not lete.
Also oper peple to hym comen that throwe,
For that they wolden kyng Artheur knowe;
ek other peple hym kam forto se

10024. MS. grano.
For that they herden of his gret bownte.
So that whanne to-gederis j-sembled they were,
x thousand on horsbak redy they were;
For foot-men thedry wolde he non haue,
for his weyne and vytaille pat he wolde save.
and on þe toper syde there comen a-down
charyettes with vytaille alle jn virown
evene after merlynes ordenaunce;
So was hit don, with-owten variance.
and ful prevyly alle j-logged they were
jn a lawnde besyde Bredigan there;
For that was on the prevyest place
that jn that contre owther ware.
and whanne this was al j-do,
merveillously wrowht kyng artheur tho,
whiche that merlyne Hyt plesed ful Wel,
whanne he hit knew, his wyt, echeld.
For anon as that they logged were,
alle the weyes be-sette he there,
that non man therby Scholde passe
juno his lond, nethir more ne lasse,
but ȝif he were taken and to-forn him browht,
Er that ony juno his newm forthere sowht.
For he kepte that non aspye
his newm scholde entren, trewelye,
For to certeynys his enemys
what was his ordenaunce oper his devys.
For there kyng Arthwr charged alle tho
that to hym belonged vnto,
that non man thyke pas scholde ryde,
tyl hyt were after kandelmasse tyde;
and ho þat dide agens his comandement,
To deth he scholde gon, verament.
So that stylle they holden hem every man,
where-often þe commune peple merveylleden than.
So that thus prevyly this was wrowht,
& sauf þe kynges counseille wist non man nowht.

Now leveth this storie of this mater,
and after of pe vj kynges hit speketh here, that at carliown discomftyted were, as pat to-forn tyme ze han herd told here.

The opposing kings decide on an invasion.

Thanne here-after Reherseth this Book, ho so wele here there-after look, what morneng that maden these vj kynges, For they hadden so lost alle here thynges and al the harneis that they hadde, and al that here meyne with hem ladde.

So that they sworren and maden affyance there-on to ben avenged juto pe vttrawnce; For er glad scholden ney neuer be, Tyl they weren avenged, certeinle, bothe of kyng Artheur & ek on merlyn, the wheche they clepeden his devyn, be whom they losten al here good; thus al amased homward they good, and for that somme myhten neper riden ne go, hom ju a letter weren they lad tho.

so that smale Jornes forth they wente, Tyl jnto here lond they komen presente, so that they soiowndede, tyl they hel were; &with-inne a monthe a parlament hadden they there ju a march that be-twenne engelond was and scotlond, so that hit stood in pe middles of pe plas.

and this was the ende of the parlament, that every man scholde don his entent And Senden abowte in-to eche contre To alle here Frenschepis, where so they be, and that [eche] of hem to othyr swere redy forto ben with scheld & sperre To dryven kyng Artheur owt of his lond, and hit to Sesyn jnto here owne lond. So that they token day of assemble that ost to-gederis forto be Jn a feld besydes Bredygan; thus herto assentyd every man.

The discomfited kings (p. 226), full of sadness, and revenge, had slowly repaired homeward.

When their wounds were healed, they held a parliament; there they resolved to gather forces [leaf 126d]

against Arthur, and to meet at Bredigam.

10107. MS. that of hem. 10112. MS. to gederis.
The opposing kings enter Arthur's land. [CH. X.

Thanne thus departyd the parliament.
Anon every man abowtes faste sent,
So that to hem repyrede there anon
the dewk of cambenye & othyr manyon.
Fyve thousande men he browhte with hym,
that in bataylle were no bothe stowt & cryn.
Thanne cam there forth Tradelynaws,
that kyng of Northgaies tho he was,
with vi thousand of FYhten men.

Now there arrive, with thousands of
men, the duke of Cambenye,
the king of North Wales,
king Clarion,
the king of a hundred knights,
the king of Orkney,
king Carados of Stranger,
king Newtris,
and king Ydiers of Cornwall,
They ride slowly through the country,
and send out spies.

But these are captured by Arthur's
guardismen.

The kings arrive at Bredigam.

Their terror-gers find the
land empty,
:

OH. X.J

For

'J-^heij

al tliat

hern and

good was lad

destroy, hut find

no

the goods

Ijefore

liiiving been
brought into

jnto castelis and jnto cites there.

safe places.

was Avrowlit be cownseyl of kyng

this

and Ek of kyng Boors, a

l-]aii

10156

ful wis Man.

Wlianne that they aspyden

271

booty.

I'he.v tlieii

al this,

begin to burn
aiid destroy.

that the contre thus was warned, j-wis,
ano?j they Fireden,

and

an go?nie to hrenne,

10160

al the contre distroied tlianne.

So that owt of here uwne Lond they hadden
as hit sehewetli here with-owten Faille

8o that of vytaylle they hadden

vetaylle,

;

visions

plente,

For swich a tynie hit longed forte be.
and whanne to-cederis was al this semble,

Fewrty thousend were?* acounted,
of clene pyked me?i to fyhte,

10164
for the 40,000

certeinle,

Ek worthy werrours and of gret Myhte.
Thus Endeth here now of here oaderyng,

men.

10168

and speketh how Me;'lyn brewht to Arthewr pe kyng
Socour and helpe owt of lytel Bretayngne,
10172
as here-after scholen ^e heren, jn certeigne,

tlie

mean-

Britain

[leaf 127 a]

Forthere tellyth this Storye here
litel

In

time Merlin,
with liis reinforcements
out of l.itlle
(p. 267;.

and what Meyne pat Merlin with him browhte
OAvt of litel breteigne, where he hem sowhte.

jn

lliey

liome for pro-

as

how

Uut

must send

Breteygne Merlyne spedde there,

10176

what be Leownces of Paerne, j vndirstond,
and Sire Fariens, and Antony of pat lond,
that of Baynoye tho steward was.
alle to the port

10180

conien they in that plas,

and jnto here Schepis they Entred anon

embarks

for

Great Britain.

;

thanne jnto grete breteigne sone go?uie they gon.

and

why
j

it is

that

do 30W

good Reson that

liit

to

Avas

36 vndirstonde

clepyd Breteigne Londe.

10184

wetene here Every Man

that aftyr pe distroccion^ of Troye, as

j

kan,

10158. ii-n.rncd, ?^ throuf;h correction.
10160. MS. diftrioed.
10164. }ii%. fictcich.
longed, (j roughly corrected fVom d.
10174-75. On the blank between these lines (at the top of
colninn 127(0 there is written in a later hand: ichcre it in caUijd

—

brijtd.

The origin
of the name
of Britain
is this
After tlio
destruction
of Troy,


The origin of the names of Great Britain

Two kings fled from there

hit behapped that two kynges departyd themne

For drede of greypois, as this doth kenne,

lest they wolden hem han slayn;

this caused these kynges forto gon thayn.

These twoyne kynges with grete meyne

thens departed ful hastyle,

of wheche the ton Brewt he hyhte,

that was bothe gentyl & worthy knyhte,

that ju his lyve he bylte with grete joye

a fair cyte, that was clepid new troye;

bencheson that owt of troye cam he,

Troye was clepid that jlike cyte.

Ek the centre thanne clepyd hit was

after Brewt Breteigne in that plas,

thanne long aftyr, whanne Brewt was ded,

anon kam there a kyng ju his sted,

that Logryvs was his nyht name,

a worthy man and of grete fame,

that mochel amendyd this cyte,

bothe Towres and walles, Sykerle.

and whanne thus amended was pat town,

thanne wolde he zeven hit a Sewrmoun,

and after Logryvs Logres cald hit he,

that ju grete breteigne stont, Sykerle.

So that this name dured forth, in feye,

long aftyr that Artheur gan deye.

thanne aftyr the deth of lawneclot,

that kyng Bannes sone was, wel j wot,

hyt happede that a grete mortalyte

jn that-lound was after, certeinde,

bothe of Barowns and communes also,

that thike tyme deyden so tho.

and for pe grete los that they haddyn thanne,

Bloye breteygne hit was clepyd of every manne

and why bloye, j preye now the?

leve sires, for this cause, parde:

10195. lyse on erasure.
10200. aft", t' added afterwards.
10201. MS. thanne with an n-mark superscribed.
10203. thine, 'er through correction.
10218. This line was omitted and then written up the right margin.
10222. cause on erasure.
For here hertes bothe blw and blak they were, 
eche man for here frendis dethis there, 
that they losten be mischaunce and be synne; 
thus every Frend from othir gan twynne.

Now hauen ye herd declared, ju certaygne, 
why hit was clepyd the Bloye Bretaigne.  

The tothyr prince that owt of troye cam, 
Hyghte Corynaws, a Ful myghty man. 
this corinaus was comen of Jeawntes lynage, 
a worthy knyght and of hygh parage. 
So that he aryvede fast by that contre, 
thike tyme the Name Ireteigne scholde be. 
thereto he was a merveyllous knyght, 
bothe long and strong and of gret myht. 
there arered he bothe townes and castel, 
Strongly j-bylt & wondyrly wel; 
and aftyr hym the lond he dide don kalle 
Cornwaylle yn breteygne of gret & smalle. 
So that thorwh hym comen jeavntes mo, 
that to Bretouns moche harme diden tho, 
as that here-aftyr now scholen ye here 
to alle 3oure wyttes declared more clere. 

of the merveilles that aftyr befalle, 
j hope to declaren to sow alle, 
3if that god wile granten me grace & myht, 
helthe of Body, and myn eyen syht, 
owt of Frensch jnto englysch now wyl j fonde 
hit to drawen, that 3e moun vnadirstone. 
Therfore for herry Loyelich that 3e preye, 
that til this be enlid, he may not deye, 
but lyven ju helthe and prosperite; 
Now, good lord, grante hit moot so be. 

Forth to my mater now wyl j pase 
of merlyne & his meine, pat ju the se wase, 
the whiche he browhte owt of lytel breteigne, 
as here-aftyr now scholen ye here more pleyne. 

the people’s hearts being blue and black with sorrow.
Merlin arrives at Bredigam with the auxiliaries. [CH. X.

Thanne anon as a-ryved they were, vpon the se banke he bad hem there. Thanne merlyne comanded every man here harneys al forto trossen than; For that he wolde For non thing that they maden non taryeng. But they holden here ryht wye Thyder as merlyn wolde hem gye, Tyl that to kyng Arthewr they comen ful ryht, there that he lay with al his myght. So that hym they folewedene alle, what so evere there-of myhte falle. So that be the Fyftihe dayes ende To pe Forest of Bredygam goone they wende, where as logged was Arthewr the kyng, that made gret joye of his comeng, and logged hem among his ost ful son, and amongs hem every day gan he to gon. Thanne aften viij dayes j-rested they were, and merlyne here vetyalle departyd there amongs hem, er that he furthere wente. Thanne seide he that he wolde veramente Gon visiter the thre kynges, where so they be, and how they ferde, to knowen & to se. Thanne Seyde Syre Vlyphyn to Hym Anon:

"merlyn, be war how that 3e gon, For they on the tothir syde don 3ow manace, 3if they mown geten 3ow jn ony place, that certeine 3e scholen be ded, and they mown 3ow geten jn ony sted."

"3e," quod merlyne, "3it wyl j not werne that to these kynges j wyl ful gerne. For of me geten they non power. And ek also amonges hem com j not ther, Tyl that j haue spoken with Arthewr the kyng:

j ne schal maken non taryeng.

10272. In the right margin, in a later hand: bredygam forseti. 10274. MS. maden. 10283. Vlyphyn added above the line; over y there is a tag like the one over an i. 10288. 3ow, w squeezed in afterwards.
and tharefore gouerne 3e wel this ost, 
that non man Jsswe, nethyr lest ne most. 
For kynge Artheures enemyes jloggde be 
here vndyr Bredygam, ful certeinle, 
and Forty thousand of hem ben told, 
wel horsed men, hardy and bold, 
and but xxv thousand men we haue; 
therefore we moste loken to kepe hem sawe, 
and of hem that non j-lost there be. 
To this mater vs behoneth to se." 

"Merlyne," quod Syre Ulphin thanne, 
"hit is bette 3e sende som other manne." 
"that schal j not," quod merlyne tho, 
"For that arende my-self best kan do 
and hem to bringen in Savete, 
that non of here enemyes hem schal se." 
"thanne goth 3e forth in goddis name, 
and he 3ow kepe from angyr & blame." 
thanne from hem he wente ful sodeynlye, 
that they ne wyste whanne, trewelye. 
so that they hem blesseden everichon, 
that so sodeinly he was from hem gon. 
Azen to the ost weneten they thanne, 
and there they charged every manne 
that owt of his tente they scholde not pase, 
but prevyly to kepen hem in that plase. 
So that fowre dayes conteneed this, 
& pet of pe iiij kynges non word they herden, jwys, 
Nethir of merlyn neuer the mo. 

For streyght to londone gan he go 
and, as this storye reporteth here, 
on the morwe or evensong was he there, 
where that he fond the kynges al thre. 
and they weren ful hevy, Sykyrle, 
For so sodeinly amongis hem commen he was, 
that they ne wisten owt of wheche plas. 
and whanne wisten that hyt was he, 
gret joye they maden, ful certeinle. 
thanne axeden they hym how he hadde sped,
Merlin predicts an easy victory. [CH. X.

Merlin asks the kings to join their army.

and sayde: "wel in every sted!"
and bad hem, faste that they scholde hye
To here ost, that hem Bod, trewelye.

Thanne seide kyng Ban To merlyn:
"bien owre Socours comen wel & fyn?"
"that they ben, Syre, ful trewelye,
and kyng Artheuris host ben logged faste bye
ju the lawnde besydes Bredygam;
there ben they logged every man.

He tells them that the auxiliaries have arrived.

but on the tothyr syde moche peple there js,
Ten kynges corowned, with-owten mys,
and ju here compenye a dewk also,
and xl thousand men they hauen & mo."
"For oure help now be god," quod Antron,
"For mochel mischef toward vs gyneth gon."
"je," quod merlyne to hym ryht thanne,
"as that j am now kyng Arthewris maene,
and be the oth that j haue hym j-do
and ek to my maister Blasye also :
be goddis helpe, and that j kan do,
To Evel ende schal j hem bringen echon.
For so moche to Done J schal Hem make,
that they ne scholten weten how on to take.
but gret Bataylle schal there be,
and gret occisiowh, ful Sykerle.

Merlin assures,

shall be discomfited,
[leaf 127 d]

without the kings losing more than eighty men.

The kings must start the same night,
with provisions for four days.

and sayde: "wel in every sted!"
and bad hem, faste that they scholde hye
To here ost, that hem Bod, trewelye.

10334. in Every ft on erasure; dashes before in and after Every to fill the blank.
10339. ful, f through correction.
10347. help added above the line.
10352. maist added above the line.
10356. MS. onto.—take, t blurred.
10362. thou fendis, w through correction.
The three kings start. Breakfast in the forest.

Anon as they vndirstodyn this,
Ful feste they hem ordeyne, j-wys. 10368
and whanne this thing was ordeyne & do,
thanne anon to Sowper gonnen they go.
And whanne they Supped hadden echon, 10372
thanne axe de kyng Arthewr merlyne anon
3if that armen they scholdhe hem thanne.
and merlyne answered & seide: "neure a manne,
For hit wolde 30w greven 30ure harneys to bere,
Tyl jnto 30were ost that 3e comen there. 10376
For 3e scholen neure dreden of non man;
iswich a weye j 30w leden now kan."

So whanne that alle j-Supped they hadde,
evry man to chambre wente ful gladle, 10380
and warne he lappede for the cold,
that non deseyse ne scholden hem hold.
and as hit was the wylle of god almyht, 10384
the mone schon thurwh-owt al the Nyht.
thussone alle forth gonne they gon tho,
pe thre kings, merlyne, & Antron also.
and forth they redyn al that Nyht,
ty that hit was a3ens day lyht.
So that they comen jnto a forest, 10388
there they alighteden hopa lest & mest,
and eten Swhich vetaylle as they brouhte,
So pat eche man be opere ful merye thouhte.

and whanne that they hadden eten echon, 10392
the kynges & merlyne to counseil gonne gon.
"Sire, weten 3e, Artheur, what j wold bene?"
But ryht a 3ong man of armes 3e bene,
and therto a grete rewun forto weynteigne.
Now vndirstonde 3e what j schal seyne:
Sonne of 30ure barowns with 30w they be
and also a parcel of 30ure commauncalte;
that maketh 30we 3iftes, ful sekerly,
whiche 3e han 30ven ful plentevosly.
and perfore 3if that evere large 3e were
of 3iftes to 3even bothe fer & Nere,
J 30w now charge that large 3e be
The hidden treasure. Arrival at Bredigam. [CH. X.

Of all of your gifts in each degree.
For meaning hearts gotten 3e neure, trewely,
So well as be great gifts, pleyonly.
For thereby now scholen 3e hane,
As much as 3e willing axen other crave."

"weteth wel, Syre, and understand
that great Tresor is in this land;
but unkownen to 3ow schal hit be,
Tyl that from bataylle 3e come, sikerle,
and perfore that 3e marken wel this place,
whanne alle thy Bataylle 3e don thon base."

They go to a well, and mark that spot.

Then they continue their ride,
and eventually arrive at Bredigam.

King Arthur encamps near a clear well with abundant water.

The weather is cold.

After two days,

Merlin advises the kings to prepare a sudden attack,

in order to win the hearts of the people.

Arthur will have enough to give,

for there is a treasure hidden close by.

and eventually arrive at Bredigam.

King Arthur encamps near a clear well with abundant water.

The weather is cold.

After two days,

Merlin advises the kings to prepare a sudden attack,

for there is a treasure hidden close by.

and eventually arrive at Bredigam.

King Arthur encamps near a clear well with abundant water.

The weather is cold.

After two days,

Merlin advises the kings to prepare a sudden attack,

for there is a treasure hidden close by.

and eventually arrive at Bredigam.

King Arthur encamps near a clear well with abundant water.

The weather is cold.

After two days,

Merlin advises the kings to prepare a sudden attack,

for there is a treasure hidden close by.

and eventually arrive at Bredigam.

King Arthur encamps near a clear well with abundant water.

The weather is cold.

After two days,

Merlin advises the kings to prepare a sudden attack,
Disposition of king Arthur's forces.

Tyl that evene on hem that 3e falle
jn pe dirk morweneng, er ony man calle.
For 3if that apaceyved there 3e be,
azens hem mown 3e not stonden, sikere.
and doth thus, & haueth non drede,
For azens pow scholen they han but lytel spede."

Thanne eche man harneysede hym anon
Jn armes to Bataylle fort to gon.
and the vovarde hadde sire kay
with kyng Arthewris baner, jn fay,
and with hym knyhtes bothe stowt & feers:
Sire giffle3 & sire lucawns the Botelers,
Marvg de la roche & Gwynaus the bloyes
with dryauut of pe forest savage & belyas Amoroys,
ek with hem forth paste Flawndrys the bres;
these viij forth pasten, with-overty ony les,
and with hem foure thousand jn compenye, the vomwarde to cavemen, ful Sykirlye.
The secund warde hadde Sire Bretel,
a worthy werrowr ful strong and lel;
and thre thousand with him he ladde, alle goode men and neuere on badde.
The thrydde warde there ladde tho
Sire Vlphyn, that jn armes mochel cowde do;
and in his compenye kyng Arthewr was there
with many a brown vndir that Banere,
and with hem fowre thousand jn compenye
of worthy Bodyes, an j schold not lye,
that neuere here lord holden faillen there,
tyl that to pe deth j-browht they were.
thus eche warde thanne took his way,
and forth they wenten, er hit were day,
and merlyn to-fore, the weye to lede,
Rydyng upp on a stalworthy stede.

Aftyr this devisede kyng Ban his meyne,
Disposition of Ban and Boors' forces. [CH. X.

and ek his brothir king Boors, ful sekerle, 10480
So that to sire pharens tooken they pe ferste warde
vndyr kyng Boors baner to ben here garde,
and with hym that tyme forth pere wente
Sire ladmas with niht good entente, 10484
and sire moret de laveye forth jn that pres,
Syre graciens the Bloys & pales Trebes
with Blyobers & sire melidyaus in compenye,
and with hem Sire madevs jn gret hye. 10488
So that thre thowsend with him wente
Of Ryht goode Bodyes, Veramente.

Sir Leonces, the second, 10492
the secunde warde of kyng Ban
Sire Leownces of Paerne ladde than,
and with him foure thousand ladde he
of goode bodyes jn his compenye.

king Boors, the third, 10496
the thrydde wynge ladde kyng Boors,
that of non werre took he non fors,
with foure thousand j-armed owt ryht,
that evere were redy forto fyht.

and king lan, the fourth, 10500
the Fourthe Bataylle ladde kyng ban,
Jn alle degrees a ful worthy man,
and his baner he took forto bere
To sire lyawne, his steward, there,
and foure thousand jn his compenye
with hym bothe forto lyven & dye.
and whazne that aH reedy they were,
an esy pas they pasten forth there.
and hit was tho past the mydnyht,
And perto pe mon schon ful bryht.
Eek therto pe wedyr was ful stytle,
Ful preve & esy at here owne wylle.

Now of this sesyth this styere,
and to hem of yrloind hit doth now hye,
and of the kynges that to hem marched be,
as here-aftyr scholcn 3e heren and se.

Now cometh hit here to Remembrance,
that kyng Brangors, with-owten variance, 10512

10488. gret hye on erasure.
and kyng margans, with hym there was, 10520
ek kyng hardybrans in that plas, hearing of
and with hem kyng Aymnadas, 10524
that uncle to kyng Augwys was,
whiche vte pendragon browht in bale
and him Slowhe, as reherseth this tale—
and whanne they herden telle put the Barouns
here londes hadden left and garysouns,
and to kyng Artheur comen they were
jn his werres to helpyn him there,
than these xj kynges jn fere
doche peple to-gederis gadered there,
So that they hadden thrytty thousand men
on horsbak with hem to ryden then,
with-owten Footmen gret plente,
and the contre distroyede, ful sekerle,
and slowen the peple, and deden owtrage,
and jn that Lond dyden ful gret damage.
For eure as they reden, they stroyen down ryht,
therto they ne leffen on lyve non wyht. 10536
and to pe castel vandalyer in Cornewaylle
they leyden a sege, with-owten faylle;
and neuer reneved myhten they be,
Tyl thedyr cam kyng Artheur, ful sikerle. 10540
But Whanne Kyng Arthwyr Herde of al this,
and the kynges that with hym weren, j-wys,
So whanne that acordyd they weren echon,
Fulsone on here weye thanne goone they gon.
but no more tellith this mater now here,
Tyl that to kyng Arthwyr don we pere,
and of merlyne, and to kyng Ban,
and of kyng Boors, how they spedden than: 10548
how jnto Bataylle that they gonne gon,
Azens the xj kynges that werea here fon,
that removed weren to Bredygan,
The wheche atte Sege pere lyen than. 10552

10525. kyng twice, the former crossed out.
10530. horfbak, o blurred.
10551. Bredygan, c corrected from e.
Stealthy march on the enemy. King Loth's dream. [CH. X.

Thus here Reporteth this Storye how that kyng Arthwr his ost gan gye and the kyng Ban his bataylles also agens the xj kynges forto go.

But these xj kynges wyster non thynge of kyng Artheures ordenaunce ne of his comeng; So that xnyht to bedde wente every man, For of kyng Artheur rowhten they not than.

but hit happede wel that xnyht, that pe xj kynges to-gederi j-plyht with the kyng of an hundred knyhtes were, For drede of non man badden they there.

Xo the mene whyle that they Slepten so, kyng loth jn a womdyr drem fyl tho:
hym thowhte that so gret a wynd pere was, so mervellous and boystows, jn that plas, that houses and clochers hit threw adown, and aftyr of thondyr he herde a gret sown, that hym thowhte al the world, j-wys, hit astoned & qwook for drede of this.

and aftyr him thowte, 3yt say he more:

a gret passyng water that was thore, that alle the howseng it bar a-down, and dreynthe the peple jn virown;

& hym-Self in peryl hym thowhte he was There to ben perscheld jn that plas.

Jn this maner dremejede Sirs loth, the kyng; and sone after he fyl jn wakynge.

and of his dreme he wondrede, j-wys; he gan hym blesse, & seide: "what meneth this?"

and to his meyne he wente anon, and tolde hem of his avisyoun.

They ask where he saw the sight.

He says it came from the forest, that thens hyt kam, him thowhte pat tyde.

Then they declare that it forebodes a battle; thanne echeman awok oper anon,
So that to armes faste gonne they gon, and awoken alle here compenye, Forto serchen the contre gonnen they hye. with this the bataylles togederes were, the xj kynges and Artheur jn fere. So that merlyne hastyd forth more meyne, That to-gederis they metten, ful Sykirle, they that the contre Serchen scholde and Artheurs meyne, hos wol oper nolde, To-gederis they weren, er they jt wytste, and merlyn to-fore rod for trusste, and whanne kyng lothis meyne say this, So moche peple peke armed, j-wys, they axeden of him that rod tofore, what peple it js, was armed thore, Merlyne seide: “Arthewris meyne; this lond to chalange hider come we a3ens hem that him don defende his lond to entren, er than they wende.”

anyn as they thanne this worde herde, a3en ful faste Bakward they ferde.

and whanne to the ost they comen ageyn, Anon thanne they gonnen cryen & seyn: “Treson, Treson amonges vs now js, and falsly we ben betrayed, j-wys.
as armes now bothe bachelor & knyht, For 3e hadden neure more nele to fyht.”

So that every man to his harneyes Sowhte, but some jn gret desisse weren browhte. 3it of on thing hit happeped hem wel: that here hors weren sadelyd eche del, but so sore j-hasted neure they were, as theke tyme they weren there.

and whanne that harneyssed they weren echon, a wondir aventure Fyl hem vppon: merlyne swich a wynd amonges hem sente,
which blows down their tents, and prevents them from seeing one another, whilst Arthur's men slay and destroy.

The hostile kings flee into the field, and set a bush on fire to collect their men. Those who can escape the violence of Arthur's men, flee to their banners, where horns are being sounded.

Thus 20,000 men re-assemble; 10,000 flee, and 10,000 are lying on the ground, [foot 129 a;]

unable to help or hurt.

that hit down blew bothe the pavylown and tente, and vpon here hedis hit Fyl a-down, So that they weren encombryd echon, and pertinent the storm so strong there was, that non man othr sawh in that plas. and this distorbled hem wondyr sere, er that alle Fullich redy pey were, which that Tornele hem to gret damage be Artheuris men, that dedyn owtrage, that Slowen and maden distroccioun of mochel of the meyne in virown.

But the xj kynges that departed were, and into the pleyn feld were flie for fere, they settyn a bush on lyht Fere themme, therby to hem to gaderen thanne. and so they deden, as they myghten gon,

For of hem pyte Artheurs meyne hadde non, So that er they knewen the day lyht, thre part of here meyne weren slayn in fyht. whanne they of the ost behelden al this, that azens hem was so mochel peple, j-wys, Eche man fledde to his Banere, where as pe horn herde he sownen there. For these kynges to-gederis j-gadered were East by the broad of the forest there. So that lytel and lytel they gonne releve, Tyl xx thousand they myhte preve, and x thousand torned forto fle on dyvers partyes, ful Sykerle, with weeping, cryeng, and with gret mone, For the harm that they hadden echone, and x thousand atte grownde lay down ryht, What Slayn and maymed every A Wyht, that non other there Socouren ne may, Ne non man desecisen be Nyht and day.

Whanne Arthuer beheld, al this herbergerye

10634. Jey added above the line. 
10641. fierd, st squeezed in afterwards.
10644. Artheurs, A through correction.
10650. horn added above the line. 
10652. MS. yafthy.
was thus removed, & so sodeynlye,
To merlyn kyng Arthewr cam anon,
and axede of hym what he scholde don.
"J schal 3ow telle," quod merlyne thanne,
"3e moste now werken as a wys 3anne.
vp to 3one passe 3e schole now gon,
where as these meyne be rested echon,
xx thousand jn on compenye, and 3ens hem that thou fyhte manlye.
and to 3ow schal comen jn Socowreng there
tyng Ban and his Brethyr so dere,
and from owt of the Forest scholen they gon.
and whanne the tothir partye loketh hem vppon,
So Sore abawed thanne scholen they be,
that lytel defens jn hem Scholen 3e se."

Thus ech from othyr departyd thanne,
and took But lytel reward of ony manne.
So whanne they thus to-gederis mette,
mane harde Strokes were there sette
with swerdis on helmes, and scheldes to-broke,
and sperys al to-schateryd, as seyth the boke.
with that cam kyng Ban & kyng Bors also
jn socowreng of kyng Arthewr tho.
there myhte men Se knyhtes down throwe,
and ful thykke jn the waye they lyen ful lowe,
and al the Feld there Blody was.
So moche peple was Slayn jn that plas.
thanne Syre kay, that on pas kepte,
Ful angwyssowsly thedyrward he lepte
with thre thousand jn his compenye;
3ens xx thousand than gan he hye.
and whanne the xj kynges on a rewe
behelden hem-self so manye & pe toper so fewe,
thanne sore ashamed were they echon;
thussone began there gret Bataylle anon.
Thanne so faste they to-gederis held
Bothe with swerd, spere, and scheld,

10664 Then Arthur asks Merlin what to do.
10668 Merlin replies:
"You must attack these twenty thousand;"
10670 Ban and Boors shall help you from the forest-side.
10672 That will throw them into confision;"
The battle

That ye scheltrum omnethis brekyn th[e]y myhte;
So Sore the xj kynges gonne to fyhte.
but longe myhte they hit not endure,
the stowr so strong was, j 3ow ensure.
Thanne cam Vlyphyn jn ryht gret haste,
and thorwgh that meyne fulsome he past.

And whanne with-jenne hem that he was,
Fulsore he fawht there in that plas.
and so they cryde and so they ferde,
that an hol myle the Noysse was herde.
So that wondir strokes weren there set
on scheldis and helmes, whanne they met,
and ek many man ded there was,
and manye hors to grownde wente jn that plas.
So that nochel harm was there do;
and Vlyphyn unhorsyd on grownde was tho.
Thanne Say Bretel his Brothyr on grownde,
and ful faste he prekedethedyr that stownde.
but thoughg that Vlyphyn on grownde were,
3it he defendid him with his spere,
that no man dorste hym there komen ny;
So sore he fawht and so manly.
whanne Sire Bretel sawli that hit was so,
his hors with the spores thanne took he tho,
and him so sore he smot that Tyde,
hym that on Vlyphyn there dide abyde,
that bothe hors and man there wente to grownde;
So sore he hym smot that ylke stownde.

whanne kyng clariouis beheld that chevalrye,
Ful angry he was and perto ryht sorye,
and aȝens Sire Bretel he gan to ryde
His felawe to socowren that ylke tyde.
Whanne sire Bretel Say hym come ryding so,
aȝens hym faste he gan to go,
and they to-gederis sonet men jn fere,
that bothe here scheldis thorwgh-persched were:
So grete strokis & harde smyten they tho,
For worthy knyhtes weren they bothe two.
So sore they fowhten, that hit was wondir,
Tyl bothe here speris borsten on sondyr,
and bothe here scheelde flowen intó þe feld;
Swich strokes there eche to oper gan 3eld.
and 3it Sorre rô-geris they mette,
for eech swich strokis on oper sette,
here éyen hem thowhte out of here hedes wente;
So sore they fowten there, veramente.
and therto so sore they astoned they ben,
and ëk here hors, as they that hyt Syen,
that they ronnen al there on blood;
So depe þn here syde the spores wood.
and therto with fowndryng here hors also
on here kneþ non skyn beleften tho,
So that hyt ran owt blood ful cler,
as they in the weye needen ther.
and so longe atte the ground they lye
and so fowle astoned there, trewdelye,
that they ne knewen nethyr day ne xyht;
So stronge to-gerderis they weren in fyht.
So ferforth they wenden that hem beheld,
that bothe hadden ben ded þere in þe feld.

So that on bothe partyes they comen ful blyve
To reskwen tho knyhtes and saven here lyve.
For they wenden, ded that they hadde ben,
on bothe partyes, as they hem Syen.
but whanne Sire kay this beheld,
that Sire Bretel lay þn the feld,
Theedyr he gan hym ful faste hye
Sire Bretel to Socowren, Trewdelye.
Thanne thre kynges æzens hym comen ryde
with gret anger, haterede, & with gret pryde;
with these æzens kyng Arthewr they were
what that they cowden with scheld oper spere.
and þe topér xþ kynges, verament,
Ful harde they fowhten and with good entent,
amongis whom Sire Gyrfles beten he was

10747. ben crossed out before a unfolds.
10755. fore (?) crossed out before longe.
and Lucans are undersoned:

and Lwcauns the Botelers in that plas.
Thanne kyng Brangors & kyng Ydyers as two kynges bothe stowt and Feers, 
Ek kyng Angwyseax and kyng Vryens eche with oper rod forth in presens.

So that there began ful stronge melie bothe partyes to reskwen, Sekerle.

for Ful merveillous weren the strokes and stronge that thike partyes weren there amonge.

So that with lyn fores and strengthe there, among alle the enemys that pere were, there reskwed sire Kay with strengthe & myht
Sire Cirles, and horsyd hym anon ryht

upp on kyng Newtres, with-owten lye.

and perto kyng loth, ful certeynlye, with a tronchon of a speare was so bete, that sothely he wende his lyf to lethe.

The battle

And in this mene while there kam anon the kyng of an c knyhtes ful son
and with hym xl knyhtes of prys,
as he wolde chesen at his devys,
the beste that weren in his compeny
amongis alle oper that he cowde disereye.

and whanne pat he sawhe sire Kay pere present,
that kyng loth So hadde beten, verament,

Wherfore ful sory He Was that tyde,
and faste thedyrward he gan to ryde, and toward Syre Kay he rood ful faste,

whyles that the breth of his hors myhte lasie,
and there so sore to hym he rod,
and non lengere there he ne abod,

and smot Syre kay so in the Scheld,

and took his hors with-owten more,
and to kyng Loth he ladde hit there,
CH. X. ] at Bredigam.  

and seide: “syre, where is 3oure thouht?  
Lo, 3oure enemyes hors j haue 3ow browht!  
Now worth ype here with ryht good chere,  
and on 3oure enemy ben avenged here.  
For this day han 3e lost mochel thyng  
of worchepe that belongeth to a kyng.”  

So vppon that hors he wente anon,  
and toward Sire kay gan he gon.  
and whanne Sire Gyrfles this beheld,  
That Sire kay lay in the feld,  
and Lwaneys ek dyde also,  
how that Sire kay suffrede anger & wo,  
Ful Sorweful they werew thanwe,  
and faste thedyrward they gjonnen hem hye  
with two Lawnces bothe stowt and grete;  
with som of these meyne there gjonne they mete.  
So sore they countrden that jike stownde,  
That eech two knyhtes pere bar to grouwnde,  
and took pe best hors be pe neyne anon,  
and there-with Sire kay presentyd fulson.  
thanne he hym horsede, for xede he hadde,  
For fersh he was ful sore be-stadde.  

thanne the kyng of an hundred knyhtes  
and kyng loth with hym anon ryghtes,  
that with strong forse, myht, and mayn  
kyng Newtres of Garlot they horsede ageyn  
on morettes hors de la Roche.  
thanne to kyng ydyers gjonne they Reproche,  
and Sire Gwynaws the bloys hors they took,  
and pere-onne hym horsede, as seith the book.  
and the dewk Escan of kambenie  
was horsed also anon, with-owten lye,  
vppon dryauutes hors of the forest Savage,  
that toforn in bataylle dyde gret owtrage.  
and whanne alle these meyne j-horsed were,  
thanne thowhten they to ben avenged there  
vppon here damages, that they haddem toforn;  
but er they wente, al was forlorn.
Thanne thowhten the viij kynges tho, that ful wel they wenden hauen j-do, but lyhtly they losten al jn fere.

For kyng Arthewr fulsome aspyde there, and kam jn conforteng of his meyne, 
ëk thorwh that meyne paste he, sykerle, and so the hors with his spores he smot, that owt hit sprung the Fyr so hot.

And sire Vlphyn fond he groundyd there with his swerd on hande hym forto were and Sire Bretel at gret mischief also, that vnnethis to horsbak myhnte he go, wherfore ful sory that tymne he was, and forth he prekede jnto that plas:

with a spere bothe myhty & strong jnto the pres there gan he fong,

and there mette wyth Tradelamamad, kyng of north wales, as j vnndirstond. anon so sore he there with him mette,

And swych a Strok He on Hym sette, and smot hym eveene amydodes the scheld, that over he fyl there jn the feld. therto his left Scholdre he smot a-down, that he fyl there over the hors arsown. kyng Arthewr the hors took jn that plas be the Brydel, that ful wel cylt was, and lad hit to Sire Vlphyn anon, and bad that he scholede faste vp gon on hors-bak to ben avenged there vppon his enemy, that dyde hym dere—

"and thenketh vppon the grete velonye that je han Suffred, and gret anoye."

thanne horsede hym Sire vlphyn hastely, and Seyde: "sire kyng, now gromessy!"

anen he prekede jnto that pres, kyng Arthewr & he, with-owten les. thanne there began so strong melle, that pyte and rowthe hit was to se.

10864. MS. jnto the. 10877. MS. onhors bak.
For there broken they the buschscheme that vpon his meyne there was present, 10888
So that they vpon the tothyr partye 10892
Ful mochel harm cawhten, Sekerlye,
and jit half meyne more they hadde, that kynge Arthwyr thedyr with hym ladde.
So that gret ocision vere thanne was of many bodyes in that plas.
So that kynge Arthwyr merveille3 wroght vere, 10896
that eche man dradde hym every where;
So that no man dorsten abyden his hond, For that tynde dorste hym non man abyde,
So sore he fawht that ylke tyde.

Whanne the kynge of an hundred knyhtes
Sawh Tredelemaunt anon ryghtes,
that at pe erthe stille he lay,
Ful Sory he was that ylke day (For he lovede hym ful speceyaly),
and faste ageyn Artheur he gan hym hy,
and his hors with the spores he smot
a3ens kynge Arthwyr evene foot hot,
and hym ful spetowsly smot in that plas,
so pet kynge Arthwyr sore astoned was.
and whanne kynge Arthwyr that strok felte,
anon his lyvere abowtes he delte,
but jit sorye he was, ful trewelye,
for sire kay, that was in his compenye.
kynge Arthwyr left vpe his swerd anon,
and to pe kynge of an hundred knyhtes gan he gon
and thorwh the left Scholdere han hym bore.
that beheld anon the toper kynge thore;
and whanne he sawh the strok comenge,
aweyward faste can he flynge,
and his scheld vpon his hed he caste,
but kynge Arthwyr to hym pere thraste,

10917-18. left Scholdere corrected from helm Scholde; the original bore altered into bere; the stressed vowel of the rhyming word (in 10918) might be read either e or o.
10921. scheld, d squeezed in afterwards.
The stroke cleaves the shield,
that hit flew half into the field.
So that his strock discendid there
on his hors hed, with-owten dwere;
So that bothe to grounde they wente.
and pat beheld syre kay, veraymente, 
and say that hors astray there gon, 
and to his fadyr Antron he ladde it anon.
So that in the sadel ful sone he was, 
and pereof was joyful in that plas.
thorwh the helm he claf atwo hys hed,
that js the feeld he fyl down ded.
The Secund he smot so in the scheld,
that arm and al flew into pe feld.
and Sire gyrfles, that Sire Iwcaunys was by,
Sore hym defendyd an ful myhttyly.
3it ek anothyr Sire Bretel Smot,
That at his feet he fyl ful hot.

10976. Sir Girfles, who has been assisting
Lucans, gets new courage.
He leaves the head of one,
cuts off the arm of another,
and throws a third to the ground.
Sir Girfles, who has been assisting
Lucans, gets new courage.
Lucans is remounted,
and full of vengeance.
He rides against the king of Scotland,
Sir Moret's adversary,
and tells him.
Sir Moret jumps into the saddle,
sees some friends struggling,
forces his way through the press,
and relieves them.

Whanne that Sire Gyrfles Sawll he had socour,
Ful manfully fawht he thanne in that stour,
and the first that he mette there,
is arm of smot he qwyt & clere,
that to the eryhe he Fyl down ryht.
onon Sire Iwcaunys, that worthy knyht,
upon that hors fulsone he was,
and sory man & angry in that plas,
that his schamefulnesse wolde avenge.

thanne some prekede he into that renge,
where as gwycher he say, of scotland kyng,
that on Moret, his felawe, was abydyng.
Sire Iwcaunys his hors there smot so sore,
and with Gwycher pe kyng mette he there,
So that thorwhe hawberk and haberionw
Sone into the feld there smot hym down.

thanne whanne Sire Moret beheld tho this,
Ful sone in that Sadel he was, j-wys,
and forth he prekede into that pres,
and for non man ne wolde he ses.
thanne Belyas & Flawndryn say he there,
that upon twyne of his Felawes rested were,
upon dryawn and dynas,
that with Arthure weren in that plas.

but so gret was there that pres with-jinne,
ër sire Moret to his Felawes mylhte wynnne,
So that so sore there gan he fyhte,
that hit was merveyl to ony mannes syhte;
and so wel there he hym bar in that fyht,

10961. thorwh, the r-mark added afterwards.
The battle

that his felawes he rescwede anon ryht.

And al this mene whyle Arther the kyng,
vppon the tothyr side ful sore was bekeryng,
and anothyr kyng þere hym ageyn,
So þat gret noyse gan ryson, þyn certeyn,
on partye to reskwen þere kyng Arther,
anothyr partye hym to wercyn Langouwr.
So that anon bataylle began there ful strong
betwixen bothen partyes hem among,
but evere bothe kynges on horsbak were.
but kyng Arthewr they myhten don no dere,
For Kyng Arthwyr and His mwyne tho
to the partye thanne wrowhten ful wo;
and streyth to rescwewn he forth wente
Sire Gyrfles and Sire kay, veramente,
that with kyng Newtres & with Brangores,
with kyng Vryens & with kyng Ydiers
and êk the Fyfte kyng abygawnt also—
these fyve these knyhtes hadden don moch wo;
he hadde they so beten and unhorsed bothe,
that aschamed they weren & of here lyves bothe,
and these two knyhtes non ðer Socowr hadden there
but goode Syre Lweawns the Botelere.
and there this sire Lweawns so hym þer bar,
that there-often wondrede kyng Arthwyr thar,
and beheld the grete xede that they weren þyne.
thanne for non thying ne wolde he blyrne,
but into that pres þrekede as a wood lyown,
and on bothe sides dyde he mochet distroectiown,
that non man there dorste his strok abide;
So sore fawht kyng Arthwyr þyn that tyde.
and on bothe his sydes he slowh down ryht,
so hydous & angry was he in fyht.
and êk Sire kay and Sire Gyrfles;
with Arthwyr sore fowhten they in þat pres.
on the topere syde syre Antron, Vlphyn, & sire Bretel
azens dukes & kynges fowhten wondyrly wel.

10998. MS. refesced.
11014. kyng Vryens, MS. kyng Nevtris.
11029. on added above the line.
wyche weren dewk escam and kyng Tradelyvand, 11036
and ażens chybret, kyng of Northumberland, 11040
and ek ażens kyng karados also,
that a worthy werrow was helden tho.
and alle these ażens kyng Artheur gonnen ryde,
and there sore fowhten they in that tyde.
For eche ażens oþer so sore justed there,
that they to-borsten bothe Scheld & spere.
For ne hadde socour to kyng artheur some þere be,
the wers hadde he had, ful certeynle.
For eche ażens oþer so sore justed there,
that they to-horsten bothe Scheld & spere.
ne hadde soco»; to kyng artheur sone here be,
the wers hadde he had, ful certeynle.
for tho kynges and kyntes on þe toþer side,
ful worthy men they weren that tyde;
ek dowble they hadden ażens kyng Artheur,
that vnnen the they myhten abyden that stowr.
Thanne happede, kyng Ban and kyng Bors
that owt of þe forest comen with gret fors
jn releveug of kyng Arthwdr there;
but þe toþyr partye of hem not war were.
Anon they gonuen hem askryen so Lowde,
that hit dynede into the clowde.
Ful fresch they comen owt of that forest
as worthy kynges, to fyhten ful prest.

Thanne behelden al this these oþer barowns,
and wisten wel that non distrocciouns
myhte comen but thorwghse theke partye;
wherfore to cownseille they gonue hem hye,
and to-gederis assembled eþn a medewe þere,
al these Lordynges to-gederis Þu fere,
and tooken cownseyl what they myhten do.
thanne seide kyng Loth to hem rýht tho:
"j wot wel that eþh of vs here fyhten muste,
but to on thyng þe mown wel troste:
that j my-self ażens fowre oþer thre,
be my josteng onercomen scholen be.
Forte avengen myn Noysaunce
on hem j thanke to don veniaunce.
for mochel peple han we lost here,
The battle

whiche that they scholen beyen ful dere."

And whanne the kyng of an .c. knyhtes hende kyng Loth thus Speken owtryhtes, gret preyseng to hym 3af he thanne, as belonged to swich a worthy manne,

And Swor By His creawnce Anon Ryht that the same wolde he don yn Fyht.

And kyng karados & kyng Newtres also the same oth sworen they bothe two.

And the dewk escam of kambenye the same oth there swor, Sekerlye, and ek kyng clarioun of Northumberland the same oth swor, as j yndirstond.

"Now schal j seyen 30w," quod kyng Loth thanne, "what we scholen don now every manne.

sixe of owre feleschepe we scholen ordeygne azens 3one busschement, ju certeyne ;

and here scholen beleven othyre fyve azens this meyne to fyhten ful blyve.

for xi kynges here we now be to fyhten azens al this meyne.

So that azens this busschement welen we go with .x. thousand fyhtyng men and mo,

and viij thousand scholen we leven here kyng Artheur to anoyen ju alle manere.

and toward þe forest welen we go ;

tyl azens the Xyht lete vs don so.

and oure purpos thanne bettere scholen we have and therto owre meyne moche bettere Save.

For 3if that we abyden here stylle,

they ben ful lyk to werkyn vs ylle."

To this counsyel of kyng loth þere anon thussonc concentyed they everychon.

thanne assembled to-gederis they were, and here hol meyne departed there.

So that kyng Loth took with hym the kyng of an hundred knyhtes so grym, augwyssseans, & dewk escam of kambenye,

11087. of twice, the former crossed ont.—ordeggyn, the last letters through correction.
with xij thousand men in here partye, where-often that vj wynges they hadde and in eche wyng ij thousand they ladde. So that forth they reden an esy pas, tyl that they comen into the same plas that kyng Loth pere ordeyned before, for better consayl myht not han ben thore. thus the vj. kyngges forth they went, and .v. abyden thanne there presente. Forth werren upp on Artliwr the kyng hym forto anoyen with sore fyhttyng.

Now of the .v. that leften behynde j schal sow tullen, as cometh to mynde. kyng Brangores & kyng Vrynens, kyng Newtres, kyng clariouns, men of defens, which was kyng of Northumberland, and of north wales kyng Tradelyvand, alle these were in on compenye with vij thousand men, certeynye, and drouth hym to-gederis in busschement, as this storye here reporteth, verament. For lyk as good bodyes as they were, Ful manfully defendid hem there. but ful greit harm and damage hit was of the greit werre, was in that plas be-twen kyng Arthewr & kyng Lothis meyne. that tyme began there ful strong mele, which that durede, tyl evensong was don, and many a man to deth there gan gon.

vppon the tothyr partye entrede kyng Ban, and kyng Bors kam with hym than,
With Leownces and Syre Faryens Also, that the ferste Bataylle ladden tho.
So that they comen an ese pas, tyl they weren alle ensymblyd in that plas, and azens hem kam kyng ydyers, as he was kyng ful stowt and fers.

11112 rides towards the forest; 11116 the others remain.

The five kings who remain are Brangores, Urieiis, Newtirs, Clarious, and the king of Northumberland.

11128 They draw themselves together,
11132 and defend themselves manfully.

The five kings who remain are Brangores, Urieiis, Newtirs, Clarious, and the king of Northumberland.

11136 till after evensong.

Against those approaching from the forest (leaf 189 d)

11140 cf. p. 280
11144 goes first king Ydiers.

11145. hem corrected from kom; the a of kam corrected from e, for original y (thus originally: azens kom ky . .).
And whanne that to-gederis there they mette,
many sore strokes to-gederis they sette,

So that the noyse myhte wel han ben herd
a long half myle; so sore they Ferd.
Ful gret occision thanne there was
bothe of men and hors jn that plas,

but certeyn kyng Ydiers meyne
that storm miht not suffren jn non degre,
but fleedden awey for discomfyture

To kyng gwyseawns, j zow ensure,
whiche sone hem conforted sothfastly.
and a strong bataylle began peve, trewely,

So that Sire Faryens and his meyne
at gret mischef weren, ful Sykyrle,

and whanne leownces of Paerne be-held al this,
Ful sone to reskews he rod, j-wys,

and so sore rod vpon that meyne,
that jn that place ne lefte he, Sykerle,
Non that dorste hym there abyde;
So socowred he Pharyens jn that tyde,

and thus drof he forth that compagnye
Into the dewkis ost of kambeny,

The duke pushes forword,

makes the fugitives return,

and renews the combat,

Now kyng Ydiers exclaims:

Whanne the dewk hem Sawh comen so,
thanne jn his herte he was ful wo,
and azen hem faste he gan to ryde
that hem so chasede jn that Tyde.

and thanne they that flower to-for,
azen with the dewk returned there,
and there began ful strong Bataylle,
whan that eche partye gan other assaylle.

thanne thussona entrede kyng Bors there
with his hol meyne al jn fere,
and there so sore they meten jn same,
that betwene tho partyes was now game.

and whanne kyng ydiers kyng Bors beheld,
that So kam prekyng jn the feld,
thanne to his feleschepe there seide he anon:

11160. at, t on erasure. 11172. hem, e corrected from y.
"God vs defende now everychon
this day from the peryl of ded
of hym that cometh here jn this sted!
For hym j knowe he his armure,
that he is knyht bothe good and sure.
For neure his place he wyle forsake
For now dismembre ne for non wrake.
and perto he is so worthy a knyht,
Jn al this world non bettere jn fyht.
for thowli al the world were hym ageyn,
but his owne brothyr hit were, jn certeyn,
of prowesse Js there non man
that jn bataylle dar abyden hym than."

Anon the kyng of an hundred knyhtes thanne
askede of kyng ydiers what was that manne.
thanne answerede kyng loth to hym ageyn,
& seide hit was kyng Bors of Gawnes jn certein.
"but, certein, j ne wot how he here kam ;
and behold, with hym he ledeth many a man !"
"what,? quod the kyng of an hundred knyhtes the,
"how jnto this contre scholde he comen so ?"
"j not, so me god helpe !" quod kyng loth thanne,
"but this day behoves th now every manne
to preven hym-self a worthy knyht
azens this kyng Bors here in fyht."
Anon Answerede Kyng Karados thanne :
"j not, this day ho pet kan preven hym a manne,
xethyr this day what we scholen do ;
but j my-self azens hym now wile j go.
and 3if owy mester that j hane of Socour,
loke 3e not me Faylle for non langour."
therto they graunten everychon :
h he took his leve, and forth gan to gon.
thus kyng karados wente forth thane
and with hym jn compenye many a manne ;
an esy pas and sadly they wente,
til that kyng Bors they metten presente.
and whanne that so ny to-gederis they were,
of an archer a bowe drawht there,
bothe parties to-gederis mette so faste, 11224
that eech othyr here speres gome brest, so that on bothe partyes they fyllen a-down, 11228
and of karados meyne gret occisiown, thanne drowen they owt here swerdis blyve, 11232
and manye a man there loste his lyve.
thanne kam kyng Bors to an old knyght, and bad hym gon forth hym be-fore, 11236
where man that Blaaryus hyht, that the Bretowns his armes myhten sen there.
and hym comanded his Baner to bere (and this knyght dorste not refusen it there),
and this knyght dore he not Refusen it there),
and baw hym gon forthe bfore, that the Breetows his armes myghtere sere.
that thro wyth armes and barneys he gan him bere.
that thonwh armes and barneys he gan him bere.
So thorwh the body there he hym smot, thanne kyng karados loste his meyne;
that down he fyl thanne, god hit wot, and swich desteny that knyght cam vnto.
that down he fyl thanne, god hit wot, and swich desteny that knyght cam vnto.
and brak his Nekke in his fallynge tho;
and brak his Nekke in his fallynge tho;
Swich desteny that knyght cam vnto.
Swich desteny that knyght cam vnto.
thanne kyng Boors drowh owt his swerd, that thro wyth armes and barneys he gan him bere.
thanne kyng Boors drowh owt his swerd, that thro wyth armes and barneys he gan him bere.
and amonges that meyne pere so he ferd, and whanne the peple Say hym faren so,
and amonges that meyne pere so he ferd, and whanne the peple Say hym faren so,
Ful faste to flyht thanne gome they go.
Ful faste to flyht thanne gome they go.
thus kyng karados loste his meyne;
thus kyng karados loste his meyne;
For kyng Bors they gomen alle to fle.
For kyng Bors they gomen alle to fle.
that beheld the kyng of an hundred knyhtes ;
that beheld the kyng of an hundred knyhtes ;
to Socoure karados he kam ful Ryhtes 11252
with ij thousand knyhtes in companye, to Socoure karados he kam ful Ryhtes
that bolde werriours weren and worthye, with ij thousand knyhtes in companye
and there fulsome to-gederis they mette, that bolde werriours weren and worthye,
and manye harde strokes to-gederis smette. and there fulsome to-gederis they mette,
For there to spoken of kyng Bors prowesse, manye harde strokes to-gederis smette.
how that he fawht there in that presse !
Also ek on the tothir kynges syde

11226. of, a corrected from k.
they fowhten ful strongly that ylke tyde,
bothe kyng karados and the tothyr kyng,
that of an hundred knyhtes hath gouernyng.
[for] so strong was the Bataylle thanne,
that at mischief there was many a manne.

Thanne kyng Ban of Baynoyk entrede anon,
and with his meyne he entrede ful son,
and there his steward his armes bar
with a crowne of gold and azure thar
with two bendis travres, zelw & grene;
As ony flowr opor herbe there was hit sene.
and of this Sixe knyhtes jn swte hadde he,
bothe hors and man al jn on degre;
Bothe trappures and Testerys, Al that per Was,
so was arrayed there jn that plas.
and whanne these kynges syen this syht,
wondirly they werez ful sore a-fryht,
and seiden they mosten forsaken here place,
For they knewen there non othir grace.
thanne to hem assembled kyng Loth,
Ful sore wepyng there, wel j wot,
and seide there to his compeny:
"Now wot j wel, ful Sekerlye,
alle is lost that we haunen jdo."
So bothe partyes thanne metten they tho;
So sere here lawnces they borsten on sondyr,
that al the erthe qwaked hem vudyr;
and out of helmes pe fer owt flew,
that many a man hit Sawh on rew;
and with the strokis pat werez hem betwyne,
alle that forest hit deneled with-jnne,
that half a myle men mylten hit here,
ho that jn that feld tho were.
whanne that kyng Ban ful sembled was
ajens the tothere jn that plas,
there nolde but fewe there thanne abyde.
Anon vppon pe fyve kynges gan he ryde

11263. The first word is illegible, the paper being damaged.
The battle

and ek vppon here hole meyne;
For pere made kyng Ban gret mortalyte.
For anon as they kyng Ban aspyde,
Ful faste they fledden that jike tyde
For the gret occasiion
that kyng Ban made abowtes hym jn virown;
and gret martyrdom he made also,
and thus jn ecche rong pere gan he go,
bothe on lefte syde and ek on pe nyhnte;
he kyd hym there as kyng and knyhte.
So that j-dowted he was ful sore
of alle his enemyes pot were thare.

Thanne forth cometh kyng Loth tho
and the kyng of an hundred knyhtes also,
and Sire margamur here thridde felawe was,
with here Bataylles jn that plas.
For thusson the bataylles jnedlyd were
on with-jnne anoper nyht sone there,
and whazme that they behelden kyng Ban,
that so gret damage dyde there than,
kyng Loth there-wth was angry tho,
and ek the tothyr kyng was ful wo.
with here spores smeten they here hors thame,
and bothe they reden azens kyng Banne,
for kyng Loth was a worthy knyht,
and that he kydde there in his fyht.
For with his spere he smot so kyng Ban,
that a cantel of his scheld jnto pe feld flew tham.
and whazme that kyng Ban felte thys,
Fulsore he was ameyd there, j-wys.
Anon his goode sword he lefte on hy,
as a man that was bothe wroth and angry,
and to the kyng of an hundred knyhtes he rod,
and hym so smot, there that he stod,
vppon the helm; but hit clawedede adown
There vppon his horsis arsown,
that Trapped was jn erne & stel.
but hit that Strok hyt bot ful wel,
For the hors chine asondir there he smot,
that bothe to grownde wenten fot hot.

And whanne this kyng of an .c. knyhtes
Felte hym so feld there jn fyhtes
And therto His Hors Vndyr Hym so Ded,
thanne was he ryht of Sory red.
Vpe sone he rekouerede forto stond,
and his swerd took jn his hod,
and leyde his Scheld vppon his hed,
For fulsore he dowtede of ded.

Whanne that kyng Brangores beheld al this,
that pe kyng of an hundred knyhtes, j-wys,
was thus feld and leyd on grownde,
amon to kyng Ban he rod that stownde,
and smot hym evene a-myddes the scheld,
there as he hovede jn the Feld.
and kyng Ban Sone there tornede ageyn,
and vppon the helm he nawht hym, ful pleyun,
that his copsyhe of yrne and Serce also
evene asondyr smot he tho,
that to the grownde he fyl down ryht,
For lengere to sytten hadde he non myht.

Aftyr, whanne these kynges rekouered were,
azens kyng ban Sore Fowghten they there.
but he dede hem mochel more grevance,
thanne they hym deden, with-owten dowtance.
For jyt nas there non of the kynges two
but that mochel of here blood hadden lost tho.
what be here hurtes & woundes bothe
Ful feynt to fyghten they were forsothe.
but jyt mochel harm there was j-do
betwixen thike thre kynges tho.
and whanne the bataylle entre-mellid were,
asondyr sone weren they departyd there,
whethyr that eyther partye wolde oper non;
but jyt amonges hem moche harm was don.

Thanne hyt happede that ylke tyde,
that kyng Artheur jnto that pres cam ryde,

11336. bothe crossed out before fot.  11344. MS. douteled.
End of the battle

and fond kyng Ban fyghtyng on fote,
wherfore he was ful wo, god wote.
but evere he fawht So sore there,
that non man ne dorste comen hym nere,
and so forth wente thorwh the pres
vigorously fyghtyng, with-owten les.
but there wolde non man his strokes abyde,
So merveyllous they weren in that tyde.

thanne entrede kyng Artheur on pe to[thyr] partye
thorwh al the pres ful manfullye
with his swerd on honde, that Sowled hit was
with hors blood & meanes in that plas.
For manye merveylles wrowhte kyng Arthewr,
For in armes he was bothe Styf & stowr,
but whazne he Say kyng Ban at sweche myschef,
hym thowhte hit was to hym gret repref.

Anon kyng[...] Arthewr aspyde a knyht,
that nyaly was arayed forto fyht.
with his swerd to hym kyng Arthewr rod,
and non lengere there he abod,
but with his swerd smot hym so sore,
that jnto the teth he clef his hed thore,
that ded to the grounde he fyl anon.
And kyng Arthewr be pe reyne his hors took son,
and to kyng Ban he ledde hyt ful faste.
“my leve frend,” he seide, “worth vp in haste,
For amonges youre enemies ye han j-be;
this place to forsaken sone scholen ye hem se.”

Whazne that kyng Ban Recovered was
Be helpe of kyng Arthewr in that plas,
Gret Joyce Botho to-gederys they made,
and amonges here enemies they prekeden ful glade.
Anon as they on the tothyr partye
kyng Arthewr and king Ban dyden aspye,
anon so discomfyt weren they tho
of the harm pat these two kynges hadden j-do,
that they hadden j-lost clene here talent

11379. thc, the abbreviation mark in darker ink.
11381. MS. p to phy.
11389. MS. kyn.
to fyghten or ony dede don, verament, but Towardis the wode they wente ful faste. And er they myghten hit keueren atte laste, mochel occesioun was don there be-twixken the wode and the revere there here Stale they rested & kepte, Anon here meyne there to hem lepte, and jn peryl of deth echon, For vnnethis to hem askaped ony on. Whanne kyng Newtris and kyng loth tho and the kyng of an hundred knyghtes also, also kyng karados & kyng ydyors, ek kyng Vryens & kyng Brangors, that tho was kyng of Northumberlond, To on partye they drowen, j vndirstond, Thaunce seyde maganors to hem anon: “with youre meyne j rede that ye hens gon For al hit is j-torned to scomfyture and to distroccion, j 3ow ensure.”

Thus hem enchasede kyng Artheur tho, kyng Ban and kyng Bors also, tyl that they comen to on rever, that ful wondryly depe was there ;
where as pe fugytyves a brygg make thare for to passe over that lake.
So that they pasten ouer echon, and these thry kynges aftyr gone gon.
thaunce merlyn Seyde to kyng Artheur tho:
“Sey me now, what thynekst pou to do?
thyne enemyes hast thou ouercomen echon, therfore jn-to thin owne contre thou gon,
and with the thy frenedes thou lede,
be whom pat pou hast had ryght good spede, and hem do thou worschepe and honoure,
For they han holpen the jn many a stour.
For jn-to the Forest moste me go there with my fren Blasye to spoken also.”

11432. *woodyly, I through correction.
11436. *there twice, the former crossed out.
MERLIN.—II
Merlin goes to Blasy.

Thus Arthur and Merlin depart.

Merlin tells Blasy of his intercourse with Arthur, and of all that has happened.

Blasy writes it in his books.

Now let us return to King Arthur.

Chap. XI

After the defeat of the eleven kings, tents are pitched.

[New here putteth this like Storye]

[N]ow here putteth this Like Storye

[of] these xj kynges Jn memerye,

[and o]f the dever of Askam also,

[that] be merlynes cowmseyle comwred werez tho, 11476

[and] hou how joyful from Blasy he cam,

[and] hou that kyng Arthewr ordelyn hym than.

[than]ne departyd kyng Artheur thens anon, and merlyn jnto the forest jis he gon

To spoken with Blasye, that hym bod there, that of many thinges dide hym emwqwere.

and merlyne seide j-he hade j-be
to conseillen kyng Artheur, Sykerle.

"that is wel don," qued Blasye thanne,

"hym to conseillen as a wis manne,"

than toble Merlyne to blasye anon

of al th things that hadden be don,

and hon kyng Arthewr jnto lytel breteyne sente

there socoure to haven, veramente.

Sethen he tolde hym ek also

of the grete Bataylle pat was j-do,

and of the seomyfure of the xj kynges.

So that this Blasye wrot alle these thinges,

and jnto his Book pere wrot he emery thing,

Be whom now perof haven we knowlieching.

[But] of Al this Bataylle Leven We now talkyng,

[an]d let vs Spoken of anothyr thynge,

[Ne]thir of Blasie ne of merlyne at this tyde

[No] more to spoken, but let vs forth glyde,

[an]d to kyng Arthewr & to the twyne kynges also

[tha]t jn his compeny e gozmen forth to go,

[and] ek of other baronage jn compeny,

[tha]t with kyng Arthewr weren, Sekerlye.

11457. fente above crossed-out wente.
11465–90. The beginning of each of these lines is destroyed through the leaves having stuck together. Traces, partly quite distinct, are to be found on the other leaf.
11475. leuwynt crossed out before Askam.
[So] that they casten hem there to abyde  
[and]d For To resten hem that jike tyde.  11482
[th]aume governours of pe ost gome they ordynen there:  
[S]ire Leownce, Sire gyrflet, & Sire Lwcawns the botelere.  
[th]aume Sire Faryens to sire Leownces j-joyned he was  
[Towar]dis the wode to kepyn jn that plas;  
[and] Sire Lwcawns and sire gyrflet  
[kepte]n the medewes bothe drye and wet.  11488
[and] the remnaunt to reste gomen to gon,  
ly[k a]s pertay they hadden Nede everychon.  
So that they eten & dronken, & maden here play,  
and there hem restede, tyl hit was day.  11492
For j-nowh they hadden of the Beste,  
bothe riche and powre, to gladyn his geste.  
Thus they hem restede, tyl hit was day;  
And thaume kyng Arthewr comanded, jn fay,  
that al the good that geten was  
and ek al the rychesse Juto on plas  
that to-gederis scholde ben browht, ful pleyn,  
For he wolde departhy hit pere, jn certeyn.  11500
and whaume that they hadden herd here masse,  
they weneto there as al pe trosor wasse,  
and there on hepis as that hit lay,  
These thre kynges, with-owten delay,  
departyd this good pere to every man,  
as that hem thowhte he hadde nede than:  
on man lasse and a-nothyr more,  
as hem thowhte they werea worthy thore,  11508
and ek to many pore knyhtes also,  
ek to serianutes that with hem wereu tho;  
they 3ouen hem of pet good ful largel,  
Whyles that Hem Last there ony peny.  11512
and sethen departyd they forth in here compenyne  
bothe stedys and palfreyes ful justlye,  
clothes of gold & of Sylk also,  
that nowht to departhy beleft hem tho.  
So that every man gwerdonen he was  
that with hem was jn that plas.  
thazne xl knyhtes chosen they tho  
11497. geten corrected from geften.
Merlin returns to the kings

with hem of Tarmelyde forto go,
which meyne Sire Leownee & sire pharyen
in governance hadden & with hem sire Gracien.
Thus this peple of Tarmelyde
into here loud they gonne hem gyde,
that kyng clawdas non harm scholde perce do,
whyles the two kynges here loud weren fro.

Thanne these Barowns to-fore seid here,
In here owne contres whanne they were,
hem purchased bothe loundes and fe,
everych a man after his degre,
with the grete ziftes that they hadde,
and with pe tresor pat they out of pe ost ladde,
So that euerie niche men they were,
whiles that on Erthe they lyvede here.
So soiorned kyng Artheur at Bredygam stylle
and with hym bothe kynges at his wylle
(that was in the march of gret Breteyne
and ek of Tarmelyde tho, in certeyne)
merlyne forto abyden there;
this was Artheuris entent, j sey sow here.
and vpon the morwe, whanne this was do,
that kyng Arthuwr his meyne hadde departyd so,
and at Bredygam hadde mad gret feste
as wel to pe mest as to the lest,
and whanne they hadden eten eehou,
out of here loggeneges gonnen they gon
Forto behelde bothe nyvere and mede,
How pat the flowres dyden springen & sprede,
thanne behelde they furthermore:
they Syen where a old cherl cam thore
once alle the medeues, the sothe to sayn,
with his bowe on hande, jn certayn.
and boltes vndir his gyrdel bar he,
and wyllde fowl hadde slayn, sekerle,
the whiche vndir his gyrdel him heng abowte.

11540. j sey sow here.
11544. to the lest.
11548. the flowres dyden springen.

11550. o, a corrected from j.
11553. gyrdel, d through correction.
in the shape of an old bird-shooter.

an his bowe to his ere he drowh,
and anon ryght there that brydl he slowh.
3it wylde nathelarles he slowh also,
and euer under his gyndyl he dyde hem do.

Forth a greit pas thanne cam he there
jnto place þere as þe thre kynges logged were,
tha[?me] these kynges hadden beholden ful wel
the schetynge of this cherl every del.

So towards here loggeþng cam he faste,
tyl that thyder he was comen atte laste.

thanne King Arthewr axede hym ful snelle
3if ony of that wylde fowl wolde he selle.

"þe," quod the cherl, "with good wylle anon
j wele hem Sellen everychon."

"To what pryse?" quod Arthewr the kyng.
and thanne the cherl wolde seyn non nothing.
the array of this cherl þe schal declare,
and so wel as þat þe haðde þen thare:
Whit muset hosen he hadde vppon
with a peyre of grete clowted schon,
With a cote and Surcote of Blak Burnet
vppon his Body ful lewedly j-set,
and þe-gyrt he was with a schepis skyn,
and þerto he was bothen long, stowt, and Grym,
therto on his hed nethyr coye ne hud,
but thus al barched the carl forth good.
For lyk a wodman he semed, opur a felown
that haðde don som distroccioun.

and to kyng Arthewr he seyde thanne:
"j ne can non skele of sweche maner menne
That Loven so wel here Tresore ;
hyt js ryht nowht, j telle the fore."
"but thou ony Servyse cowdest do,
to avauchen the scholde þe wherto?"
quod this carl: "hame thou this fowl thane.
3it for me art þon than the rycherche manne,
and thou of thy good 3e vest me non thyng,
not the lest part of on fethering.

The man comes quickly up to the kings.
The man asks him if he will sell the birds.
The man says yes.
The king wants to know the price; but the man is silent.
He is dressed poorly.

Arthur asks him if he will sell the birds.

The man says: "Have these birds, thou, the richer man, who givest nothing.

11562. there, r corrected from e. 11563. The paper is damaged.
11574. þ corrected from us.
Merlin is recognized by Ulfin

and fort0 seven of pe7 thou hast geten here, me thinketh for thy worchepe gretly it were.”

Whanne that the kyng Arthwyr vndirstod this, ech e kyng on othyg thazne lokyd, j-wys, and sethen they seiden hem be-twene :
“where-0f deyvel spekyth this carl so kene?”
thanne pere anon hym clepede kyng Ban, and axede what deyvel he seyde than,
but this carl to hym now word wolde speke, but to kyng Arthwyr he gan for to reke.
“hawe pou,” he seide, “these Bryddes here, For j wele walken jn myn manere.”
thanne Spak kyng Ban, certeinle :
“Se7 what maner man that thou be,”
“Swich a man am here j,” quod he, “that a savage man thus tolde me, whiche that merlyne is his name, jn this lond a man of ryht gret fame —
and that same merlyne tolde to me that hider wolde he comen, ful sykerle, Forto spoken with row kynges present ;
thus merlyne me tolde, verament.”
and jn the tyme of this talkyng cometh Vphpyn owt of a chambre goyng, and herde the pletyng of hem two, hou kyng Ban to merlyne spak tho.
“O,” quod kyng Ban, “hou may this be, that merlyne scholde speken with the?”
“what,” quod the carl, “jif pou wylt me leve, chese ; the oper ellis thou believe.”
And [whiles] the veleyh hadde seyd at this, evere stood sire Vphpyn and herkened, j-wys, and thussone he gan for to Smyle, and knew hit was merlyne be his wyte,
whanne that merlyne aspyde him so, towards hym he gan fort0 go,
“hawe here mo Bryddis to thy kyng, that groecheth fort0 seven anything.”
Thame lowh Vlphyn wonderly sore of the wordis that Merlyne seide thore, and seide: "sire, 3if hyt thy wyll e be, wylt pou juto chambre gom with me For divers thinges that j haue to seyn betwene the and me per, jn certeyn."

"3e, sire, gladly," quod this veley th, "with the to chambre now wyll j go."
The man consents.

Thame beheld the kyng sire vlpyn, and axede to what ende opur fyn That so Faste He Lowh thare, and why that his Skele were.

"Sire," he seide, "jn tyme comeng 3e scholen hit knowen every thing." the man asks he shal know by and by. Now Sir Kay comes;

there mete the veley with Sire kay, and thus to him he gan to Say:

"Go make Redy this wylde fowl here, that hit be at thy lordis Sopere."

"3e, sire," quod Vlphyn to that veleyn, "hit nys not the ferste, jn certeyn."

and with this cam per sire Bretel, and herde these wordis everydel.

So whanne they hadde ben there a stownde, thame wyste Bretel he hadde merlyn fownde, and vndyr his wyntyl he lawhed anon.

thame axede of hym the kyng thussen:

"Why dost pou lawhen here so sore?"

"Sire, and þe carl wyle, j schal tellel 3ow fore." thame this veleyn there lowh ful faste, and seide to Vlphyn atte laste:

"Sey now on what js thy wylle."
than Vlphyn seide the kyng vntylle:

"Sire," he seyde, "knowe 3e not merlyn, whiche that is 3oure owne devyn?"

"jis," quod the kyng, "why axen 3e? hym j wel knowe, and j him se."

"Sire," quod vlpyn, "this js now he
Ulfin tells Arthur that it is Merlin.

"Why, this is he?"

that here to form 30w now 3e so,
that Ij or thries 30w hath servued thus,
why not 3e hym knowe, j merveyllle, be jesus."

Whan that the kyng herde vilphyn spekyn so,
woondirly abasched sore was he tho,
that he xyste what forte seyn,
thamae seid vilphyn to hym ageyn:
"that j haue seyn oftene thamae one,
the bettere j schal knowen hyt xft sone."

that seide the kyng to hym ageyn:
"Sey me now, what Js this veleyn?"

"Sire, knowe 3e not merlin, and 3e hym se?
"gis, what scholde ellis now eylen me?"
"thamae beholde 3e this good man so hore,
3is evere 3e syen hym owht here before."
and the kyng beheld him ful wel,
but he hym knew evere a del.

"Now certes," quod sire vilphyn with that,
"he may thinken his Servise xvel beset,
that 30w so mochel servyse hath j-do
an 30w j-loved so wel therto
and 30w hath holpen jn alle manere
agens 30ure enemies, where so they were."
thamae whame kyng Artewr herde this,
fulsome thamae he hym blessedde, j-wys,
and the tothye twevene kynges also
ful mochel merveyllle hadde tho,
and seiden: "merlyn, how is this be-tyd
now to ben clothed jn swich an abyt?"
thamae seide merlyn to hem ageyn:
"hit may ful wel ben, in certeyn."
thamae seide vilphyn: "Sire, basche 30w not,
for his semblawnce he wil schewen, wel j wot,
that 3e to-fore haunen hym jnne seyn;
he wil he hit 30w schewen, jn certeyn."

"that woldde we fayn," quod these kynges,
"To bringen vs owt of distorbelynge."

11675. what, h corrected from a.
11688. may, a through correction. 11695. Cf. l. 9095.
11703. fyn, a in darker ink.
"Now into A chambre go ye Wyth me."

and so they deden, these kynges thre.

thanne seyde sire Wiphyn to Arthour the kyng:

"Sire, haneth ye non merveylle of this thynge,
For many semblances he kan show scheue,
vj other vij some vppon a rewe.

For also often as hit ys his plesaunce,
he wyl some chongen his semblauce,
and al be craft of Negremanaeye;
Sire kyng, this is soth, ful cereteynye.

and guylenebant the clerk witnesseth this,
For of clerlye he can ful mochel, j-wys.

For often here-aftyr ye scholen hym se
jn dyvers semblauce, ful feythfulle.

For he doth wel that he do so,
For in this contre he hath many a fo.
Now go we into the chambre ageyn,
and pere scholen ye hym sen, jn certeyn,

Whanne that to pe chomber ward pey wenten ageyn,
jn the halle merlyn they fownden, ful pleyn,
as he was jn his fierste kynde,
where-offen they merveillesde jn here mynde.

they gonne embracen hym anon,
and gret joye they maden echon,
as meng that hym loveved with al here herte;
liche man there to him gan stirte.

thanze gozen they lawhen everychon
of that cowtenaiuye that he hadde j-don,
and of that he seide to the kyng:

liche man tho took hyt in boordying.

"Sire, now j knowe nyht wel and fyn
that 3e mo loven now, certeynde,
and that these bryddlys 3e han 3oven to me,
and for 30me love j schal hem ete,
and for non thing j nele hyt lete."

thanze merlyn gan to lawhen tho,
and seide: "Sire, hyt ys nyht wel j-do."

[leaf 133 a]

Ulun takes them into a chamber, and says:
"Wonder not! He can show you six or seven different shapes
by means of necromancy,

He does well in disguising himself,
for he has many foes.
Now let us return,
and you shall see him in his old shape."

They find Merlin in the hall,

mervel,

embrace him joyfully,

and laugh at his disguise
and his words to the king.

Arthur says to him: "Now I know that you love me.
You have given me the birds,
and I will eat them for your sake.
Merlin laughingly replies: "Well done, sir!"

and seide: "Sire, hyt ys nyht wel j-do."

[11746. feide added above the line.]
Thus they sojourned there everychon,
y'th that mydleton was al a-gon.

So that kyng Arthweyr vpon a day
be merlynes leve, the Sothe to Say,
he aqweynted hym with a mayden so zyng;
hym thowhte he sey neure a fayrere thyng.
hire name Lysanore y-clepyd hit was,
theres dowthter Sevyn, that deyde he kas.
that mayden homage cam forto do
and with hyre Baroyns manye mo
anon after the Scomfyturc
of the xj kynges, j 3ow ensure.
thus for drede they comen to hym tho
here loundes to holden with-owten wo.
For his betterne neure j-seyn was :
that thus for here loundys they sowhten here gras.
So that yt happede that this mayde,
of which to-form tyme j 3ow seyde,
cam to the castel of Bredylngham,
where that sche osteyed hyre than
wit[h] a niche Burgeys, as j rehers,
that was bothe riche, stowt, and fers.
and anon as the kyng hadde cast his eye
vpon that mayden, the sothe to seye,
Thanne With merlyne Spak He Anon,
that they to-gederis myhte spekenalon.

So be that myade that xyht the kyng lay,
and on hire be-gat, the Sothe to say,
On hyhte Loost, as goos a knyht
as enere armure scholde heren in fyht.
which that was after, with-owten fable,
On of the knyhtes of the rownde table.
This Loost dyde many a merveyllous thyng,
as here-afyr hit schal come to rehersyng.
whaume that mydleton was fully gon,
kyng Arthweyr of this damsele took leve anon,
that so bothe kynges and ek he
ju-to Tarmelyde wenten, certeynde.

11749. vpp crossed out before Arthweyr.
11752. he, e corr. from a. 11757. MS. vit.
Now of hem resteth this Talkyng, and let vs spoken of a-nothyr thyng, and to the xj kynges retornen ageyn, whyder that they weren chased, in certeyn.

Now the narrative turns to the defeated kings.
Chap. XII.

The defeated kings ride all night, sorrowing and weeping,

Now begymmeth this Tale and telleth here of the xj kynges that conquered were, how that they reden al that xlyght Sorewenge & wepyng, j 3ow plyht, For here grete los and here damage; thus ryden they Soreweng, bothe knyght & page; Nethyr of al xlyght rested of rydyng, which was to hem alle an hevy thyng. For nethir (h-ynk ue Mete was hem among, Nethyr of al day whiles pe bataylle was strong, so pat day & thike nyght they weren meteles, and therto gret passynge cold, with-owten les, therto strong frost and Ys there was; So weren they avel esed in eche a plas, thane ryden they forth to a cyte ful hungry & ful cold, as j telle the, whiche cyte Sorhaut it hyhte, of kyng vryens, that was jn fylthte. So there they weren rescyved alle and wel j-esed, as tho myhte befalle. For thre-offen they hadden ful gret wester, For many man was hurt and wondyd ther, and manye there dayden for noysaunce, For at thike tyme swiche was here chaunce, And Skars thre dayes there hadde they be, that hem comen tydynges, ful sykerle, owt of cornewaylle & orkanye of gret distrocciuo & of pe felonye that to here loundes pere weren j-do, and toform pe castel of Vandebarris Sege leyd also, And therto the peple is Fled A-Way, that nene to-fore remevede, j dar wel say.

11813. dayes, f added afterwards.—they, MS. he.
Meeting of eleven kings. [CH. XII.

and whanne these Barownys herden of this,
ALLE here flesch gommen to tremble, j-wys,
For that so sodeyn an aventure
To hem scholde come an that langure.
thanne wisten they, with-owten dowte,
that they weren distroyed al abowte,
and Gommen thanne to wepen ryght sore,
ALLE the peple that was there.

So thanne hit happepede yppon a day
that kyng Brangores this myschef say.
So that he sente messeneris haste
To alle the kynges ostes jn haste,
and that to hym they scholde come anon
ALLE the haste that myhte be don.

King Brangors sends for the others.

They assemble in king Uriens' hall.

After listeniug to King Uriens, they move off, red-eyed

and silent.

King Clarionnes

wants to know why Brangors has sent for him,

Brangors replies: "I will tell you.

King Anges' kinmen have invaded our lands.

11824
11828
11832
11836
11840
11844
11848
11852
11856
11850. power, p corrected from w.
and there don they bothe brennen & selen.

ek to to the castel vandelereis jn cornwaylle they han leyd sege there, with-owten faylle. and therfore counseyl we mosten take

From that Sege to gon hem make,

ek hem forto dryven out of kontre, other elles alle distroye[d] we be, and alle oure eyres j-put to xowht, that jnto this world we han forth bowght."

"3e, Sire, wyle 3e vndirstonden now me:

azens kyng Artheur we han now j-be and non thing enresydc jn his Lond; this owten 3e wel forto vndyrstond.

Nethyr, Syre, vppon the tothyr syde of the Loundes of Tarmelyde, that Somtyme oure socowrd wolde han be, but power hauen they now, Sykerle, but the kyng nyown, that js myhty and therto ryche & of Body worthy, and this two 3er dede he non were.

Nethyr anothyr kyng, that js nerre: kyng Pales of lystenois he hyht; also he is a worthy knyht, but that he kepeth his Brothir, trewele, kyng Pelynore, that lyth in maladye, of whiche he schal neuere recovered be, Tyl on pyng be don, Sire, ful certeynde:

Tyl that seynt Graal to ende Be Browht; take this forsothe, jif 3e welen owht. Also kyng Aleyin, that Syk lyth also, non nekewr jnto pat tyme may be do, and tyl that a bettere knyht of Breteyne Jnto this lond be comen, certeyne.”

(anon axede of hym kyng Brangor what maner of thynge the Graal was thore.)

"Nether of Norga, of Sornoleys the kyng, mowen 3e hauen there non Sucoureng,

11864. MS. distroye. 11884. þgy added in the left margin.
For upon the jeawtes warre halt he,
that moche noysaunce hym don, Sykerle.

For the jeawtes wolden held his lond
al of hem, as j now vnndristond,
and he defendyth hym as a man,
as long as that he may & kan.

Nethyr of Perdenyan the kyng
mowen 3e hauen non helpyng,
Nethyr of the kyng Amadonan,
methe of kyng clamades, j telle you kan;
For they werren upon kyng Galaost,
the wheche is cosyn, wel thou wost,
To the kyng of an hundred knyhtes;
and azens hym they kepyn here fyghtes."

"But assone as kyng Galaost
hath conqueryd the tothyr ost
the wheche he halt werre ageyn,
thanne wet j ful wel, jn certeyn,
that non thing so sore doth he crave
as pat was vterpendragons Lond to have.
So that other cownsceyl geten 3e non of me
but that grete God oure conseil be.
and therfore, sethen we ben jn fere,
amonges vs lete vs casten here;
For neure so moche nele hadden we
as now, and 3e wylen therto se.

For we knowen wel everychon
that hope oure good & worschepe is a-gon.
For pe damage that we han, wete 3e wel,
Be merlynes conseyl hit is don eche del,
whanne tho two kynges he fet, certayne,
kyng Ban and kyng Boors, out of lytel bretayne;
that ju al the world bettere knyhtes ne be,
and to Arthewr han don homage & fewte.

11897. held afterwards corrected from he.
11901. Perdenyan, P roughly corrected from E.
11905. Galaost, t squeezed in afterwards.
11928. bretayne, a roughly corrected from e.
For weet[h] wel, as longe as merly[n] with hem js, 11932
the bettore of hem geten we not, j-wys.
For there nys no man so myghty here, 11936
nethyr so wys in non manere,
that kan hym kepen from Merlynes wyle,
& that he ne schal vs alle begylle.
For he knoweth of alle thynge,
what that is don and what is comeng,
and perfore nethyr with wepyng ne with mone
we mown not helpen js to done, 11940
Neper therby wynnen but lytel thynge;
For offys of women hit is wepyng.
and perfore openyse we moetyn ordeyne
oure lordes and peple ferto meynteygne
agens this that vs don Noysaunce,
which that not be of owre creanne.
Therfore, gooode Lord, for thy gret pyte
on vs and oure peple thane merce!"
11948
after this word these Barouns echon
seten ful stylle, & word spoken they non;
And thus a gret whyle this dylen they hawnt.
Thus Sone Vpe Ros Kyng Tradelyvant,
that of northwaales was kyng tho;
to thike assemblyng spak he vnto:
"the beste counseille that j now can,
that we now vs ordeyne every man
vppon that contre to setten keping,
there as the heathene hauens here entring,
and that with al oure chevalrye
Faste thedirward now let vs hye,
and stoppen hem of here vytyallie,
and of here socour ek to Faylle.
& jn that tyme mowen we than
daderen to vs many a man.
So that whanne we han gadered ourre myht,
thanne with hem scholen we fyhte,
For ells j ne knowe in none degré
From here sege remeved to be."
11952 [leaf 134 a]
Tradelyvant, king of North Wales, rises:
"Let us watch the country
where the heathens have entered,
and may the Lord save us!"
After a long silence,
11956
11960
11964
and cut off their supply
of victuals.
In the mean-time we will
gather forces,
and then give battle?"
11968
11931. MS. wetch, h in darker ink.—MS. wly.
11936. & added in the left margin.
Whanne that the barouns hadde vnderstondyng of the wordis of Tradelivamet the kyng,
Ful wel they hym preisede mercioun,
& seiden that bettere myhte they not don:
and lik aftar his owne wylle
plerely thei wolde hit fulfille,
and axeden into what partyes thei scholden go,
and what meyne ek scholden gon verto.
So that forth they wenten, with-owten faille,
with hem that leften of the batayle
Sauf only to kepem that cyte.
forth thanne they wenten ful prevyle,
and kepem the vitailles of the contre,
that non refressching to the hethin scholde be.
Thanne with the meyne that we gaderen mown
To putten hem to gret distruccitoun.
and ȝif hit happe hem j-scomfyted to be,
thanne nich may ben al oure meyne.
This is the beste counseil that j kan;
Now sey his avis here every man!
For my counseill at this tyme this is;
Now let every man Sein his beste devys!"

Thanne ros vpe kyng loth there anon,
and to that peple he seide echon:
"Lordynges, Sekerly, j ne kan not se
how that these marches kept scholen be,
but that we setten good asspye
vpon kyng Artheuris londis, Sekerlye,
bencheson of the kynges that with hym be,
and For merlyn, that is maister in mani a gre,
that al oure conseil knoweth ful wel
& al that we don here now everydel.
For ȝif we ryden the hethen to asspye,
anon he wyl comen vs to distroye
be othir partyes juto othyr contre;
vpon vs ryden wilen they, ful sykirle.
Fore for the hethen they wylen not lette

11991. MS. Thlæw.
that vpon vs here men wylen they sette,
and therfore 3if we now departyd be,
we scholen ben destroyed, ful Sykerle.
For 3if the hethene entren vs here,
thaunce of oure socour ben we jn dwere.
Neuertheles 3it scholen 3e vndirstonde
that forth to ryde now wyl j fonde,
and redy to gon with 3ou jn fere;
now every man his best avis sey here!"

At that word ros vp anon ryhthes
the kyng that was of an hundred knyhtes,
and seide to tho lordynges everychon:
"of kyng lothes wordes dowte haue 3e non;
For kyng Artheur & his helpinge
ben owte of londe, with-owten lesynge,
To Socouren leodagan the kyng,
that jn his contre hath gret werryng:
jn his lond of Tarmelyde
he hath werre on ech a syde
of kyng ryown of Yrlond,
as it is don me to vndirstond.
& as sowdeours they ben forth went
Be merynes counseyyl, verayment.
but alle here strengthis ben kept ful wel,
and of oure deseyss they knowen echedel.
and therfore we mown the Savyelere gon
Forte defenden vs from oure fon;
For of Artheur hath non drede.
therfore j wolde, so god me spede,
that pes purchaced were betwixen vs two,
als so hastely as hit mylte be do,
that be his socour and strengthe of honde
To dryve the hethen owt of this londe.
therfore let vs werkyn jn alle thing
after pe counseil of tradelyvaunt the kyng.
but er that we passen out of this contre,
bek counseil be gowerned it is good to be.
there is a mayde here vs he-syde
that Asses Roche is cleped this tyde,
MERLIN.—II.
The kings resolve to watch the border-lands. [CH. XII.

She can give good counsel; for she is the sister of a necromancer.

The kings marvel at Arthur's departure, but understand that it is due to Merlin, and repent of their anger with him.

They resolve to have the borderlands watched. Troops are sent, also mercenaries.

From Arthur's land, however, no one comes, on account of the king's liberality.

The kings marvel at Artlmr's departure, but understand that it is due to Merlin, and repent of their anger with him.

Whanne that pe barouns vndirstodyn al this, that kyng Artheur was forthe, with-owten mys, thazne mervyellede the barouns everichon For what maner cause he wolde so don, but thazne vndirstoden they alle that be Merlynes counseil hit gan falle. So that they repentyd al jn fere that evere with merlyn angry they were; but alto late hit was tho hem to repente: he was a-go. So that they accorded alle jn fere alle the marches to don kepen there. Thazne sente they forth be eche partye to kepen the marches, ful sekerlye, bothe olde & Jonge that myhte gon & of strange Sowdiours manion. So that forth they wenten & wolde not bylyme, hoping gret richesse forto wynne and also to geten hem bothe pris & fame the better to ben beloued of every dame, but owt of kyng Arthewris lond non sowdiour wolde comen, j vndirstond; For good jnowgh they hadde beefore, and for pat cawse they wold not comen thore; For Artheur avaunseid hem everichon, er that he owt of his lond gan gon; and zit he behyhte hem better to do, whanne that azen he come hem vnto.
The fyreste cyte that they dyde kepenn tho
was toward Cornewaille, with-owten mo,
whiche that thike tyme Nawtes hyghte,
there as the hethene goamen alyghte.
Thyder gan gon kyng Ydiers
with a meyne boye prowde & fers,
that beleften of his Bataylle,
as j 3ow seye with-owten faylle.
and whame kyng ydiers cam to pat cyte,
Ful glad and blithe goonen they to be.
For every day affrayed they were
of tho hethen that weren comen there,
that everyday there, certeinle,
they wenten abowte that cyte
and distroyed alle jn virowne abowte
the contre there, with-owten dowte.
For of hem Sevene thousand there be
jn this partie arvyed, ful sekerle.
so that there dar non man passen therby
with-owten gret strengthe, Sekerly.

The tothyr cyte that they Senten Vnto
hindicam hyghte at thype tyme tho.
Thedir rod kyng Newtris of Garlot
with thre thousand knyghtes, wel j wot,
that beleffen hym of his bataylle ;
to that cyte he rod, with-owten faylle.
thame they of the cyte ful gret joye made,
and of his comeng they weren ryht glade.
For with-owten comfort & socour they were
ajens the hethene that arvyden there.
for they distroyeden al that contre
bothe of corn and of bestes, ful certeinle.
but whame kyng Newtris entryd that cyte
that jn cornwaille stood, ful pleynerle,
he it wel goerneede with al his myht,
lyk as he was bothe worthy kyng and knyht,
and alle the strengthes that belonged perto,
Ful manfully he let Stuften hem tho,
and sente after sowdeours jnto eche contre,
Tyl Sevne thousand he hadde in sembl
what on hors and what on footo
(So manye he hadde, wel j wote)
with-owten tho that weren in towne that day,
Fyve thousand men sensible, j dar we[l] say.
thanne so wel kepten they that contra,
that non of the hetene, ful Sykerle,
but lytel refresschyng cowden they wynte,
and enere among was bataille hem betwyne.
So that the hetene be aventure
losten gret peple, j sow thersure.
for kyng Newtris was a worthy knyht,
and a sone he hadde of ryht gryth myht
be his wyf, that Soster was sche
To kyng Artheur jn alle degre.
this 3ong child was xyj 3er of age,
ful of bewte and of gret corage.
his modir qwene Blasiiie hyghte,
Qwene Ygwernes dowghter, j sey 3ow ryhte,
that sterpenderagon hadde to wyve,
aforn dewk Tyndagellis wif be his lyve,
whiche dewk this blasine on Ygwerue be-gat,
er that he deyde, j wot wel that.

Vpon this same qwene Blasine thanne
begat kyng newtris this worthy name.
For as here reherseth this styere,
a knyht of pe rownd table he was, sekerlye.
his name was that tym in presence
Sire Galachim, that tym dewk of clarence.
So whanne this calachim gan to vndirstonde
that Swich a werre there was jn londe,
how his fadir kyng Newtris with Arthur gan werre,
To his modyr he wente, & sowhte not ferre,
and seide: "dere modir, j preie now the,
The trewthe of on thing telle thou me:
were 3e not dewk hoelis dowghter of tyndagel
and of Ygwerne j-born, that men knewen ful wel? wheche after wedded kyng Vterpendragon, on whom he got kyng Artheir, man of renown, the wheche myn uncle soothy he js and therto a worthy kyng of pris, that xj kynges seomfyted in bataylle with ryht fewe peple, with-owten faylle, and therfore, my modir, j charge now the of this the sothe that 3e tellen me. For evere hit renneth jn my thowht that of so worthy prowess were he nowht, but 3if he were Vterpendragones some the kyng, that most worthyest was jn his reigneng."

Whanne that his modir vndirstood al this thing of galachim hire sone, that was so yng, Anon gan sche to wepen ful sore, as a lady that knew the cause wherfore, And Seide to Galachym Anon Ryht tho, as that tyme hire herte fyl vnto, and ful sore wepinge sche gan to telle of al the cas, how hit be-felle, and seide: "myw owne dere sone thane, thin em he is, that worthy manne, and my brother he is, ful Sekerly, for bothe weren we born of on body, as j haue herd my modyr say
to-form this tyme ful many a day, that for that child made gret mone, So sone aftir his birthe awey was done, and delicioured was to on velyne; that is now soth pat 3e heren me seyne. and how aftyr hit was discovered ecieldel be Antron, that hym xorsched ful wel, of whom ek that merlyne the sothe tolde, and ek that witnesid Vlphyn the bolde, and how that Vter pendragon the kyng me maried to my lord aboven alle thynge, but j am sory in mani a deger

12184. She tells of the sending away of Ar-thur after his birth,
12185. the eventual disclosure by Antron,
12192. Merlin, and Ulfin, her own marriage,
Galachim and his mother.

that the Barouns of this conte
ne welen not rescyeven hym as for here kyng,
whiche me sore repentith over alle thing.
but behold, the grete god of myht,
considering that he is kyng be ryht,
yhm ches be myracle of the ston
& of the sword aforb hem echon "—
and hym tolde of mani an aventure
that of hym be-fel, j 3ow ensure.

Whazne that galachim gan vndirstonde
the dedis of put worthy kyng jn londe,
amo he besowhete god, certeynylye,
that jn this world he scholde neuere dye,

Tyl that kyng had mad hym knykht,
that holden was so worthy jn fyht.
“and 3if onis with my swend gyrde he me,
al my lyve after, ful certeinle,
with hym to dwelle, to lyven & to deye,
j sey 3ow, modir, be my feye! ”
thus from his modir departed he thanne
as an hevy & a pensyvons manne,
and him be-thouhte thanne everich owr
how he myhte comen to kyng Arthewr.

Anon a messenger dide he sende
after gawnenet, his cosin so hende,
that was kyng lothis Sone,
that to hym to brokelond scholde he come
also prevyly as he evere he myhte;
the day was set of metynge ryhte.
and with this the messenger wente his way
To his cosin gawnenet, pe sothe to say.

Now lefe we here of this storye,
and to speken of pe kynges now let vs hye
that at Sorhant to-gederis dwelle,
and how that of aventure they don telle.

Now aftyr cometh hit Jnerto memorye
houn from Sorhant departyd kyng loth, sekerlye,

12197. hym, y corrected from c. 12220, aft, t added afterwards.
and wente forth strenth to Garle cyte
with ful thre thousand of his wyne,
that weren holden worthy knyhtes & goode,
whiche with him out of pe bataille 3oode.
& whanne he was come to that cyte,
the cetezains maden joye and solemnite;
for the hethen diden hem ful grete anoye,
and al that contre they deden distroye
what with robberye and brenenge;
that contre they wasted in alle thinge.
Anon as kyng loth knew of this,
For sowdeours he sente, with-owten mys,
Faste abowtes jnto ech contre
to geten as manye as pame myhte he.
and er a mouthe was fully past,
ten thousand sowdeours he hadde in hast
with-owten hem of that cyte,
weren foure thousand, certeinle,
To kepen that cyte bothe day & nyht,
whiles put kyng loth nod owt to fyht.
So that often-tymes he with hem mette,
and to-gederis many strokes they sette.
So that his pore bachelerye
gat often gret goodis, sekerlye.
and al that evere they myhte wyne,
kyng loth hit parded there hem betwyne.
and that causede that grete wyne
To kyng loth repeirede, certeinle,
For bencheson of his gentilinesse & fre,
Sprang so wyde jnto ech contre;
Thre thousand comen to hym anon ryht,
For that he was holden so fre a knyht.
and faire children he hadde be his wyve;
worthiere bodyes weren non on lyve.

Soth hit is that kyng lothis wyf
was kyng Artheuris soster, with-owten stryf,
ryht evene fully in the same degré

12267. In the right margin: *the birth and the engîdrure of Mordret.*
She has four sons by her husband; Gawnehet (or Gawen), Agravains, Garriers, and Galieryes; and one son by Arthur: Mordret.

I will tell you of his generation, of which many are ignorant.

The barons were assembled at Cardiff in Wales to choose a new king (p. 181). Loth and his wife were there; Antron, Kay, and Arthur

[leaf 1254] were to stay in the king's lodgings.

as was kyng Newtis wyfe, Sekerle, this lady bar be hire lord, Loth the kyng, fowre worthy children, with-owten lesing: Gawnehet, Agravains, & sire Garriers, Galieryes, fowre knyhtes bothe goode & fers, on the tothyr syde was Sire Mordret hire eldest sone, with-owten let, whiche that on hire be Artheur engendrid was, and wyte 3c now heren be a wondyr cas.

For j thenke to tellen 3ow every del how he was begeten on hire ful snel, So thame the bettere may this storye ben more allowed, ful Sekerlye.

For mani men knowen not how pat it was of his be-geteng, ne nowht the cas, theryfore they preisen it moche the lasse, For they ben vnknoweng of day & plase.

hyt behappede, as j 3ow schal say, that the barons alle vppon a day of pe rewim of logres assembled were at kerdyf jn wales, with-owten dwere, there forto chesen hem a newe kyng afyr vter pendragoune, with-owten lesying.

so that kyng loth with hym gan lede with hym his wyf jnto that stede; and so dyden oper barons also, that here wyves dyde with hem go.

So that kyng loth j-logged he was and alle his meyne jn a ful fair plas, jn wheche place Antron jlogged was he and with hym Sire kay, ful certeinle, and artheur ful previly jlogged he was jn pe kyngges chombe, so fil the cas.

And Whanne Kyng Loth to mete Was Set, aftir Antron he sente, with-owten let, and also anon aftyr Sire kay, that but a sone knyht was that day.

So pat kyng loth ordeyned there that Antron & Sire kay j-logged were jn his owne chambre ful previly;
and 3ong Artheur was logged faste by
at thentre of the chambr e jn a korne r,
as befyl that tym e for a worthy sqwyer.
this Artheur was a faire 3ong man,
and moshel of xorture that tym e he kan.
and that lady he was fayn to plese
& ek to kyng loth to don him ese.
This lady was both fayr & yng
and a good woman ouer alle thing,
whom that Artheur lovede prevyly.
but sche ne rowht e sche wiste not, sikerly,
for stedfast sche was to hire Lord
and him to plese at his owne acord.
So hit behappede, as J 30w say,
that al the Baronage hadde taken a day
at the Blake cros to meten jn jn fere
there forto touchen of here matere.
So on the xnyht before hit happed e tho,
that kyng loth scholde thider go,
he charged prevyly his mwyn
that hors & harneis redy scholde be
at midnyht with him forto g on;
thus prevyly he charged hem everichon.
So that his mwyn, verner, unknowen jn haste his comannadement
ful prevyly from hire wente he stalkynge,
and jn hire bed lette hire style on slepe,
for of his goynge took sche non kepe.
and Artherr, that wel knew of al this,
that jn that corner pere lay, j-wys,
took good kepe of the kynges goynge,
and ful prevyly to here bed wente he stalkynge,
and there he turnede hym bothe to & fro,
but jit this lady on slepe was tho.
So as hit happed e this kas gan gon,
this lady awok & hire tornede anon,
and him embraced al jn hire Slepe,
that of non othir took sche non kepe
but of hire owne lord so dere,
weneng to hire to ben hire fere.
and whanne that Arthewr felte this,
thaanne wiste he wel, with-owten mys,
that of hym sche took non kepe
but as a woman that was in slepe.
So that he embraced hire ageyn,
and so be hire he lay, in certeyn,
where-often the lady ful joyful was;
sche wende hire Lord hadde ben in pat plas.
and that Xyht, in certein to say,
was mordret begeten, with-owten delay,
jn this maner as ye now here.
And whanne that Artheur his wil hadde there,
he ne slepte non maner thing,
tyl that lady was fallen in Slombring;
thaanne stalkyld Artheur previliche a-way.
For per-of ne wyste non, the sothe to say,
tyl on the morwe, as hit gan falle,
that hym-self hit tolde in the halte,
whanne sche was set at hire denere,
and Artheur as hire kervere knelede there.

She had noticed his long kneyling,
and made a remark about it.
[leaf 135 e]
He replied: "I cannot kneel too long.
For I cannot deserve the great boon..."
She axed for an explanation.
Arthur made her promise not to tell anybody,

So that hit happede tho, this lady gent
of his long knelyng took good entent.
"love seys," sche seide, "jong Bachelor,
Ful longe [now] 3ow thinken that 3e knelen her."
And He Answerede Ful Boldlich Ageyn:
"to longe may j not knelen, certeyn,
For j ne may not deserven the grete bownte,
myn owne lady, that 3e han don for me."
thaanne axede this lady anon ryht:
"what bowntes ben tho, gentyl wyht?"
thaanne seide Artheur, certeine,
that for him discouered scholde hit nene re be,
ne non thynge to hire he wolde disere,
but zif of trowthe sche wolde hym affye

12364. Slombring, o blurred.
12374. MS. longe zow.
that neuer sche scholde discouere it to non creature, and also anothis thing sche schold hym Sure: that harm to his body scholde sche neuer do, ne be hire to ben purchased nether to ne fro. 12388
And sche hire trowthe ensured hym ful son as woman of that mater took kepe non.

thame anon Artheur gan hire to telle prevyly betwixen hem how hit be-felle, 12392 and in what maner that he be hire lay; al he hire tolde thike same day.

Anon this lady gan wexen red, that for pure schame sche was ny ded; but non wyht wiste of here covyne. for at that tyme wolde sche no more dyne but let tables ben drawen, verament, and ful faste to hire chombre sche went. lo, thus zonge Artheur be his soster lay, that kyng Lothis wif was that day; but hit behappede neuer aftyr more, and thus was mordret of hire body bore, and she knew wel be tyme & space that be Artheur with childe sche was.

Whame that the tydlynges gonuen forto springe that this zonge Artheur scholde be kyngge, 12408 and this mordret was tho j-bore, when the news of Arthur's exaltation spread, and Mordret was born, she loved him in her heart.
thame jn herte louede sche him wel more thane ony man cowde tellen that day, that was so smerte, and mochel sorwe sche hadde jn herte for that werre, that was so smerte, and jn that newm so many a schowr betwixen hire lord and kyng Arthowr, she was very sorry for the war and betwixen oper peple also that in theke newm weren tho.

So that hit happed yppon a day, 12420 that zonge Gaweyn scholde hym go play, One day, Gawen comes, ready for hunting,
and qweyntely was he arayed there ju manere of a zong sqwyere that on huntyng scholde fare
to chasen bothe the hert & hare
with two les of grehoundis in pat place,
& besides him stood ther there 3it two brace.
he was the fairest schapen man
that in his tyme ony knew than;
but this storye not declareth here
Sanu of on thing in this manere:
that he hadde certain tynce of pe day:
what that they weren j schal 3ow say.
whanne that he ros on morwen vpryht,
yn the world ne was there a strengere knyht;
and at the owr of pynme, with-outen delay,
his strenkthe hit doublede Every day;
and at the owr of Tiers hit doublede eft sone,
and eft-sones hit dawbled at the None;
and so alle the owres of the nyght
with him it abed into day lyht;
So that every morwenyng
thus ferde gawayn, with-outen lesyng.
Whanne gaweyn entrede the chambr there,
as ye hauen herd rehearsed here,
His moody Lay he on chemene,
and there-jn fyr ful grete plente,
as a womman that ful pensif was
For hire brothyr in that plas,
and for the werre, was hem betwene;
thus lay that lady & morned be-dene;
and for schedyng of blood ful grete plente,
that was amonges the cristiente,
and for the hethen that entred were
juto that Lord amonges hem there.

Whanne that lady Gaweyn beheld,
that tyme it were to beren armes & scheld,
Seche began to wepen riht sere.
Anon Sire gawyyn axede hire wherfore.
"certes, sone, j have now gret Skyl,
For 3e youre tyme ne don but spyl
and ek youre brother, in certeyn,
3e don but spillen youre tyme in yeyn,
that worthy knyhtes myhten be
ju kyng Arthurs court, ful certeine. 12464
For 3oure vnele he is be nyht,
and ju this world not a bettere knyht.
with him J wolde 3e weren ju plase
pes betwyxen 3oure fadir & him to purchase.
for hit is ful gret pyte
that be-twixen hem swich distaunce schold be
and of othir barouns ju the Rewm,
that of here kyng wylen taken non 3em. 12472
and god knoweth the Ryhtwysnesse,
that hath hem browht in grete distresse; 12476
For mochel more han they lost thane wonne.
& now this hethen on vs han begoune,
that scholen distroyen vs everychou,
3if goddis help ne come not Son.
and of hym helpe geten we non
that scholde vs fende from oure fou,
which is 3oure oncle kyng Arthur,
that scholde vs helpe ju every stour.
worschepe & los scholde 3e purchase
and pes to maken ju every plase,
and namly that 3oure fadir & he
goode frendis that they myhten be,
and non other good 3e don this tyde
but eche day on huntyng forto ryde
To chasen the hare in eche controle,
and thus 3oure tyme lesen 3e;
wherfore 3e ben alle to blame,
that myhten become men of bettere fame." 12492

Thanne to his modyr spak 3onge Gaweyn
wordis that to hire weren ful pleyn:
"telle 3e this for trewthe to me,
that Arthour be nyht kyng scholde be,
and pat 3oure brothir he is also,
& ek 3e seyn oure vnele perto?"
"3e, sones, with-owten drede,
he is 3oure vnele, so god me spede"—
12467. / corrected from 3e.

Gawein
inquires

about Ar-
thur's rights
and relationship.

His mother
gives full
information.
Oaweiii vows to take knighthood only from Arthur,
and to help him against his foes.

The brothers will do the same.

The queen says she will bless the day when Loth and Arthur are good friends again.

Gawein asks her to cease weeping;

his father and his uncle shall be reconciled, before he sees her again.

And she replies: "God make you all good men!"

During this conversation,

& sette on & tolde hem al on ende holyche hon that mater gan wende.
And whaume that gaweyn herde al this, anon to his modir he seide, j-wys:
"he pe trowthe j owe to God & 30w, of on thing j schal maken avow:
that sword ne armvre to beren jn fyht, tyl that kyng Artheur haue mad me knyht.
and we to his cowrt scholen gon him forto helpen azens his fon,
3yf 3e welen helpen vs owht fervo;
bothe my bretherez scholen pedir go of hym forto ben dubbid knyhtes & after to helpen him jn his fyhtes
Azens Hem Alle that Hym Wrong Wylen Don; we scholen him gon helpen everichon." 12512
"Now, swete children, as toweling me, neuere distorbeled scholde 3e be.
For that day wolde j ones abyde, and blessin j wolde that jike tyde,
To sen joure Fadir & joure oncle jn fere as goode fremdes as euere they were;
hit were to me as joyful tydying as to ben lady of alle worldly thing." 12524
"Now, leyse modir," quod Gawayn tho, "lef 3e joure weping & doth not so.
For on avow j schal here make:
Aftyr that j my leve take,
J schal neuere sen 30w eft ageyn, tyl my Fadir & min vncle, certeyn,
yght goode fremdes that they be, er that 3ftsones 30w, modir, j se.
and min owne brethereus scholen gon with me azens my Fadyr al forto be."
12532
"Now swete sonne," quod the modir thanne, "God make 30w alle Ryht goode meyne!" 12536
And as Gawayn thus to his modyr spak, jnto the chambrere theere entrede, with-owten lak,
12507. armvre, v a hybrid of v and u.
Gawein's brothers have entered the room.

Agravains says to him:

"You are most to blame for our indolence, for you are the eldest.

Now let us go and serve him whom the whole world praises.

The heathen are over us,

and only king Arthur can drive them away.

Let us take arms of him, and follow him,

rather than losing here renown and liberty."

12570. MS. is non of nó of the.
The campaigns of king Clarions, [CH. XII.]

asks his mother to see to their equipment.

but our aray wherwith to ryde;

and therefore with-jinne these xiiiij dayses, modyr, ye helpen here now to arayen vs."

whanne that here modyr vndirstod this,

a joyful woman she was, j-wys,

and thanked god ful many a Sithae.

"For 3ow to arayen j schal hyen me blyve, For hors ne harneys scholen ye now lakke, kethir that be-honith to 3oure lakke."

thaunere weren the children glad jnowhi

and also menye as bryd on bowhi.

Now of this leve now we oure talkyng, and let vs forth spoked of the kynge,

that out of sorham cite ryt ful hevyly

bencheson of the hethene pat ben him by.

Now furthermore let vs tellen son how that these iij kynges ben agon

owt of Sorham, that cyte there, juto othir contres, with-owten dwere.

thanane rod owt kyng clarions, j vndirstonde, that was kyng of Northumberlonde,

and rod him to on fayr cite, that berland hyhte, certeinle;

whiche cite he kepte wondir wel

with iij thousand men bothe goode & lel

with-owten hem that jn the town were, of whiche fyve hundred fond he there.

So that tho marches he kepte ful strong,

and euere with the hethene he fawht among, and often he wan & often he loste, as hit behappeth jn every oste.

thus this kyng anoyed hem sore,

for jn that contre vitaile no more

mihten they geten to here nefresschung;

So hit hadde vpe gadered clarions the kyng.

So that after kyng Clarions was gon, the kyng of c. knyhtes isswede anon

12591. The top of the column blank.
owt of sorham cite, ful Sekerly,
with iij thousand men of armes him by
to the cyte of malehant gan he ryde,
pe a gentyl lady hym abod that tyde;
this cite marched vppon his lond.
and for the hetene, j vn头晕lond,
abowtes faste by they lye,
that was pe cause pedir gan he hye.
and the barouws hym preiden echon
vppon the heten with hem to gon.
this kyng, that was so worthy a man,
fulfilled the barouws wille than.
(this kyng evere kept an c knyhtes,
wherby he hadde his name be ryhtes;
but his name was be his baptism
Aingnignes elept aftir his borntempo.)
that [tho] marches kepte he wel al abowte,
So that of pe heten they hadde litel dowte.

Aftyr him past owt Tradelivaunt the kyng
owt of that cyte, with-owten lesyng.
and to northwales he took the way,
to on of his cites, as j 3ow say.
with iij thousand of armed men
jnto his contre rod he then.
and of his comeng they weren ful glad,
for of the heten gret drede they had,
that dyden ful gret distroccioun
al the contre abowtes jn virown.
thanne scute this kyng anon riht there
aftyr sowdiours every where,
So that vij thousand men he hadde
with hem that he ferst forth ladde
what on hors & what on fote;
this was his somme, wel j wote,
with-outen hem of pe town, plainly,
pot weren iij thousand, sekeryl,
Wheche Hem Defendyd Jin Every tyde
agens a chastel there beside.

12629. MS. that marches.
MERLIN.—II.
338 Carville the enchanteress. Brangor's campaign. [CH. XII.

a maid called Carville maintains the heathen, that a maiden that carville hytte,

They are safe in those border-lands, Socoured the heathen with alle hire myhte; 12652

and the castle cannot be taken. hadagabrantis soster, certein, was sche, that thike castel hadde jn baylle.

and Carville is an enchantress, And be tho marches, j sey 3ow ryhte, 12656

like Morgain for non the kynges there ne myhte, for non power that they myhten do,

except Morgain, that Sostir was (For this carville cowde more of enchantement

and Juanne, than ony oper woman, verament, 12664

of whom more later on.) except morgain, that Sostir was

The expulsion of the heathen is reserved to Arthur To kyng Artheur, jn everi plas,

and kyng Lothi's children, oper ellis juanne, the love of merlyn,

(7) King Brangor rides to the city of Strangor, that of enchantement coude wel & fyn:

Than owt of sorhant wente kyng Brangor

with iij thousand men j-armed thor, 12684

and to strangore cite he rod ful faste;

12680.  [footnote] abbreviation mark in darker ink.
12683. MS. here afte.
For next to the roche hit was ful preste, there as the hethene j-logged were, and after sowdious he sent every where, ty! that assemblyd he hadde the ryht vj thousand armed & redy to fyht with-owten iij thousand he with him browhte, that forto werren on the hethen ne dredden they nowht.

this kyng brangores hadde a wif, kyng Andoannes dowhter, with-owten strif, that of costantyn-noble was emperovr and therto a man of ful gret honoure, and be his wif, that ded was, tweyne dowhtres he hadde in that plas, of whiche kyng Brangor weddid pe tone, and pe tothir at costantyn beleft alone, that weddid was to the kyng of hungrye, as j sey 3ow certeinlye. So that at thende of fyve 3er, j wen, a knave child hadden they hem be-twen of the fairest forme that myhte be, that becam bothe worthi & strong, sikere. at whiche tyme whanne kyng brangor out of Sorhant paste thor, thike child of age that tyme was a knyht to ben mad in ony plas. and he was clepid be his ryht name jonge sagremour, that child of fame, which that after dyde gret prowess, as the lond of logres bereth witnesse, as aftir jn this storye here scholen 3e fynde, whanne aftyr to this mater j come be kynde.

The Renown that Sprang Abrod so Wyde of kyng Artheur jn every syde and of his largenesse & of his gentrie, alle the world hit spak of, trewelye. so pat jn alle stronge contres, with-owten lesyne, was non speche but of Artheur the kyuge.

12688. A second Roche crossed out after ful.
12696. d crossed out after kyng. 12710. MS. pften.
For his los tho sprange so wyde,
that juto costantynnoble hit cam that tyde;
that so ferforth hit cam to ere,
so jonge sagremour herde perof there,
that nas 3it but fyftene 3er old,
a fair jong Bachelere and a bold,
and whazne that he herde this tyding,
he ne wolde not lette a for non thing,
tyl he were mad knyht of his hond,
the sothe j do zow to vn.dirstond,
and ofte to his counsell seide he
that a worthy man moste he nedis be—
"whazne that myn ayel, adrians the kyng,
of him knyht was mad, with-owten lesing."
For that he was pe nexte kyr
that to theke empire scholde repleyn.
so that Sagremour swor, certein,
that knyht scholde he neuere be, pleyn,
tyl that kyng Artheur of Breteygne
hym knyht hadde mad, jn certeygne.
So that they spoken per-offen so ofte,
that thike noise waxe hye on lofte.
So that Adrians gan him to hye
Sagremours to sende forth, Sekerlye,
jin-to breteyne with gold & fe
and what thing that to him belonged on lond & se.
Now speke we no more 3it of this matere,
but here-after more scholen 3e here.

3yt procedith forth this storye:
whaene kyng branorses was past, trewlye,
out of Sorhant thike cyte,
kyng karados aftir wente, sikerle
with his weyne arayed ful ryht,
foure thousand men redy to fyght.
and to strangore cite he wente ful faste
(alle his men of armes with him paste)
CH. XII. [King Agywisax's campaign.]

which cite he kepte ful wel
as a wys worthy werreouer & a lel.

3it sente he abowtes wilde where
aftyr mo Sowldyows to han hem there,
so that atte laste assembled there was
vij thousand men in that plas
wel j-armed with sword and lornce,
of stellis & coursers pat cowde wel prance.

3it at that tyme now hethen there were,
wherefore ech nyht they lynen owt there
jn feldes and jn weyes bothe
to aspian whanne pe hethen conen, forsothe
and anon as that they nyhten aspye
that ony of the hethen drow ther nye,
ægens hem faste the wolden ryde
and with hem fyghten jn that tyle.
So that often they woman grete good,
Whanne that the hethen hem withstood.

Aftyr that these vj Kynges Weren gon
Out of Sorhant cite everychon,
thanne of Scotia the kyng
out forth he paste, with-owten lesyng,
The richest kyng of that contre ;
but as of armes onnethis cowde he.
this kyng out forth rod with v thousand men,
and to pe cyte of corange wente he then,
whiche that jn scotland tho Stood,
where as manye of the hethene abod.
For there nas but xx scottysch myle
where as the hethen lyen thyke whyle
at the castel of Vauadebers,
where as the sege was strong & fers,
that non man of hem the nombre cowden telle
of the hethen, that weren so felle.
whanne this kyng jnto corange j-entred was,
of the cete3eins fond he jn that plas
Fyve thousand redy armed to fyht.

12764. He sendes about for more sol-
diers,
12768. keeps a good look-out for the hethen,
and often attacks them with success.
12772. So that often they woman grete good,
12776. Whanne that the hethen hem withstood.

12780. Out of Sorhant cite everychon,
(9) King Agywisax of Scotland
12784. this kyng out forth rod with v thousand men,
rides to the city of Corange.
12788. Twenty Scotch miles from there,
umerous heathen besiege a castel.
12792. In Corange are 5000 fighting men.

12796. MS. lawvve.
Duke Escam's campaign. [CH. XII.

31t sente he forth bothe day & nyht to seken soulemens be every syde;
So that him comen with-jyne a tyde
what on hors & what on foote
x thousand Saudiers, wel j wote,
with-owten alle his owne meyne
and ek the peple of that cyte.

They fight the heathen,
so wth the hethen helden they bataille,
& often goodes wonnen, with-owten faille,
and reparcilled the walles of here cyte,
pere as it was most wont feble to be,
thus longe durede pe werre tho
be-twene thike partyes bothe to.

Thanne aftir this out of Sorhant wente
dewk Escam of kambenye, veramente,
with iiiij thousand j-armed ful wel
what on hors & on foote echeldel.
And forth he rod bothe day & nyht,
tyl to Cambenie cite he cam ful nyht,
the whiche of richesse hadde grete plente
and per-jyne thre thousand men, Sikerle.
and whanne they syen pe dewk cambenye,
gret joye they maden, certeinlye,
For pe descissee they hadde there
of the hethen, that weren hem nere,
that comeng weren to on castel,
For whiche kyng Artheur ordeyned ful wel,
ER that he paste ouer the se
junto tarmelyde lond, Sikerle.

He sends for more people
31t sente that dewk al abowte
to geten more peple to his rowte ;
So that viij thousand he hadde reedy,
as this storie witnesses apertly,
with-owten hem þat weren in that cite,
which þat kepe weren ordeyned, Sykerle.

and fights the heathen.
and with the hethen bowthen they ofte,
for mochet Sorwe was þere on lofte.

12827. A paragraph mark before this 31t; it seems to have its right place before the 31t of l. 12835.
Ch. XII.  

King Uriens' campaign.  

3it whanne these barouns out of sorhant were gon, thanne lefte kyng Vryens behinde hem echon, and sent his gold jnto eché contre aftyr sowlciours ful gret plente;  
so that viij thousand to him comen ful ryht, and jn the cyte viij thousand redy to fyht.  
For a sege there lay hem faste by but on jorne thennes, Sekerly;  
so that often they metten jn same al on ernest & not on game.  
som tyme they wonne & losten also, as the aventure torned bothe to & fro.  
so that v 3er, whilles hit dede endure, was gret meschef, j 3ow ensure, That othir levying was not jn that contre  
But as ech of other Hyt tok, Sykerle, the cristene of the hethene som on day, & the hethen of cristene anothir, jn fay.  
thus was distroyed that contre, that pyte & rewthe hit was to se.  

Jn this manere the werre dyd laste, that ech azones ooper bekeryd ful faste.  
thenz torned the hethen from pat contre jnto kyng Artheures lond, certeinle.  
And there diden they gret damage, for there nas non to letten here owtrage,  
but as it kam be aventure, as gret god wolde, j 3ow ensure, bothe faire & good of sqwyers 3ounge,  
as goode as myhte ben rehearsed with tongue, that kepten ful wel that ylke lond, tyl kyng Arthewr cam hom, 3e vndirstond.  
and now scholen heren more of this, how kyng Arthours lond was kept, j-wis.  

Now telleth this tale 3it furthermore: whanne that oalachim herde telleth thore,  

12843. Abbreviation mark in darker ink.
Galachim sends word to Gawein.

He took a messenger ryht anon,
and to caweyn he sent him ful son,
that previliche to-gederis scholden they mete
in a certeyn forest, & not to lete,
and his brethryn with him to brynge,
but on the morwe next Pask day
there forto meten with-owten delay.
the messenger rode the day & nyht,
tyl juto orkanye jn wales he kam ful ryht,
and dide his arende pere ryht anon
To caweyn & to his bretherin echon,
and seide that—"Galachim sente 30w to say
with him to meeten swich a certein day
jn the forest of Brokelond
at swich a place, 3e wudirstond.
For pere sekerly he wyl 30w abyde,
3if he be heyl, what so be-tyde."
whanme that they herden this messengere,
gret joye they maden amonges hem there,
and seiden, with-owten ony lettyng
they wolden ben there be pe day spring.
for som xede per was, they wisten treweleye,
that they were aftir sent jn so grete hye,
thaume to this messenger they 3oven a steede
and oper grete gifts to his meede.
thaume spared the messenger neper hors ne man,
tyl that to galachim ful sonc he cam,
that jn that place abod styyle there
of his cosynes to heren answered.
Whanme that this messenger was comen ageyn,
to his lord Galachim he seide, ful pleyn,
the answer of his cosynes dree
and that they gretten him al jn fere.
"and aftyr Pask the thryddel day
they scholen there 30w meten, with-owten delay."
thaume ordlyned him fast this Galachym

12895. MS. mefung with an ex-mark at the end and an ex-mark above it.
The young squires' meeting.

and other certein meyne with hym, and rides to the meeting-place.

& ryden forth to pe forest of Brokelond. [leaf 137 c]

but sit weren they not comen, j vnдержtond, Gawein and
But Abod Galachym there Stylle, his brothers arrive.

tyl that they comen at here owne wylle.

whanne Gaweyn and his bretheren comen were, Gawein says:
gret joye amonges hem was thanne there. "You have
thanne Gaweyn to Galachym spak vnto: sent for us.
"cosin, for me ze sente," he seide tho, Here we are,
"lo, my bretheren and j jn fere to knowe your will.
be comen to knowen 3oure wille here, Then we will
grown in, and elles j ne hadde comen at this tyde, go into other
For into 3per contres we casten to ryde, countries.
and perfore we comen to taken 3oure leve, Galachim
Vs were loth 3ow forto greve," asks where
"whider wolde 3e riden?" quod galachim tho, they want
to go.
"with-owten me 3e owhten not to do. For that same cause for 3ow j sente,
perfore j preye 3ow that 3e me telle 3ow now seye veramente."
junto what contreward 3e ben so snelle.
and ayr j schal tellen 3ow my wyl,
3if that 3e welen owht assentyn pertyl." Galachim
"Cosin Galachym, wilne 3e vnдержtonde me, explains by ex-
of mevelleous thinges j schal tellen the: telling the
of the largete and of the prowesse, worthiest
of the fre herte, deboneure, & sweetnesse, knight in the
and of the worthyst knyht pat in pe world is, world.
of whom that j haue herd tydynges, j-wys." 12928
"A god mercy," quod galachim tho, Galachim
"leve cosyn gawayn, ho tolde 3ow so? explains: "For the
For that same cause for 3ow j sente, same reason
as j 3ow now seye veramente." I sent for
"Forsothe," quod gaweyn thanne ageyn, you."
"his Name owhte to ben knowen ful pleyn. Gawein
For his name hiht Artheur the kyng, continues: "His
the best body that day may be spryng; name is
and 3oure oncde and wyn he is Arthur.
and pert to the worthiest kyng of pris
& ek pert ooure kyng with ryht, He is our
and our right-

12940. owhte, h squeezed in afterwards.
12941. hiht corrected from hit.
The squires decide to go to king Arthur. [CH. XIII.

The barons oppose him unjustly.  
I will be made a knight only by him."

Galachim is delighted, and they all rejoice.

They tell each other of their mother's words.

Then after agreeing to meet again in a fortnight, they ride home to equip themselves.

Galachim masters 300 well-armed warriors.

He leaves home without telling his father.

His cousins

& with wrong pe barouns a\'gens him gonne fyht, for weteth wel," quod gaweyn, "Sekerlye, that knyht j wele ben mad of his bodye and neuer er armes to her, certain, galachim, j zow swere."

Whanne that galachym vnderstood al this, his herte was ful of joye and hlys, and als mochel joye to-gederis they made as thon alle the world they hade, and told hym pay for non othyr thyngh for hym he sente, with-owten lesyng. Ek he told hym al jn fere hou it kam be talkyng of his modir dere. thanme to galachim spak gaweyn pe bolde:

"Ryght euen the same my modir me tolde."

and whanne that thus they hadde spoken jn fere, anon they accordyd thanme ryht there whanne they woldden taken here jorne: with-jorne xv dayes, ful Sykerle.

thanne wenten they forth ech jn his way hem forto purveyen alle maner aray, as behoued to swyche children so goode, that comen weren of so hygh a blode.

thanne rod forth galachym anon ryht hym forto ordeyne with al his myht, tyl ijc. of knyhtes & sqwyers had he ful wel j-harmeised jn alle degr, of the beste that he cowde chese, for be his wyld he wolde non lese.

And thus wente he prevyly forth his way, that non word to his fadir wolde he say.

And streyth to Brokelond thanme Rydeth He, and there abydeth with his meyne, Tyl gawein & his bretherin comen were; this galachim abod hem nyht There. For they hem purchased on here syde

12977. MS. Rydht.
The squires start for London.

v. .c. men with hem to ryde
what of worthy knyhte & of squiere
wet j-horsted & harneyed al jn fere,
and lordis children weren they alle
and pe most part knyhtes, as hit gan falle.
but of galachymanes meyne
here but xx knyhtes, certeinle.

whanne they to-gederis weren jnet,
there was gret joye, with-owte let.

whanne conseilled they to-gederis tho
into what partyc they wolden go.

whanne acorded they everichon
that to Londone in breteine pey wolde go,
the chyef cyte of Artheur the kyng;
For pey scholden pey sonnest heren tydyng
bope of the kyng and pe hethene also,
that jn that contre dide mocbel wo.

Now, as ye me heren bope reden & say,
jn the begynneng of the month of May,
whanne trees & medwes wexe grene
and faire flowres growen hem be-twene,
ek also Bryddis merly don Synge,
also swete dewes jn the mornenge
and also hertes lyhtenen be kynde,
ek thanne is merie vnder wode lynde,
thanne thouhte Gaweyn & galachim,
Gaheris & gwerres, & mo with hym,
and Agrevayn jn here compenye:
faste to ryde gozne they hem hye,
whiles the morwenyng hit was cold;
they thowhten to ryden, pat weren so bold.
for they weren tendre and zong of age,
hardy, bold, & ful of corage,
and perto j-armed wonderly wel
bothe jn xerne and ek jn stel,
here swerdis hangynge on here sadelbowe,
and thus they reden al be rowe.
for jn pat contre was gret doute
of the hethene, that ryden aboute

have 300 noble followers,
mostly knights.
When they all met, there is great joy.

They decide to go to London.

In the lovely month of May,
Gawen and his cousins start on their journey.

full of courage and well armed.

For the land is infested by the heathen,
The squires come across a predatory party. [CH. XIII.

who plunder everywhere, bothe for pray and ek vytaille;
alle that contra diden they asaille,
whiche contra so ful of good hit was,
whanne they entrede jnto that plas,
that gret deal hit is to here
what distroicion they maden there.

On the third
day,
they meet
four viking
kings,

[Leaf 138 o]

with im-
mense booty
laden on
horses and
vehicles.

There is
blinding,
dust,

fire, and
smoke,

and the poor
people bewail
their losses.

The young
squires ask
for king
Arthur.

The people
answer: "He
must have
gone to
Tarmelyde.

Whanne the children this dolour Syc
of that pone peple to-form here eye,
they axed en where kyng Arthur was,
they ne wiste, they seide, jn non cas—
"but he be jnto the lond of Tarmelyde,

13024. 13028. 13029. k"ng, y squeezed in afterwards.
13037. 13039. "c, and so added above the line.
13047. The second the corrected from he.
as we suppose this jike tyde. 13056
but set ER that he forth wente, 13060
alle his strengthes he stuffyd, veramente, and now the
that now of these hethen harm may hem do, 13064
and therfore, Sekyr, they ben ful wo, 13068
and therfore they distroye this centre 13072
thus al abowtes, as 3e mowne Se.”
whanne that the children herden this, 13076
that kyng Artheur was owte of lond, j-wis,
yielden chalangen bothe lond & pray 13080
that the hetene hadden forreyed that day, 13084
and kepen that lond into his comeng,
that was bothe here vucle & kyng. 13057
whanne that these passantes herde hem so say,
thanne of on thing they gonue hem pray: 13078
the young to tellen what maner of men they were.
“his kywnes-men we ben many of vs here.”
and whanne the passantes herden this, 13088
Ful mochel joye they made, j-wys,
For his kynnesmen, they gonue vndirstond,
Scholde sosteine & kepen kyng Artheurs lond. 13092
whanne that the children al this behold
how thikke the careage kam over the feld,
here hertes gonuen to rysen anone,
and as armes they cryden thus sone.
“now let sen here, worthy sqwyers,
whiche of vs schal ben most bold & fers
here to defendenoure herytage,
jn whiche these paynemis don grete owtrage.”

Thussome to armes went euy man
and to hors-bak hos cowde somnest than.
whanne the passanty Sien they hadden socour,
they torned azen with-owten dolour;
bothe on hors and ek on foote
with these children they wenten foot hote,
and the ferste thing was, that they mette,
chariettis with vitailles, with-owten lette,
Defeat of 3000 heathen. [CH. XIII.

that they laden toward here ost
with thre thousand Paynemis of gret bost.
and hit was passed the mydday,
as this storye here doth say,
13096

ek won(dir hot hit was tho ryht
both for sqwyer and ek for knyht.
Anon as þe chylthren here enemyes Sye,
a(ens hem feste gotmen they hye,
13100

Also Faste As they myhten Ryde;
with here enemye they metten that tyde,
and theke tyme slowen down ryht euerichon,
that thike tyme from hem past not on.
13104

thike day be gaweyn so manye weren ded,
that body & hors weren al blood red.
For a(ens the ax that he bar on hond,
there myhte non man his dynt with-stond.
13108

þe his other brethren dyden wel tho,
For they slowen that day mani a fo.
and galachyn with gawayn evere was,
that mani mervelles wroth jn that plas ;
13112

For al that euer stood jn his weye,
he slowd down ryht, as j 30w seye.
but of þe marterdom þat made gaweyn,
hit is wondir to tellen, jn certeyn ;
13116
For a(ens his strok wolde nowht abyde
nethir harneys ne man that ilke tyde.
So fowhten the children that ilke day
with hem þat laden that Ilke pray,
that there ne sekapd but xx men,
of whiche 3it there weren ten
that returned to hem that comen behynde,
13120

of hem socour 3if they myhten fynde ;
of wheche vij thousand fully there were,
but alle wel armed weren they not there,
for hit was trossed hem be-Fore
among the chariettis that wente ther ;
13124
For the gret hete that was thanne,
onhaarmed ther red ful mani a manne.
13128

13094. boft, t through correction.
13115. madre, d through correction.
whanne these ten fugtyves comen ageyn
to tho vij thousand, they tolden hem pleyn
how that alle jslayn they were
that here cariage cowndyet there.

Whanne that the hethin vndirstodyn al this,
anon to here armes they wenten, j-wis;
shine that ony armure hadden tho,
dyden as wel as they myhten do.
so that the thridde partye there
of armure destitewd they were,
which jn charreittis was trossed be-fore,
pat these song sqwyers hadde wornen thore;
which to Londone they senten, with-owten let,
be theke passантes that with hem met,
and let comudie hem be anothing way,
est pat these hethenes scholde hem betray.
and sethen they seweden forth the chas,
til that they comen jnto that plas
there as thei to-gederis mette,
bothe hethen & cristen, with-owte lette.
\[13152. \text{for, ff through correction.} \]
\[13156. \text{Galachim cuts off the head of another;} \]
\[13160. \text{Gaheries chases a third, Guineban, who has hit Guerriers with a spear.} \]
\[13164. \text{Galachim so snot tho kyng Sonigran, that jnto the feld his hed fley than; for so took galachim there vppon, that his strok dorste abyden non.} \]
\[13165. \text{Gaheries chased kyng Gwyneband the drawht of an archier, j vndirstand, for he hadde beten his brothir gwerrers,} \]
\[13166. \text{But the third part have their weapons at hand, get ready.} \]
\[13168. \text{The squires, in pursuit of the fugtives, fall upon the heathen force.} \]
\[13169. \text{Gawein cleaves the body of one of their kings,} \]
\[13170. \text{That Guerriers was unhurt.} \]
\[13140. \text{now seized by the squires and sent off to London.} \]
\[13136. \text{Those who have their armour lying on the carts} \]
\[13132. \text{The fugitives tell of their defeat.} \]
\[13134. \text{so that the third part have their armour at hand, get ready.} \]
\[13138. \text{The squires, in pursuit of the fugitives, fell upon the heathen force.} \]
that ilke tyme of his fou;  
but that wiste not the sothe gaheries.)  
So forth he prekede in that pres  
with his swerd j-drawen on hande,  
as faste as the hors myhte fleande.

Whanne Gwynebant Gaheryet tho beheld,  
that he cam so prekyng in the feld,  
he fledde faste from hym a-way  
For drede of deth he hadde sein that day.  
(For he was of merveillus prowesse,  
and that day nygh dede as gret dystresse  
junto litel partye as dyde Gawayn,  
and al the sothe now Scholde j sayn.

He has sworn an oath  
never to rest,  
till he has avenged his brother's death.)  
that he scholde neuer in place abyde  
xethir day ne nyht, that he nobde ryde  
yppon the hethen, avenged til that he be  
of his brotheris deth, ful certeinle.

For he wende gwerres hadde ben dede  
Ful Sekerly there in that Stede.)  
and neere he sewed forth ful faste,  
tyl he onergat him at the laste.

So that behindes him were the hethen men  
an arblastes, j wot wel then.  
thanne swed hym gwynebantes meyne,  
that from that bataylle goamen they fle.

So that to-gederis they metten in fere,  
that Gaheriet so smot Gwynebant there  
thorwh the helm (ful Sone hit gol)  
that down he yfl with-oute ony abod  
So that the nyght qwarter fley away  
junto the Feld that same day.

Galleries fell other his horg,  
and wants to return.

13168. MS. they day.  
13184. and, d corrected from b.  
13200. omr added above the line.
and was ful joyful in that sted, that he hadde venged his brothers deth; So that to his compenye forward he goth. 3it this gwynebant, as he lay, Cryde and made ful gret deray. So that to him they comen be eche partie, as so faste as they myhte fyle, and with here eleyves comen gaheryet aboute, both hym & his hors in that nowte.  

3it this gwynebant, as he lay, Cryde and made ful gret deray. So that to him they comen be eche partie, as so faste as they myhte fyle, and with here eleyves comen gaheryet aboute, both hym & his hors in that nowte. to the erthe down they there bar bothe gaheryet and his hors ryght thar and his hors they Slowen vndyr hym. than wax Gaheries wondir crym, and vppon his feet he stirte ful blyve, as man that thowhte to Saven his lyve. and so he betterid in that plas, that there non of hem so hardy was ones to leggen vppon hym ony hand. therfore otherwyse they gone fand: with longe speris & swordis bothe and with al manere of scharpe knyves, forsothe, that ij or iij on knes was he browht; So that longe endureyn myhte he there nowht but jif that he were taken or ded; he myhte not flen owt of that sted. thanne was there a sqwier, that him say pace to purswen Gwynelhant in that place, kam wringeng his handis with hevy chere, and al to-tar & For-drowh his here. thanne to gaweyn streyht gan he go, that Gwerriers hadde j-nered & horsed tho vppon kyng Sernagnes hors, that this sqwier wan with gret fors.  

Whanne this sqwier Gaweyn Say tho, ful lowde he cryde: "What thenke ye do?"
Gawein comes to Gaheries' assistance. [CH. XIII.

Your brother Gaheries is lost, unless he gets speedy help.

Gawein prays to God and the Virgin that he may not lose his brother, for if he does, he will never be glad, nor fight again.

He chased and killed a heathen, but was pursued, and lies beaten in a dark valley!

Galachim says: "We have laboured hard to-day, and must labour harder still!"

Gawein takes the lead, as swift as an arrow, and works his way to Gaheries.

we han lost gaheriet, 3oure brothir dere, but he som socoar the sonere haue here, For a cursed heathene he chasede ful blyve, where-thorwh j trowe he hath lost his lyve. For the Hethen He Beet down to grownde, but the paynemys sewed jn that stounde, and 30ndir jn 3one dyrke valeye there lyth gaheriet beten, with-outen delaye. For passing gret los it now were thus forto lesen 3oure brothir dere."

whanne that gaweyn herde of this tydyng, anon he preide to hevene kyng and to blessid marye, his modir in fere, that he scholde not lesen his brothir dere."

"For 3if j hym lese jn this degré, joyful jn herte schal j thane neuer be; and 3if j thus lese hym jn this feld, abowtes my nekke neuer hangen schal scheld!"

Anon of the Esqwier axede he jn what partye that he myhte be, thane he him tolde: "jn 3one valeye vndir 3one wode, as j 3ow seye." thanze 3onge gaweyn ascryed anon that his meyne scholde with hym gon.

"Leve cosyn," quod galachim tho, "For this xede whom somone 3e so? we hanlaboured Sore this day, and 3it we mosten sorre, jn fay." So that they disrenged pere anon, and to-form hem alle gaweyn gan gon, and also faste he gan forth to ryde as qwarel of arblast doth owt glyde, with a nyht good ax jn his hond, and swich martirdom he made, j vndirstond, that thus they Slowen bothe to & fro a myle wey, er gaheriet they come to, and atte laste gaheriet they fownden.

354
liggende ful plat to the crownde.
(his helm they token of jn that sted,
for they wolden han smeten of his hed.
but they bethouhten hem also blyve,
that they wolden han taken hym on lyve,
and sende him forth to kyng Bernage,
on of the heathene ful of corage.
thanne torned they gaheriet pere anon
to bynden his hondis behinde his bakbon.)
thanne cam gawein rydyng ful faste,
whiles ony breth on him myhte laste,
with a myghty ax beryng on honde ;
there-with the heathen he thouhte don schonde.
whanne so with his brothir they token vppon,
he thowhte of hem to spare not on.

Thanne on bothe Sydes he gan on leye,
that wondir hit is al forto seye,
that non man dorst his strok abyde.
thanne behelden they that ylke tyde
that his brothir helden hem be-twene,
For swiche strokes hadde they non sene.
So that non lengere wolde they him kepe,
but 3if to the deth that they wolde lepe.
whanne Gaheriet say his brothir gawayn,
tho vp he Stirte and was ful fayn,
and cast his helm vppon his hed
ful rediliche jn that sted
and took his swerd & fawht ful faste.
æk Agrevayn his brothir he spide atte laste,
that him an hors pere browht jn hyghe
and seide: "gaheriet brothir, trewely,
worth vp faste vppon pis stede.
For 3e ben to blame, so god me sped,
so fer from 3oure felawes forto gon ;
So myhte 3e han lost 3oure lif anon.
Anon as caheriet to hors was dyht,
the bretheren ssemblede with al here myht.

13276. Grownnde, wn on erasure.
13280. hig, y corrected from e.
13281. fende d corrected from t.
13307. p' squeezed in afterwards.
13312. MS. alter'.
The peasants bring the booty to London.

The squire collect their forces; so do the heathen.

In the meantime, the peasants hurry on to London with the booty, anxious to bring it into a safe place.

The citizens are amazed at the sight, and ask who have wrought such a brave work.

The peasants answer: "Gawein, his brothers, and their cousin Galachim; they have left their own lands to help King Arthur.

With 700 men against 3000 they have won this.

and gathered here peple to-gedere in same, For hem was comeng mochel grame.
For the Hethen Wente Faste Abowte here batailles to gaderen jn to a rowte.

Now let vs resten of this Talkyng bothe of the hethene and pe children so yng. And of the passauntes let vs now talke, that with the caiage to Londone gonne walke.

Now reherseth forth here this Storye, that the passauntes gonne faste hem hye, as men joyful and glad they were that the cyte they hadde aprochyd so nere, For but fowre myles they were n thenes; and amonges hem but lytel defens, wherfore they hyed hem wondir faste, tyl juto pe cyte that they weren paste. for they wisten wel, the hethene wolden asaye 3if they myhte geten azen that praye. whanne they of the cyte behelden that Syht, Sore jn here hertis they weren afryht of that good & of that richesse that thike meyne browhte, with-outen distresse.

The cetezins axeden the passaunatis sone ho that al that prowess hadde done, they seiden that—"Gaweyn, kyng Lothis son, his brotherin & cosines jn viron, Galeriet, gwerres, & Agrevayn, and galachim here cosyne, jn certayn, kyng Newtres sone, as j 3ow telle, with the hethene they fyghten ful felle, and leven Londis, richesse, & alle thyling, and come to helpen Artheur oure kyng; that neuere for joye neper for wrake oure kyng Artheur xilen not forsake; but vij hundred felawes in compenye azen iij thousand this wommen they, trewlye, and hem they slowen everychon; that so with this pray gonne we gon. 13316
13320
13324
13328
13332
13336
13340
13344
13348
13339. Agrevayn, r corrected from y.
CH. XIII.] The Londoners send off help to the squires. 357

and now they fyghten with vij thousand mo, that this carriage purswed theo. 13352
Openeth the gates, this good te take, and som rescues for hem 3e make; 13356
For hit were bothe newthe and pyte but 3if that they reskewed now be."

Whanne the cetesins vnindirstodyn this, anon the gates thei opened, j-wys, and rescyved in that Tresor, that the passauntes broughten thor. 13360
and sethen a meyne, with-owten lesyng, scholde gon the children in socouryng, anon to pe maister tour they wente, and an horn they blewyn pere, veramente. 

Thanne was pere the custum tho that ech man thanne to armes scholde go. 
So that there Weren Redy Anon Ryht 13368
Sevne thousand men j-armed to fyght. 
thenne seide the captein of that town that hit xere non good resown—
"that manye hens scholde go,
what maner of xede we han hem to. 13372
and perfere me thinketh best hit were that somme of hem abyde how here."
so of pat meyne v thousand forth wente, and the remenant to pe cite weren sente. 13376

Thus pasten they forth to be dalk and dale tyl that they comen into the vale where as they fowthent sore jn fere 13379
and be pat tyme vij thousand newe hethen comen were, and whanne they were comen to pat gaderyng, they preiscede here felawes ryht non thing, that azens so lytel a meyne
so longe to holden ony chawd melle. 13384
"for but 3onge beardless boyes they ben,

13358. thei, i squeezed in afterwards.
13371. he nef corrected from henneuf.
13385. boyef, f squeezed in afterwards.
but iiiij xx knyhtes, as j kan see, and but v. hundred of sqwyers, that nether ne semen prowed ne fers, and xx that not dubbed ne be, and iiiij besides thanne, Sykerle."

but the heathene governours that pere were, medelans & guinechans bothe ju fere, hadden departyd here meyne into tweyne bataylles, Sykerle; and jn every bataylle iiiij thonne[n]d was of the heathene ju that plas. So that this Guinehans cam forth be-fore with a strong spere ju his handis thore; and Gaweyn, that to-fore alle op er was with his ax on honde ju that plas, and boldeliche he rod him to mete; for non maner of thing he wolde not lete, this guinechant with his spores his hors tho smot, & mette with Gaweyn anon foot hot, and aizens the brest Smot him so sore, that al on peces the spere fleygh thore. for his hauberk was strong jnowgh, of double Mayl bothe good & towgh, and him-Self a worthy Bacheler, that on enche wolde not reneven ther for non strok that he cowde Sette. that jonge Gaweyn ne did him lette, but to hym he rawhte ful ryht with his ax so trenchant as man of myht. vpon his helm he smot him so, that Top ouer tail he gan to go, and with that his hors fyl to grownde, and this was don ju in a lytel stownde.

Whazme that the heathene beheldden this, of that strok they merveilleden, j-wys,

13389. not, t blotted. 13395. MS. thoufed.
13403. hoof added in the right margin.
13405. Smot, S daubed.
13413. ful twice, the former crossed out.
For they wende here king ded hadde be; 
hym to socouren faste gome they fle,
and gaweyn amonges hem gan to ryde,
and they with him fowhten on ech syde,
and with here gleyves slowen his destre
betwene his thyes, as he roth ther.
thanne thusson he was on foote
bothe angry & fers & of herte ful hoote,
and on bothe sydes he leyde so vppon,
that of hem dorste neghen hym non.
thanne cam socour hym abowte,
so pat pere was strong fyht, with-owten dowte,
abowtes gawayn jn that stounde,
and evere lay kyng Guinehans atte grounde.
For the hetlhen jn dowte were
whether to reren guinehant they scholden gon pere
Owther Abowtes Gawayn forto Abyde;
thus jn dowte they weren that Tyde.
but gwawyns felawes Fowhten there sore,
and the melle wax hard evere more & more.

Whazne gawayn wist where-abowtes they were,
that they wolde taken him presonere
& an hethen hadde smeten his broper Agrevayn,
wherfore he was sory, in certayn,
and stirte him forth jn al that pres
with his ax on honde (he wolde not ses),
and lifte vp his ax pere on hy,
pat he 'ethehen to han Smeten, trewly.
this hethen ne myhte not wel asterte,
but caste vp his Scheld also smerte;
& with his ax he smot hit on peces two,
that juto pe feld they flowen tho.
the strok vppon pe left shollder alyhte,
and down to pe girdyl he cef him down ryhte,
that down to pe erthe he fyfl anon,
and gaweyn his hors took ful son.
thanne vp he stirte jn ryht gret haste,

13430. hym, MS. hym.
13442. they, y squeezed in afterwards.
Encouraging his comrades, anon to his Felawes he ascried wel faste:

"let se, eche man prove his prowesse,
that with vs here ben, more oper lasse.
For now scholen ye sen pat bothe my strokes & myht
this oure ben doubled, j yow plyht."

thanne amonges the hethene gan he ryde,
and gret martirdom he mad that tyde,
that the pecis flowen jn-to the feld
as wel of nemes bodies as of scheld.

be that tyme guinehans was vp set
To asayen jif he cowde don ony bet.
he took a stowt lawnce, jn certeyn,
and faste he rod aens Agreveyn,
that his owne cosin hadde j-slayn
be-forn his owne eyen, certayn.

So aens him he rod with mayn & myht,
and sire Agrevaynes he smot ful ryht,
that hors & man to grownde he wente;
thanne wenden his bretheryn he hadde be schente.

Whanne Gaheriet & galachim this gonne beholde,
jn here hertes they woken ful colde,
for siker they wenden he hadde be de[d];
him to reskwe they wente jn pat sted.

Galachym was jfe ferste tho
pat to guinehant gan forto go,
& vpon the helm so hym smot,
that his bak bowede anon fot hot;
and guerreiers smot him thorgwh the arm
(git ey he wente, hadde he more harm),
and gaheriet betwene pe nekke & pe scholder bon,
that jnto pe feld pe hed flygh anon;
and galachim with his foot that stounde
threw down pe Body to the grownde,
and took his hors & ladde to Agreveyn,
that on foote fawht with strengthe & mayn.

and whanne Agreveyn was vpe j-dyht,
Gawein's retreat. Arrival of the Londoners.

When the hethene saw that Gawinehaut was so ded thurh his owne deaut, they turned fast anon to flyht. For they were full hard in bekering amongst the hethene vndir the lynde; so fer hit was, he was hard to fynde.

Gawein is fighting farther off. The hethen, seeing Guinehaut (Guinehaut) killed, flee to Mandelent (Medelane).

Thanne Gawein, that Was So fer Ju gon, whanne thydings of his bretheren herde he non, he wende descomfit that they hadde be, and gan to withrawen him, certeinle.

Gawein, hearing nothing from his brothers, begins to retreat. Then he sees the brothers coming, but Mandelent's brigade stands between.

by this time, the 5000 Londoners appear. The young squires recognize them.

Whanne that the children wisten this, that they weren of Londone, j-wis, in herte they hadden nyht grete joye, and rejoice.

13496, was, s through correction. 13510, MS. lyhtyge. 13518, Breteyne, E corrected from y.
Continuation of the battle. [CH. XIII.

They attack afresh; for pe lasse the hethen hem scholde anoye.

They attack afresh; they torned here hors al jn fere, & vppon pe hethen they ryden jn there. but thanne were they the hethen sory, For kyng Guinehaut lay ded hem by, thussonc they gonnen welle sone; thanne was per not a litel to done.

Spears are broken, here speres schatered jn pe feld, & many hethen ded vndir his scheld. And whanne here speris to-broken were, eche man to his swerd took there.

Swords are drawn, So ech with-jnne oper gan to ryde, So that gret bataylle was pat tyde. bothe of hors & ek of men ful strong bloodsched was pere then, that it ran down be eche vale, as here reheerseth this ylke tale; perto pe dost so gret hit was, omethis ony oper knew jn pat plas.

And much blood is shed, The furious battle

Ful strong was janne that melle of the children and [hem] of Londone, as ye mown se, agens tho cursed hethen wyhtes, that so longe endured jn fyhtes.

The furious battle lasts until evensong. From morwen jnto evensong belle, so longe they fowhte, as j yow telle. There dede gaweyn worthy provesse amonges the hethene jn that presse, thanne mette with kyng Mandleent; with him to fyhte hadde he good entent. For he hadde smyte on of his kyn, &perfore he thowhte to meten with hym.

Gawein meets with Mandleent, Doon of kerdyf was his name; who has struck one of his kin, a man he was of ful good fame. Doon of Cardiff, to be ertye he hadde him brawht, whiche pat gaweyn ful sone him sowht.

13532. there, th on erasure (probably f was erased).
13536. it ran, the second f and as blotted.
13550. MS. and of London.
13557. Mandleent, nt corrected from is.
13564. gawyn, 6 corrected from f.
he wolde han smeten of his hed,
but anoper thowht gawayn in pat sted.
Atte laste sit Gaweyn with Mandelent mette,
& on strok he on him sette;
thorwh his helm Ran gaweyns dynt,
and at his teth pere hit stynt,
& he fil ded down to pe grownde;
thanne sory weren pe hethen set stonde.

Whanne the Hethene Behelden tho
that kyng Mandelent was ded so,
Ful sore abassched alle they were,
So pat echon they fledden there,
and to Vandobers they gonne hem hye,
where as the Sege was, Sekerlye.
thanne began the chas ful strong
and ek gret dowst, pat ros hem among,
that non man oper myhte knowe,
not pe fadyr the Sone in that rowe.
So that Sore was that Bataylle,
that in thyke chas weren slayn, sauns faille,
what be gaweyn & his Felawis there
and with helpe of hem of londone in fere—
xij thousand weren Slayn vpryht,
that onnethe of pat meyne askapen ne myht
not thre thousand of al that rowe;
So they were chased bothe jmne & owte.
thus the hethene weren scomfyt echon,
& homward ful joyful pe children gonne gon
To the cyte of londone ful napelye;
these children ful caste gonne hem hye,
with presoners and pray caste pedir they nonne,
with the goodis pat tofore tyme pe hethene hadden wonne.

Whanne that these children to Londone weren went,
gret joye the cetceins maden, verament,
and to-form hem they Browhten anou
alle the prayses that they hadden don.
thanne to Gawayn seiden they there,
ju maner as chef lord that he were,
and distribute the goods.

But Gawein leaves it to Sir Boon of Cardiff, who knows the people.

The citizens praise Gawein's gentleness and modesty.

that he scholde maken distribucion of this good thare al Jn vyrown.

Thanne answerede Sire gaweyn anon
that for now thing he noble hit don.

" but let Sire doon of kerlyf cyte departen hit as that he wyl for me.

For he knoweth bothe Poure & niche and aftir eche degre to departyn aliche, perfore at his wille hit Schal be do,

For of hit j wele enterme no mo."

and whanne the ceteeines herden this, Ful nochel gaweyn they preiseden, j-wys, and hym they lovedyn with stedfast herte, For he was gentyl, debonewre, meek, & aperte.

thus jn londone restede that meyne with mirthe, Joye, and Solempnite.

Now a whille neste we of this matere, and of kyng Artheur let vs spoken here, of kyng Bors, and of kyng Ban, that thike tyme weren ful worthi men, and also of here compenie tho,

that jnto tarmelide with hem gone go with kyng leodegam forto dwelle jn maner of Sowdiours, as j 3ow telle.

[leaf 140b]

Chap. XIV.

Now Forthere to this mater Let Vs pace, 3if that god wyle graunt en vs grace, hon that Arthewr past owt of his lond and with hym these kynges, 3e vndirstond, bothe kyng Ban and eke kyng Bors, that weren men of myht and Fors;

how that they riden Jn here jorne, Tyl to Tarysse they comen alle thre, where as lay kyng leodegan, j vndirstond, that was a worthi man of his lond.

On palmes-somme eve jn gomen they ryde and with hem merlyn that jike tyde. there thus merlyn rod hem be fore

on a fulfair stede to pe paleis thore,
where as was tho kyng leodegan,
that in ful gret thowht was he than.
For kyng ryownus hadde entred his lond
with xv ober kynges, j vndirstond,
and hym they hadde chased so sore
and from place to place dryven hym thore.
So that these kynges logged hem alle
a-Forn Neblaise cite, as gan be-falle,
which cite was riche and plentevous
of goodis & of vitaille delicious.
wherfore that tyme kyng Leodegan
jn herte was a ful hevy man,
For he niste how Forro do,
uther how his lond defenden hem fro
(For in his Lond hadde he, non meyne
that Sege to remeven, certeinle),
x> owt of his lond he myhte hem chace;
of wheche he axed counseyl jn that place
of knyhtes and of othere mo,
that at thike tyme were comen hym to.

In the mene whyle, whiles here-of they speke,
kyng Arthewr and his compenie goznen jn Reke,
and cam to-fore kyng leodegan,
that with his barowns counseil held than.
be tweyne and tweyne they entred tho,
and juto his halle they entreden so,
and merlyne jn here compenye,
but xlij vndir alle, with-owten lye.
Ful nichely vestured & arrayed they were,
and alle Beeltes bacherelis thanne jn fere
Sof pe two bretheren kynges pat there weren than,
kyng Boors of gawnes and kyng Ban,
whiche that to-forn wenten tho;
and merlyne pe message heve gan do.
but alle the lordis pat with-june were,
of this peple hadden xerveil there.

13641. was, v corrected from t.
13653. forto do corrected from to do.
13660. hym, y corrected from r. 13661. MS. Juthe.
Arthur offers his service.

The strangers bow to the king; he rises.

Ban salutes him;

the king says they are welcome,

if their intentions are good.

Ban replies:

"For no evil do we come,

but to help you.

If you will not have us,

[leaf 140 c]

we will go thither where people are glad of our coming.

However, we were told that you keep all manner of mercenaries."

King Leodegan consults his council.

and whanne they comen to-fore the kyng, they hym obeyeden in worscheping.

Anon the kyng nos hem ageyn, as this storye reporteth certeyn,

For they semeden ful worthy men be here aray that they hadden then.

Thus whanne they weren entred echon, thanne bespak kyng Ban be re anon, and Salwede kyng leodegan.

anon thusone he 3ald him than, and seide that alle welcomen they were—

"3if that for good 3e be comen here."

thanne bespak kyng Ban tho, and to kyng Leodegan he seide vnto :

"Certein, Sire, with-owten lesyng, For non maner of evel isoure comeng, Ne not we comen owt ofoure contre here in thy lond Forto noyen the, but as in manere of socouryng, For sothe as j 3ow seye, Sire kyng, and 3ou to don Servise jn swich dege that to 3oure plesanuce now myhte be. and 3if 3e wilens not with vs don so, Owt of 3oure lond, sire, we scholen go And to Betaken 3ow god Al-myht, that algates he sped 3ow jn 3oure ryht; and we scholen gon jnto an nothir contre, theper as men of oure comenge glad wylen be and vs resceyven jn Swich a manere as we to 3ow oure Servise profren here. but certeiny hit was vs tolde that alle manere of Sowdiours 3e with-holde, and perfore was hedyr oure comeng; Therfore 3oure wille telle vs, Sire kyng."

Thanne answerede kyng Leodegan that with his counsel spoken wolde he than.

so pat he axede of hem anon what that were best forto don.

13714. Ms. unrē.
and they to him answerid anone
that he scholde with-holden hem echone.
"For worthy men they Semen alle,
what so evere there-of may befall.
and also hastily as 3e mown don,
that 3e knowen here names echon,
and whens they ben & of what conter;
al this that [3e] knowen in certeinte."

thane partyd leodegan from his crownsaille,
and to these Barouns he cam, sauns saylle.
"J merveille mochel of 3oure askyng,
& that 3e wilne not discureyn 30w for non thing,
xe tellen what 3oure names ben;
swich anoper meyne haue j not Sen.
but goode men me semeth be 3oure chere;
that causeth me to resecyuen 3ou here.
and ryht welcome mooten 3e be
bothe to my Barouns ek to me
as Frendis and felawes to my Socowr,
thus to 30w troste j bothe day & owr.
and to this 3e scholen don me affiancyme
with me to stonden int0 owttromane;
& as longe as 3e ben in my compeny,
trewly me to helpen 3e scholen me affyne.
but of on thing j wolde 3ow preye:
that what 3e ben, 3e wolden me Seye;
and for this cause, 3e vndirstonde:
3e moun ben swich men of opere londe,
that hit myhte ben gret schame to me
of 30w Servise to taken, certeine,
and that j not of power were
3oure mele to qweten jn non manere.
For j Suppose, ful trewely,
that 3e ben grettere men than am j."

Thanne they answered hym ageyn
that him misplesen they Nolden, certeyn,
but hym to Serve jn Swich degre,

13716. He is advised
to keep them all,
13720. and to find
out who they are.
13724. He says to
them:
13728. But you seem
to be good men;
therefore I
will keep you.
Be welcome
as friends and
helpers,
13732. and promise
to be true to
me.
13736. Tell me who
you are.
13740. Perhaps it
would be a
shame for me
to accept your
service;
13744. for you may
be better men
than I?"
13748. They promise
to please him
Arthur takes lodgings in the town. [CH. XIV.

and to tell their names as soon as possible.

Then Arthur and his men are conducted by Merlin to the house of a good young man, and his devout wife.

He is called Blaires, she, Leonel. They alight, are welcomed by the host, and have their horses put into the stable. They spend a week in good cheer, serving King Leodegan at his court.

Then the king sends out messengers

That likyngge to hym Scholde hit be. and thus ensurede kyng Ban, certeinelye, For hym and for all his compenye, and that, as hastily as he myhte, alle here names to declaren owt nyhtle. 13752

Thanne thus departyd they from the kyng jnto the town to taken here loggeng of the beste that they cowden gete. So pat merlyne hem ladde jnto a strete To ryht a good 3ong manes hous, that was bothe riche and plentevous and ryht good eseument jn alle degre ; thydir ladde hem merlyn, certeinle. 13760

Ek a good womman there was at house, that wel lovede god and ek hire spouse. and him-Self was curteis ek also, and of good lif they weren bothen two. 13764

Therto hym-Self Blaires hyhte, his wyves name Leonel be ryhte. whanne to pat hostel pat they comen there, anon they alyhten al jn fere, and Blayres wente hem ageyn, and seyde they weren welcome, jn certein. Anon they Answerede Hym Ful sone that he scholde han Cristes benysone. 13772

they alytheden, and jn-to halle they wente, whiche was onestly arayed and gentе. and the 3omen loggeden here hors anom, and deden jn stable what was to don. 13776

thus there they sojorned viij dayes, not but sten & dronkyn, & merye playes and on norwe they to court wente and ek at even after here talente. 13780

so thus they serveide kyng leodegan with alle the worschepe they cowden than thanne sente forth this kyng anom be sondry messengeris many on

13781. sojornel, j corrected from i.
CH. XIV.] *Leodegan levies an army. The heathens' inroad.* 369

that alle thike that myhte armes bere, hem-self to defende, here enemies to dere, that jn Toraysse they sholde ben on ascencioun even bothe fair & clen. and ho so brak this comandement Jn ony decre be his entent, lik a man-mordere he sholde ded be and perto his good to lesen, ful sikerle.

On the tothir syde sente Leodegan of al his kynrede to every man and al aboutes jnto eche contre there he supposede ony sowdiours to be. for he ne sparede for Siluer ne Goold that plente of Sowdiours hauen he would. So put with-owten ony more let at assencioun, pe whiche was set, xi thousand jn tente and pavylon weren logged vndir toreyse town what on hors and what on foote with-owten hem of pe town, wel j wote. in the mene while that this kyng hadde thus aboutes sent his warneng, hapsed that vpon the even of may vpon hym entrede, with-owten delay, kyng plarious & kyng Ioallaund, whiche weren bothe of yrland, Ek of assirois kyng Sonigrans, and of pe same Lond kyng Sorohans. these from the ost comen adown jnto Tarmelyde al jn virown with xv thousand armed ful clen For Nede of vytaylle, as that j wene. So hit hapsede, as hit hem befelle, that nygh to toraysse they com ful snelle, where as soionerde kyng leodegan, that his meyne abod there than. so put there was gret noyse & cry

13792. Eve, to Toraise on Ascension
13796. on pain of death.
13800. He also hires soldiers in various countries.
13804. 40,000 men assemble.
13808. Meanwhile, the country is invaded by four heathen kings,
13812. 10,000 men assemble.
13816. who come in search of provision, and approach Toraise
13820. with great noise.
13824. His added in the left margin; k corrected, daubed.
13808. vel, l added afterwards.  
MERLIN.—II. B B
Three sets of knights

The citizens shut the gates.

All the knights assemble.

(1) The 250 knights of the Round Table have

Hervy of Rivel and Malet le Bruns for leaders,

and keep to themselves.

(2) The knights of the town are

[leaf 141 a] Their leader is Cleodalis,

who used to carry the king's banner before the arrival of the 250 knights,

but now carries a small ensign.

The great banner, carried by Hervy of Rivel,

of these malfectours, sekerly,

that robbeđe & stroyeđe that contre.

Anon the citezéines aspiden hit, sykerle,

and here ȝates they schetten ful blyve,

that owt schołde gon now man on lyve.

anon asarmes they gone to crye,

the chevalrie þat with-junne was, trewele,

and to-forn the ȝate they semblde anon,

knyhtes of þe rownd table everychon,

and the cheventeyn of hem was

hervy of Ryvel þu that plas,

and malet le bruns was his felawe,

that many a man browhten of dawe,

with cc. & fyfty þu here compenye

of worthy Bodyes, with-owten lyce,

that vndir hevene non bettere were

thanze tho bodyes that were ther.

these be hem-selven weren alone,

For with opere meddelen wolden they none.

On the tother part they goneþ þem dyhte,

the chevalrye of þe towne anon ryhte,

And of hem iiiij thousand ther were,

That myhte Bewelden Bothe Scheld and Spere.

this meyne hadden a cheventeyn

that cleodalis hyhte, þucerteyn,

that wont was the kynges baner to beare

bothe þu pes and ek þu werre.

but sethen the kynhteþ of þe rownde table

that Lond entreden, with-owten fable,

thanne was hervy of Ryvel

the kynges banor erveridel.

but he bar a lytel gomfaynouþ & did it sprede

with twyne Langues be ryht resoun rede,

the Feld gold with corowns of ynde.

and the grete baner, that cam behynde,

whiche that hervy Ryvel Bar.

jn this maner was ariaid thar:

13830. schołde corrected from schelde. 13850. MS. hyghten.
13852. werre, the second r corrected from e.
with four tongues fair and pleyn,
and there-jme coronas of gold, in certeyne,
the Field assure bothe fair and scheme;
thus this Baner bar he hem betwene.
whanne nedy armed that they were,
afor the gate they sembeden there,
and abyden the kynges comeng,
that zit at that tyne was anarmyng.
and whanne the kyng j-armed was,
anon he asemblede jn that plas,
and þere drowh to hervyes Baner
sytteng upp on a good dester.
and þere he houed with his compenye
To known of these jresch more certeinlye.

On þe thridde partye was armed than
kyng arthour, king Bors, & kyng Ban,
and his compenye al jn fere,
of wheche but xlij ther were.
and ful ryaly they weren adyht,
and merlyn here baner bare in fyht.
and whanne j-horsed alle they were,
þanne to hem Seide merlyn there
that thyke day bothe gret & smalle
to Sewen his baner, what enere befalle.
"jn what place that evere ze hit Se,
loke ze hit Sewe and folweth me."
and alle they seiden with on cry
that So they wolden, ful trewely.
þanne so they reden thorwh þe town,
and merlyn bar here gomfaynown.
but richere arayed þanne they were,
þn that town was neue re seyn there.
and here baner was ryht merveyllous
Forte beholden and ryht spetous:
his Baner hit was on dragown,
and not ful gret hit was jn virown;
the tayl a kebyt and an half was long,
al j-mailled as a serpent ful strong;

371 13864 has four lozenges with golden crowns.

13868 The knights assemble at the gate;

13872 the king joins them,

13874 and waits there.

13876 (S) Arthur and his 42 companions likewise get ready.

13879 Merlin, who carries the banner,

13884 asks all to follow it,

whatever may happen.

13888 They ride through the town.

13892 Their banner is of strange and grim device:
a dragon

13900 with a scaly tail.

13892. h', abbreviation mark in darker ink.
Merlin passes through the closed city-gates. [CH. XIV.

and vomiting fire.—  

By this time the heathen have come to the town,  

and assail the gates; then they go into the meadows, and seize the grazing cattle.

Merlin arrives at the gate with his troop.

He says to the gate-keeper: "Let us pass out."

The keeper replies: "Not without the command of the king."

Merlin says: "That's bad, as I am as strong as you."

He pulls out the gate with his hand, and out they ride.

and his throte so grete & sterne hit was, that hit Semede hem jn that plas so that the tonge that stood with-inne euere enflawmeng & wolde not blynne, that thorwh the throte owt fyr hit caste vpe jnto the ayr, hit semede hem faste. and jn the mene while the jresch men, that hethen tho weren, as j 3ow ken, with here spere comen to the town, and the yates asayllede jn virown. and sethen jnto pe mædewes they wente, & alle the bestes they token, veramente, that abowtes the town jn pasture weren tho; with hem they mæden hem forto go. For þere nas non man hem to defende, Tyl that god sone grace gan sende. thowrgh þe town past merlyne anon, There As the peple Weren sembled Echon, and thowrgh that pres redily he paste, tyl to the yate he cam atte haste and with hym there al his meyne. Anon to the porter thane seide he: "let vs now, porter, here owt pace, Fore hit is tyme to comen on place." and þe porter answered hem ageyn that they Scholden not passen hit, Jn certein, with-owten comandement of the kyng, and thus 3af he hem to answerynge. "that is be misaventure," quod merlyn tho, "that thou þe yate ne schalt vnde, whanne that j am as strong as thou, and that Schal j sone preven now." Anon kam merlyne to the yate, and with his hond pulled there-ate, and pulde þe yate owt from the ston. thanne owt they wenten there echon, ho so wolde or ho so xolde; owt they Riden al glytered jn goolde.
Whanene that the two an fourty men
owt of pe cyte were passed than,

The gate closes behind them.

The gate closes behind them.

All marvel.

All marvel.

Merlin first overtakes
2000 heathen

Merlin first overtakes
2000 heathen

with plenty

with plenty of booty,

merlyne gan hym hye,
and ovetook of that meyne

two thousand heathen jresch, certeinle,

Merlin first overtakes
2000 heathen

Merlin first overtakes
2000 heathen

and ladden with hem a ful gret praye.
thanne anon as merlyne hem saye,
anon he Sewede with his Banere,

Merlin first overtakes
2000 heathen

Merlin first overtakes
2000 heathen

and his compenye holy foliewede him there.

attacks them,

attacks them,

betwene hem þere was gret bataille,

that certainly, with owten fayle,

betwene hem þere was gret bataille,

that certainly, with owten fayle,

be half a myle nygh hem was non

be half a myle nygh hem was non

but the xlij there al alo,

but the xlij there al alo,

and token the pray, & lad it ageyn

and token the pray, & lad it ageyn

afor the gates tho, þa certein.

afor the gates tho, þa certein.

and they ne hadde not ryden but a stounde,

and they ne hadde not ryden but a stounde,

that they Sien vpon the crownede

that they Sien vpon the crownede

the foure kynges rehearsed be fore

the foure kynges rehearsed be fore

with xv thousand men j-armed thore,

with xv thousand men j-armed thore,

that with hem ladde so gret plente

that with hem ladde so gret plente

of kariage & of pray to ward the se,

of kariage & of pray to ward the se,

that they hadde robbed jn that lond,

that they hadde robbed jn that lond,

as j do 30w here to vndirstond.

as j do 30w here to vndirstond.

Anon as merlyne sawh al this,

Anon as merlyne sawh al this,

thanne to his feleschepe he cryde, j-wys:

thanne to his feleschepe he cryde, j-wys:

"Seweth me now for ony thyng,

"Seweth me now for ony thyng,

and þe scholen Sen a good boorlyng."

and þe scholen Sen a good boorlyng."

there they hym seweden everichon,

there they hym seweden everichon,

but þere to-fore merlyne gan gon.

but þere to-fore merlyne gan gon.

and swich a wynd he gan to acre

and swich a wynd he gan to acre

with wondir blasites of tempest þere,

with wondir blasites of tempest þere,

that swich a powdir amonges hem þere was,

that swich a powdir amonges hem þere was,

amonges þere enemyes jn that plas,
Cleodalis with 4000 knights joins in the battle. [CH. XIV.

that they cannot see one another.

that none of them oper myhte Se;

So merveillous dowst hit was & gret plente.

Anon as these two and fowrty men
with ijne these heathen weren Enrid than,
they beten and slowen so many a-down,
that ded abowtes they lyen in virown.

Anon comanded kyng leodegan
that the 3ates anon opened weren than;
and so they weren jn nyht gret haste,
So that thilke meyne owt were Paste.

There the Steward Rod forth Be-fore
with iiiij Thousand men wel armed thore,
and they founden the gate schet ful faste,
there as merlyne and his meyne owt weren Paste.
with xv thousand they fowhten that whyle pere
Ful merveillously a ful gret tyde in fer.

Thanne forth cam cleodalys tho,
and to that pres faste gan he go.
So that the noyse of speris that pere were,
the brekyng of hem, into the cyte was herd there. 13996
there was thanne so gret distroccsion
of men deo & hors slayn j[n] virown,
So that hit Semede be hère gruntynyng
that hit hadde ben a merveillous thondryng,
but merveillously wroghte these xlij men
that vndir merlynes Banere weren than.

Whanne that the iiiij kynges Syen at this,
that with the cristene they were thus melliid, j-wis,
they departed her meyne anon vntwo,
of wheche vj m† to pe cyte gan go
ægens the baner of kyng leodegan.
whanne they aspide hym comeng than,
æch of hem ægens oper gan forto ryde,
also faste as they myghten that Tyde.

13988. T through correction. 13991. pere added afterwards.
13992. schylle crossed out, and tyde in ferde added, at the end of
the line. 13998. MS. j vitæ.
13999. ḷ, abbreviation mark in darker ink.
14006. MS. w with f at the top (= milde).
14008. MS. cæneg.
and ye toper viij thousand fowhten ful faste,
whilles that here strenthe myhte laste.

but leodegan and this othir meyne,
betwixen hem grete bataylle was, sikere,
that bothe helmes & hauberkes j-borstyn they were,
Neper non mail of steel lasten myhte not there,
that down they fillen al blody to grownde,
For here was joven many a dethes wounde.
And whanne here speris j-borsten they were,
onon here swerdys they drowen owt there.
thanne began there grete Bataylle,
that mervelle to beholde hit was, sauns saylle.

and namly the knyhtes of he rownd table
mervellously they fowhten, with-owten fable,
of wheche weren but two hundred & fyfty,
and of the tothere viij thousand, ful sekerly.
but at gret mischef they weren there,
that here bodyes gonnen tremblen for fere;
and whethir they wolde other none,
here grownd to forsaken mad weren they sone.
but they helden hem so faste in fere,
thanne the se haunt,
and of hem so lytel peple there was
agens so grete meyne in that plas,
Ful gret dispit hadden these kynges bothe,
and sworn ful bitterly many a grete othe
that of hem askape scholde not on,
as ferforthly as they myhten don.

Thusson e they maden an ordnance
Forto han wrowht this meyne mischance.

So that xl of that litel compenye
weren sore desowld, with-owten lye.
And euer this jrescli heathen peyned hem fulsore
King Leodegan is taken prisoner. [CH. XIV.

370

hem to han de-fowlid ful nochelis more
and hem to han mayned, 3if hit myhte han be;
but they myhte not thanne for here compene.
For with-june hem per non man there paste,
as fer as ony of here dyntes of swordis myhte laste. 14052

And ju this mene whille, as j 3ow telle,
vpon kyng leodegan they soweden ful felle,
So that fulsore beten he was ju that place,
and there with his enemies j-taken he was 14056
and lad forth there anon tho nyht
with v hundred reedy armed to fyht.
So Hym Forth they Ladden, As J Vndyrstond,
towards kyng Ryown of jrlond, 14060
And with gret joye they forth hym ladden,
for they wenden the verris ended ben hadde.
So thus they hyede hem wondir faste,
Tyl owt of the ost that they weren paste. 14064
And whanne that kyng leodegan Say this,
that with his enemies he was taken, j-wys,
and him forth ladden moche mangre his hel,
For sorwen he swownede ju that sted,
and wepe ful Sore, & make gret pyte,
that ju swich a maner j-taken was he.
they hym forth ladden vpon the weye
two Skottysch milles, the sothe to seye. 14072
but evere the xoyse ful gret hit was
of the vij thowsend ju that plas
and of the cc. and fyfty knyhtes,
that a3ens pe vij thousand held fyhtes, 14076
that maden gret sorwe & gret mone,
For kyng leodegan was so gone.
and whanne they syen, hit wolde non oper be,
that non reskeus was ther, sekerle,
they dresseden here bakkes al jn fere,
and ju maner of a scheltrum they stoden there,
and there thanne so sore they fowhte,
that non man deren hem ne mowhte. 14080
but they maden gret occisioun
of men & hors aboutes hem ju virown
14082. ad corrected from an (in darker ink).
Merlin rides to rescue.

with-owten remevyng of any place;

ful mochel peple be hem j-slayn pere wace.

So that they swetten for gret peyne,

ful Mocliel pe}ile be hem j-slayn yere.
wace.

14088

The lookers-on in the city weep with anguish,

so hydous the storm was & so sodeyne,

that they that atte wyndowes gommen loke

out of the cyte, as Seith the boke,

wepten for angwysce & for pyte

for the sorowe that they be these knyhtes gommen se,

and merveilled grely jn here mynde

how swich hertis with-jnnen hem nyhten they fynde.

but whazme goanore beheld hire fadir dere,

that with his enemyes forth lad was he there,

Ful grely deol sche gan to Make,

and Rieht grely Sorwe to here gan take.

Now a while lete vs here dwelle,

and of kyng Artheur lete vs now spelle

and also of his compenenye, sauns faylle,

now that they spedden in bataylle

Azens viij thousand forto fyhte,

thike xlij men of gret nyhte,

and with hem the steward of Tarmelyde,

that cleodalis hyght that tyde.

Now reherseth this Storye ryht here

of the xlij whiche put there were,

& of the iiiij thousand that cleodalis

vndir his Baner browhte, j-wys,

whiche with viij thousand j-melled were,

that kyng sonigrenx & Sorohanx cowndiet there;

of whiche weren manye defonlyd & slayn,

as this storye reherseth here in certayn.

And Whanne they Hadden Longe Fowhten In Fere,

merlyne with his Banere owt prekede there,

and to his meyne he cryede In greth haste

that they hym Scholden folwen faste.

and so they dyden ryht Swyffly tho,

as faste as here hors cowden Renne oper go,

14100

Now we will return to Arthur and his 42 followers,

together with Cleodalis the steward

14104

and his 4000 men,

in make with the 5000 heathen

under Sonigrens and Soroheans.

14112

[leaf 142 a]

And Whanne they Hadden Longe Fowhten In Fere,

after a long fight,

Merlin calls on his company to follow him;

they ride swiftly,
Rescue of king Leodegan.

[CH. XIV.

...and overtake the prisoners, tyl that they come into on valay, where as these v hundred ladden awey kyng leodagan, here presoner.

Merlin cries: And anon merlyn ascryed hym ther:

"Rescue the kyng," "Now, barouns, let Se, kythe here 3oure myht To reskwen the kyng here with 3oure fyht.

or he goes his way!" and but zif 3e don, he goth his way."

And evere he cride: "Tray, tray, tray!"

So that these knyhtes Sewede on faste, Tyl they hym ouertoken atte laste.

They rush into the convoy, Thussone they entred hem between with manye gret strokis, as hit was sene, and slowh & mayned al that per were, that nowht on his hele hadde there.

They slay, and maim. there þese xlij naden swich martyrdom, of men & hors a ful gret Som, that vunethes askaped ony away of thike v hundred, the Sothe to say,

Of the 500 escape only five. Sauf only fyte, that fledden be-fore, anon as kyng leodagan they hadden forlore.

King Leodegan marvels, And thus Reskwed was Leodagan the kyng, whiche to hym was ful gret merveyllyng,

To sen Swich martirdom In that plase as of thyke lytel peple þæt nuad there wase. and whanne he beheld the dragown þat merlyn bar, thanne wiste he wel his fremdis weren þære.

They rush into the convoy, thanne thankedes he god of that dede, that so his Sowdeours with him dyden spede. Anon merlyn there to hym wente, and þere hym sesede anon presente.

Ulfen and Bretel alight, Whanne Ylphyn beheld kyng Leodegan, anon of his hors alyhte he than, and sire Bretel in the same wyse, anon he alyhte to þat kyng of pryse, and him unbownden, & armed hym wel.

14124...14140...14144...14148...14152...14156...
Merlin rides to the help of the 250 knights.

and sette hym on a destrer bothe good & lel.

whanne Bretel & Vlphyn horsid hym hadde in pat wise,

he thankede hem ful hihly of here Servise.

14160

thanne merlyne began to ascryen eft sone:

“Now thynketh, Barouns, what se han to done.

Seweth now me, what euere se do,

and be non wyse partyth not me fro.”

14164

he took his hors with the spores welfaste,

and toward the cyte he priked in haste,

where that the knyhtes of the rounde table

at gret nischef weren, with-owten fable,

of wheche two hundre[d] and fyfty knyhtes

there were but xx on hors owt-nyhtes,

and al the remnant on foote were,

and ful manfully fowhten there.

14168

thanne merlyne priked so faste to-fore,

so faste hym Sewede his feleschepe thore,

that here hors on swot they weren echon ;

So faste thyderwards dyden they gon.

14172

And the dragoun pat merlyn Bar,

Swiche plente of fyr hit cast owt thar,

that tho whiche weren in the cyte,

Large half a xyle they myhten hit se,

the clerensse of that Fer so bryht,

how jnto the eyr hit wente vp ryht.

14176

When the citizens see

the little troop coming

the dragon vomiting so much fire

that it can be seen at fully half a mile’s distance.

14180

With king Leodegan,

they rejoice.

So does Gunore and wonders who these knyhtes are

14184

wherfore gret joye they gone to make,

and so dede gonnore for here fadris sake,

merveilleng sore what these knyhtes were,

14188

merlyne that the cetzeins of that cite

behelden that jlike litel meyne,

thanne wisten they wel, the xlij it were,

that in feleschepe weren in fere,

and with hem was kyng leodagan,

that these xlij hadde reskwed than.

wherfore gret joye they gone to make,

and so dede gonnore for here fadris sake,

merveilleng sore what these knyhtes were,
Achievements of

That so Vygoursly fowhten there.
For lyk as thondyr here dyntes ferde,
that jnto the eyr hit myhte ben herde;
For so mervcellent was here fyhtyng,
that alle that weren jn here stondyng
they Slowen down ryht as they come,
that to-gederis they lyen on many a thorne.
and whanne the xlij jn ferde
amonges tho jeawntis weren entred pere,
thanne began the fyht so strong,
that wondir passyng noyse was hem among.
so that eonnore, with-owten xay,
that hydows noyse myhte hereu, Jn fay.
there dyde kyng Ban of Baynok,
with correcense, his swerd, 3af many a strok.
For whom that evere pere-with he smot,
to grownde they wenten anon foot hot,
that neyther helm, hauberk, ne haberjon
withstondyn his dyntes myhte nouht on.
and thus took he on jn that Bataylle,
pat downryht slowh man & hors, with-owten faille.
so there nas non, myhte with-stonden his dynt,
Tyl of here lyve3; that they weren stynt.
and jn the same manere ferde kyng bors,
that of alle the enemyes gaf he non fors.
and whanne the hethene behelden this
of pe mervcellent strokys they Syen, j-wys,
and how kyng Arthuer with kalybrond
mervcellent strokis 3af with his hond
(a3ens weche swerd, the sothe to say,
myhte there non armure lasten that day,
For evere he vsede to smyten so sore,
that non man his strok abyden myhte thore)—

Thanne, whilles they fowhten Jn this manere,
ha3pade, kyng arthuer 3it neyghode hym xere,

14194. MS. myhte.
14198. they, t (very small) inserted afterwards.
14212. downryht, wc corrected from o (and something else).
14221. weche, wc corrected from j.
14226. arthuer added afterwards above the line.
and mette with on that hyhte caunlent,
that hem of pe round table anoyede, verament,
and perto dide he his power tho.
but Artheur, as hit happede so,
mette with this caunlent, j 3ou ensure,
whiche chef was of passyng mesure:
XXIJ fote long he was, j wene,
of swich maner feet as now þere bene.
And whanne kyng Artheur there him mette,
a wonderful strok þere on him he sette:
besides his Scheld he smot hym so,
that thorwh bothe scholdres calibrand gan go.
And anon he fyl a-down, withowten les,
and his hors forth ran thorwh-out þat pres.
So they that in the castel were,
behelden how Arthour gan him bere;
Also Gonnore, þe dowther of kyng Leodagan,
Merveillede mochel what was that man;
and so dyden þe peple everychon
that hym behelden be on & on.

Ful strong was þe stowr and þat melle,
that thike tyme was to-fore the cyte
where as þe .cc. knyhtes & fyfty
and the two and fourty felawes, sekerly,
aţens viij thousand helden here fyht
as worthy persone of power & myht.
but what thorwh the strokis þat þere weren deld,
xe left but fyve thousand in the feld.
whiche weren ful Soreweful in here degre,
that kyng Cavnlent was ded, sekerle.
thaanne happede, kyng Ban cam ful bluye,
as worthy a knyht as ony on lyve,
and with his good swerd, þat was so Brown,
anon there rawhte he to kyng plarious,
that þe grettest jeawnt was he of þat ost;
but þere kyng ban thouhte to fellen his bost.
vppon the helm So he him there rawhte,
14228. that corrected from the.
14262. ban added above the line.
Flight of part of the heathen forces. [CH. XIV.

that ryht ful sone gret harm he cawhte;

The strok thorwh the panne Hit gothe
and thorwh the left scholdere evene, for sothe,
and into the gyrdelstede evene down nuyht,
that ded down he fyl for fawt of myht.

Thanne kyng Bors pere smot so Sarmedoun,
that bar these jeauntes Gomfanown,
that bothen arm, Baner, and scheld
ful fer hit fley into the feld.

these strokes beheld kyng leodagan,
and to him-self in his herte seide than:
“there nas neuere kyng, so god me spede,
that better socour hadde atte xede.”

and whanne the jeauntes syen here lordes ded,
and here banerer was slayn in that Sted,
anon they Tornde hem to the flyht,
eche man be hym-Selve, los gon nyht.

thanne that Syen they of the cyte,
& owte pere comen a praty wyne,
wel two thousand j-armed ful bryht,
and folwed that chas pere anon nyht.

but merlyne wente not that contre,
For sone to cleodalis thanne turned he,
where as he with his iiiij thousand men
azens vij thousand fawht he then,
whiche Sonygrentx hadde in gouernance
and kyng Sorohaunx with mischaunce.

He finds him unhorsed,
Whanne merlyne cam to that Bataylle,
he fond Cleodalis, with-owten faylle,
unhorsed and at the ezthe, in certein,
but on his fet he was rekeneuerd ageyn,
and the baner kepte, with-owten lesyng.

For that wolde he not leven for non thyng.

and abowtes him stoden his compenye,
that him defendid ful manfullye,
but they were at gret mischef.

Thatythes merlyne gan sone hem relef,
and amonges hem entrede with his baner,
& pe xlij felawes him folwede ther.
CH. XIV. | Battle continued against the remainder. 383

thanne jn they flyen as stordly
as evere dide tempest out of pe sky,
and so worthily they fowhten there,
thyke xlij felawes pat weren jn fere,
that neuere men myghte better do
than thyke compenye diden tho.
but evere this kyng leodagan
here feleschepe nohden not forsaken than.
whanne these xlij amonges the jeawntes were,
Swich a noyse amonges hem was paune there,
as of alle pe world the carpenteris
jn wodes hadde hewen stowt & fers.

This was hit the angriest stour
that thike day they suffreden be ony our,
and pe most dolorowe and angwisschous,
but evere hem socourede swete jesus.
For there a man myhte beholde
bothe men & hors fulmanifolde
as thikke fallen vnder here scheld
as thate notes flen jn the feld.
There myhten pe sen hors walken astray,
that non man of hem took kepe, jn fay,
of wheche the Sadelis ful blydy were
of pe knyhtes that vppon hem weren slayn there,
and swich a noyse amonges hem was,
For lyk as thondring hit ferde jn that plas.
So that theke xlij persones
merveillously boren hem for pe none,
that aftyr the deth of hem, j vndirstond,
nit was of hem longe spoken jn that lond,
and, as this storye reporteth now here,
that so manye Bodyes weren slayn there.
Behueueded, quartered, dislemed Also,
that manye day aftyr men myhten go
into pe places as the batailles were
be men dede & hors that lyen there
thorwh the conqwest, as J ʒow telle.

14304. dash upon the enemy;
14308. king Leodegan is ever with them.
14312. The din is tremendous.
14316. The struggle is the fiercest that day.
14320. Men and horses fall
as thick as moths in the field
horses run about with empty,
the noise resembles thunder.
14324. bloody saddles;
14328. The heroism of the 42 was spoken of long after their death;
14332. and the traces of the battle were visible many a day after.

14308. than, MS. that. 14313. þe squeezed in afterwards.
14331. j, MS. jn.
Here follows the list of names here-afyr J schal you spelle, for so wyle here this storye, aforn goode men to rehersen hem, utterlye.

The ferste kyng Ban of Baynouc hyhte, the secunde kyng Bors, a man of myhte, the thridde kyng Artheur that tyme was, the fourthe was Antron ju that plas, the fyfthe was vlphyn, as j 3ow tel, the sixthe was goode sire Bretel, the seventh that tyme hylte sire kay pe fers, the viijthe sire lucauns the botelers, the ixthe, the sone of kerdif, hylte pan doo, the xthe moret le Roche cleped was tho, the xiijthe dryaus of pe forest saune, j vndirstonde, the xijthe hyhte lorgelons de la taunde, the xijthe, j kan tellen ful wel, 

hihte belias Amoreus of mayden castel, the xiiijthe Flaundris ly breȝ, wel j wot, the xvthe hylte ladmas of Baynot, the xvijthe hylthe Amoreus ly brews, the xvijthe Anchalanx le nows, the xviijthe bloys of casel, fel & fers, the xixthe hylte goode Bliobers, The xxthe hylte canodes pat tyme be vois, the xxijthe hylte melyapon de bloys, the xxijthe Aladank le crespe, pis storye says, the xxiiijthe hylte placides ly gays, the xxiiijthe Lampadys Plangwy, the xxvthe ceraso lenehc in compenye, the xxvthe cristofre de la roche Byse, the xxvijthe engelyn desnans, a man of prise, the xxvijthe calogrenaunt the fre, the xxixthe Agwysele le desyre, The xxxthe thanne hyhte good Agravel, the xxxijthe hylte thanne claryel, the xxxijthe Gryvcs de lambele,
CH. XIV.]  King Leodegan and his steward.  385

the xxxijthe Æweodyn, pat was fayr & lele, 14376 Tarmelide
the xxxiiiijthe hyhte than merangus,
the xxxvthe Gormayns karadus,
the xxxvijthe hihte clariaunt of Ban,
the xxxvijthe layz hardis, a worthi man,
the xxxvijthe Amayndan the stowte,
the xxxvijthe hihte ogenan in that Rowte,
the xlithe hyhte calet cownde,
the xliijthe cales the chans, pard,
the xlijthe was bleene, kyng bors godsone,
the xlijthe, merlyne, gan with hem wone,
the xliijthe was the kyng leodegan,
that here Feleschepe wolde leven for non man.
alle these worthi men in fere
To Resku cleodalis wenten there,
that steward was of Tarmelyde.
as a worthy man he prevyd him that tyde : 14392
3it for non wrong kyng leodegan hadde hym j-do,
xeure from hym departen wolde he not tho.
And 3it so wolde not many a man
don jere as cleodalis dyde than,
but he dede that many a man wolde not do ;
For the cause he sholde knowen also,
and 3it wolde he newere his lord forsake
For al the wrong he suffred & wrake,
but newere he him stood in al myselfef,
as powth to hym he hadde ben good & lef.

This is the trowthe, As J 3ow telle,
how that cleodalis the steward hit befelle.
hit behapped that kyng Leodegan
a lady of hygh parage wedded had than,
and thereto she was of gret Bewte,
and jto Tarmelyde browhte hire he
owt of hire faderis owne lond,
as j do jow to vndirstond.
& with hire sche browhte a mayden ful gent
of wondir gret bewte, verament,

14408. She brought with her a
merel of wonderful beauty.

14407. therto, o blotted.
MERLIN.—II.
whiche maiden cleodalis lovede ful derne, 14416
For there-of myhte non man hym werne.
So that he preyde leodagan, verament, 14420
that he myhte wedden pat myden gent
For alle his goode longe Servise;
he axede no more to his apryse.
the kyng hym graunted with riht good wyle,
For pat he was mocel beholden him tylle.
and whanne j-wedded hire that he hadde,
and from cherche as sche was ladde,
and browht was jnto the kynges paleys,
and down at mete was set on deys,
thero apparrylled ful Ryaly
abovn alle ladyes that seten hire by;
thanne hadde sche moche more bewte
thanne ony oper lady, Sykerie;
wherthorwh pe kyng on hire his herte caste,
that for non thing azen myht he hit wreste.
So that stylle Leodagan the kyng
a gret whylle dwellede jn morneng,
For sche was the fairest creature jn ony londe,
as this Storye doth me to vndirstonde;
and thus at that tyme seyde he no more than.
but as hit happede that kyng leodagan
at an hygh feste of seynt Johne,
Leodagan Cleodalis owt he sente anon
a certeyn chevachye forto do
vppon his enemies, pat hym noyede tho,
and his faire lady behinde lefte there
the qwene compenye forto bere
(For bothen they loveden as paramour,
the qwene & sche, with-owten langour)—
hit behappede vppon a nyht,
Leodagan be his qwene lay, as wile nyht.
that nyht on hire he be-gat tho
a fair dowhter, with-owten mo,
that jn hire age Gonn[or]e hit hyhte,
CH. XIV.]

King Leodgan and his steward. 387

whiche that was a wondir fair wyhte.
this qweene sche was of gret bownte
and an holy lyuer, certeine;
and on costom hadde this qweene:
that but fewe nyhtes hit scholde bene
that sche ne wolde to mynstre go
hixe naytynes & servise to heren tho.
that same nyht pat sche concepted was,
To naytynes sche ros a ful gret pas,
and be the stewardis wyf sche cam ful stille,
and fond hire Slepyng, & thowhte non yll.
thanne forth sche wente, & wook hire nowht,
To serven hire gol, as sche hadde thowht,
and lefte this lady there stylle on slepe,
that of non creature took sche kep.
Forth wente pe qweene alone with hire sawtyere
to pe mynstre, that faste by was there.
Anon this kyng leodagan tho
this lady thowhte to werken wo.
and whanne pat the qweene to mynstre was,
anon vp he ros jn that plas,
and qweyne alle the lyhtes pat weren wyt[j]-ynne,
For er wolde he pat tyme not blynne.
Sethen to the bed he goth ful nyht,
there cledalis wif lay jnne that nyht.
Whanne the Lady Felte On Jn Hyre Bed,
sche axede ho was there Jn that sted.
"hold thou thi pes," quod kyng leodagan;
"and pou discure me to ony man,
vpon my sword thou schalt deye,
j the Swere, dame, be my feye."

This lady defended hire with al hire nyht,
but non noyse dorse sche make owt nyht.
but lytel avaylde there hire defens,
For be hire he lay there jn presens,
and that same nyht begat on hire tho
anoþer dowhter nyht also.

The queen, who was very pious,
and regularly attended matins,
gone also this time,
without waking the steward's wise.
The king
rose,
put out the lights,
and went to that lady's bed.
[leaf 143 b]
She asked who was there.
The king told her to be silent,
or else he would kill her.
Her resist-
ance availed little;
the king
begot on her another
daughter.

14451. was crossed out before sche.
14459. wyf added above the line.
14471. MS. wyf jnne.
Both were born in the same night.

hit happened, whanne this queen was delivered was
The same byht of a dowhter in that plas,
the same byht, with-owtau only faylle,
the steward with gan forto travaile,
and another dowhter hadde of grete bewte;
a faire creature myhte non be.

They were so like each other, that they could be distinguished only by a peculiar birth-mark.

thanne so lyk bothe children they were,
that on from anothir knowen myhte not perce,
Sauf gonmore þat þe qwenes dowhter was,
a wonde mark hadde she in prevy plas:
ypon the reynes that child behynde
hadde þe fygure as a corowne of a kyng.
and but hit were be thike mark,
cowde non man hem disseure þu lyht ne derk.
and eech of hem gonmore hyhte,
as be here baptem þame be þyte.

Both were called Gonmore,
and brought up together.

And eere wered they norsched bothe þu fere,
tyl that the qweene after deide there,
and the kyng aftyr hire deth anon
aftyr cleodalis wif sente ful son,
and al ægens that ladyes wylle
þu a castel he closede hire ful stille,
benechon that his steward of prise
with hire scholde speke þu non wyse.
and thus he contynuede þer,
that cleodalis his wif ne say not ther;
til on a day þe frendis of þe steward than
there-of spoken to kyng leodagan,
and hem answerede: whille he hadde werre,
he scholde hire not hauen nethir xyth ne ferre.

but in rain.

Yet Cleodalis remained faithful.

Now þit, behold, for all this distresse
the steward þe kyng Servede neuer the lasse.

Now we will return to the battle;

that þit kepte he hire Styile jnto the comeng,
that jnto his lond entrede artheur the kyng.

Yet Cleodalis remained faithful.

Now we will return to the battle;

of bothe Gonnores scholen þe here þu nyme.
CH. XIV.] **Continuation of the battle near Toraise.**

Evere the bataylle ful greth hit was, there as cleodalys was in plas.
And assone as these xlij men amonges pat peple weren entred then, they fowhten faste on eche a syde, and moche peple was Siayn that tyde. many speres to-borsten were, helmes j-cloven & scheldes jn fere; dede bodyes fillen faste adown, eche man on othir in vyrown.

So that jn pe feldes al abowte Stedis peve wenten a ful greth rowte, here neynes hangeng betwene here feet, that eche man forth hem passen let. and enere pe steward defendid him faste, tyl he was reskwed atte laste. there many a lady was husbondles, and many a sostyr brothirles, and many a modir was childles, Thorwh strokis of cleodas[ji]s jn pat pres.

Whanne Sonygransx And Kyng Sorpharouns beheldyn al tho grete distroccion
and the grete slawhtre that there was, anon kyng Sonigrans xj in that plas his trompes let Blowen, his tymbers let bete here nene there forto gaderen to hepe. And anon as assembled they were,

Sire kay amonges hem entredere there, Sire Lucans and ek Sire gyrflees amonges hem prekede jnto pat pres.

Ech of hem hadde a greth Stowr lawnce, per-with amonges hem they gommen preken & prauence. Anon sire kay kyng Sonygransx mette, and swich a boffe pere he him sette, that tope ouer tayl he goth to grownde,

14528. In the battle where Cleodalys and the 42 fellows fight;
14532. great destruction is wrought.
14536. Many horse run about riderless;
14540. many women become husbandlees, brotherless, or childles.
14544. [leaf 143 c]

Sonigrans and Sorharuns (p. 382) assemble their people by sound of trumpets and timbrels.

Kay, Lucans, and Girfles ride against them.

Kay throws Sonigrans to the ground;

14538. _al abowte_ crossed out, and _a ful gret rowte_ added, at the end of the line.
14540. _man, m_ corrected from an uncompleted _f._
14546. _Thorvgh, T_ corrected from _a._—MS. _cleodas._
The battle near Toraise.

where he long lies motionless.

Lucans and Girles kill two men.

The heathen try to rescue Songranx;

but the 42 fellows surround him.

Merlin, carrying his banner,

and Cleodalis, remounted on a good courser,

at the head of a party,

make a fierce attack

on the compact mass of the heathen.

Now arrive the 5000 fugitives from Toraise (pp. 381 l.);

where as he lay a ful long stownde,

that neuere remevede foot ne hand,

as j do 3ow here to vndirstand.

RYht tho sire Lucanus and sire girles

slowen twyne stark deo jn that plac.

Whanne kyng Songranx to grownde was leyd,

anon these hethen maden a gret Breyd

hym to reskwe with alle here nyht,

but that the xlij felawes anon nyht

abouten Songranx assemblid enchon,

that thike tyme nyhe hym myhete come non.

So that gretly defonlyd he was,

as he lay there jn that plac,

er that he myhte reconenere ageyn ;

the hethen abowtis semblede, certyn.

and merline, that bar the Banere,

the cccc he cam to refreschen there,

and the xlij felawes jn his compenyen

jn pat batayle weren sprad, ful Sekerlye.

and cleodalis Sormowntyd was

& on a good destrer sette jn pat plac,

and his Baner evere held he styyle.

Thanne ascryen he gan with good will,

that tymes assembleden they ful faste,

and ho so myhte to-fore gon, they gone haste.

Anon there be-gan a merveillous stour,

that was ful of angwis & of doulour.

there knyhtes feld men myhten se

betwixen hors legges ful gret plente.

but of the heathene so gret peple was,

that hard it was to entren jn that plac.

and so they sowhten evere than & then,

tyl atte theke v thousand men

that fledden from Torayse atte pe bataylle,

agen retorneden, with-outen faille.

they repeyrede anon to kyng Sorpharins

and to kyng Songranx, with-outen lesinges.

14596. This line was omitted and then written down the right margin.

14597. Sorpharins, o daubed.
The battle near Toraise.

But these xlij goode Saudiours, that ju that Bataylle weren stout & fers, wolde not remeuen non foot of lond there as Sonigranx was beten, j vndirstond. Atte laste this Sonigranx remounted was with gret sorwe & peyne ju that plas thanne began there anon newe bataylle, For avenged wolde he be, with-owten faylle. Ano?i the kyng sonigranx & his iieyne they haddeu Kuvyrownd, Sekerle. Whanne that these cc & .l. knyhtes to the bataylle weren sembled ju ryhtes, Amonges Here Enemyes they gonne to Reke, there many a spere gonne they to-breke. and whanne here Speres to-broken were, anon here Swerdis they drownen owt there. Whanne that these cc & .l. knyhtes to the bataylle weren sembled ju ryhtes, the 250 knights, now remounted (cf. l. 14170), arrive (cf. l. 14249), and join him. That hit was wondir to behold & se. There is a wonderful fight.

On the tothyr partye pe steward cleodalys with his meyne ful sore fault, j-wys. but for non power that was hem among, here a stale myhten they not kepen ful long, but sorpharynis to the cyte ward wente ryht velonusly with his entente. They meet the 2000 pursuers (l. 14284). 

14632. was added above the line.
and jn here goynte thedirward, sekerlye, they slowen a thousand jn here comeng, and thanne with cleodalis they maden restyng.
thanne there began a newe bataylle, as j payw seye with-owten faylle, that the Noyse wel herd myyte hauc ben passeng a ful long myle then.
this kyng Sorpharyn hadde on his side x thousand men that jlike tyde, and cleodalis hadde on his partye but fyve thousand, certeulye.

On the tothir partye was gret fyhtyng of hem of pe round table, with-owten lesyng, and the xlij sowdiours jn fere azens kyng Sonigrans fowhten there, that azens viij thousand helden bataylle, and weren at gret mischef, with-owten faylle; For they myhten not long endure azens swich a meyne, j soww ensure.
thanne merlyne clepede kyng ban anone, and to hym he seide ful some:
"barouns, bachelers, bothe fre & bolde, what stonde ye stille & so beholde? here ben but fyve geauntis in this stede that thus this meyne doth ouer-lede.
weren theke fyve distroyed sone, thanne were al this bataylle done,"
"what partye ben they," quod kyng ban tho, "3oundir jn bataylle hope to & fro?"
"certes," quod merlyn, "j schal soww telle: Vlphines, Gyrlis, & bretel the snelle,
Sire kay, & Sire lucauxs also, with hem they fyhten & suffren wo,
and behold & seweth now aftyr me, thanne the sothe thare scholen we se,
wich of this compone ye best doth him here;
the sothe thanne scholen we preven there"
thusone  
and these knyhtes non lengere abod,
but forth they entredere into pat bataylle,
vj knyhtes ażes xx jenamis, saun faylle,
that weren passeng owt of mesure.
kyng Ban to-fore rod, j 3ow ensure,
and pe ferst man he mette that day tho,
was kyng Sonygranx, with-owten mo.
kyng Ban jn honde his sword held,
that al forsoylled was jn that feld
of meanis blood & mennes brayn,
as j 3ow declare Jn certayn.
perwith vppon the helm he smot him there,
that thorwh the Serce hit wente ful clere
and thorwh the vysage evene down ryht,
that vppon the left sholdre hit alyht,
that hit fley jnto the feld
bothe the left arm & ek the Scheld.
Thianne made He gret Noyse, & Fowle He ferde,
that fer jnto the ost hit was herde.
And kyng Bors smot marganaus, for soth,
that thorwh the pæme hit wente jnto pe teth.

On the tothyr partye kyng Arthour
Ful wel he bar hym jn that Stowr.
he smot a jenam thorwh hauberk & scheld,
that he fyl ded down jn the feld.

and vlyphyn anoither jeawnt slowhe,
Balaater, a strong thef and a towhe.
And Bretel slowh Gordaunt, & kay dendonart ;
these jeawntes Slowen they jn here part.
Lucauns slowh maleez, & Gyrlles manadape ;
these jeawn[en]tis slowez they, hit was here hape.
And meraujgis slowh Sadut jn that plas,
and gornauuns kadrus Slowh dolas.
Anon as the heathene Syen these thus slayn,
To flen ful faste they weren ful fayn.
For they seyden hit wolde not avaylle
ażes the cristene to holde bataylle.

14676. Merlin rides ahead; the others follow.
14680. Ban meets king Soni-grans,
14684. [leaf 144 a] hits him on the helm,
14688. and cuts off his left arm.
14692. Boors splits Marganaus' head.
14696. Arthur kills one giant,
14700. Ulfin, another,
14704. Bretel, a third, and so forth.
14708. Now the heathen yield, despairing of success.
The battle at Toraise.

Avaunt knyhtes of the table rounde
and pe two and fourty Sowdiours in that stownde! 14712
Anon the hethene sore abasched they were,
For of hem we[r]en slayn mochel peple there.

They flee to king Sorphants,
who is fighting with Cleodalis,
dash through the place of battle,
and press on to the city.
The citizens are greatly alarmed,
seeing neither the king's banner,
nor the king himself,
only the enemies before the gates.
The 6000 Christians,
in great trouble, full back to the town.
They collide afresh,
fight desperately,

So that faste they gonne forto fle,
that alle the Sowdyours hit myhte se,
tel to kyng Sorphants they comen, j-wys,
that batayle held with Cleodalis.

thanne borsten the hethen Into that pres,
that non man there ne myhten hem ses,
So harde, that they whiche in pe place were,
Forsoken here place mangry here.

and xeure they wolden astynpte ne abyde,
tyl that to-fore toraysse they comen that tylde.
Anon thanne the peple of the cyte
wondir Sore affrayed weren, Sykyrle,
that the Banere Syen they not than
of here owne worthy kyng leodagan,
wherby thei thowhten thanne anon
that taken or dede they weren echon.

On pe tothir partye they syen not here kyng,
that the Sowdeoures hadden be reskewyng;
wherfore they weren abasched wel sore,
For that here kyng they syen not comen thoro.

and whanne they comen to-fore the town,
thanne alle lost thei wende hadde ben in virown.

For but vj thousand of cristen ther were
and jresch hethen xij thousand, as þe mown here.

Nedes the Sowdeoures weren at grete mischief,
So that to the cyte they gounen relef.

and enere the ceteseins, the sope to say,
of þe Sowdeoures weren sore aferd, in fay.

whanne the Sowdeours and here compenye
among the hethen weren entrid, Sekyrlye,
there began a ful grete stowr

14713. *hethene, eth on erasure.
14714. MS, *weth.
14724. MS, *tylthat.
14728. *worthy, w corrected from k.—leodagan, see footnote to l. 14142.
14729, 14736. *thet, i squeezed in afterwards.
Ful of angwysch & of dolowr;
the wheche endured ful longe than,
For there was skyn ryht many a man:
For a thousand there fyllen jn that pres
atte feste entre, with-owten les,
that nevere recouerede aftert ageyn,
as j sow Seye now jn certyn.

On the tothir partye, whanne pe knyhtes of the rounde
table
and the xlij Sowdeoures, with-owten fable,
hadden discomfyxt Sonigrenx the kyng,
and to flyht was put, with-owten lesyng,
they wolden non lengere aftert hym chase;
For merlyne hem withheld jn that plase,
and drowh hem jnto on partye
of that feld, ful Sekyrlye,
and to hem alle seide ryht anou:
"herkeneth now, Lordynges everichon,
3e scholen non ferthere Sewen hem here,
but doth now as j schal sow Lere:
Alyhteth of joure hors jn this tyde
Hem to Refreschen, there to Abyde;
For sowre hors ful wery they be,
al be-swet and be-bled, as 3e mowrn se."
and they deden anou his comandement,
as j sow Seye, with ful good entent.

So that there they alyhten alle anou,
and refresched hem thanne everichon,
for therto they hadden ful gret nester,
alle the compenyae of hem jn fer.
Anou ther spek kyng leodagan,
and vnto merlyne Seyde he than:
"Sire, wylen 3e that these goode men here
with joure xlij ayyhte ben alle jn fere?"
"3e certis, Sire," quod merlyne thanne,
"to vs js welcomen every good mane."
The battle at Toraise.

For mochel the bettere scholen we do al in on wynge to-gederis forto go."

Anon thane clepyd kyng leodagan
hervy the ryve, his banorer, than, 14784
and preyde hym thane forto komen ner
jn compenye with these goode men to dwellen her—
"and 30ure Feleschepe with 3ow also,
For in on compenye now scholen we go." 14788

"Ful gladliche, sire," quod hervy ryvele,
"For Of here compenye vs lyketh ful wel,
3if that so here wylle now be."
"3is," quod kyng leodagan, "certeinle,
For from this day hens forward
but on compenye to ben both styf & hard."

"depardeux," quod sire hervy thenne,
"For good is the Feleschepe of ryht good menne." 14796

Thanne to-gederis weren they alle
jn on compenye, as gan be-falle.
and merlyne to-fere be-gan to ryde;
thanne alle they hym seweden bat ilke tyde. 14800
And whilles they reden thus in fere,
as se han me herd rehersen here,
Al the while the steward Cleodalis
with vj thousand in his compenye, j-wis,
agens kyng Sarpharynes fawht he tho,
that with hym hadde xij thousand men & mo.
but enbataylled non thing they were,
but ay fyhtyng they weren here & there, 14808
for they wendyn han mad an ende
of Cleodalis meyne, & so thane they wende,
For at gret mischef, certeyn, they were,
they that with Cleodalis weren there,
For in poynt to zelden they weren echone
and ek here place to forsaken welsone.
these fight dispersedly,

ever thinking the Christams will sur-
cumb,

Now Merlyne's banner is sighted.

[CH. XIV.]

The king
tells Hervy
of Ryve to
join the $2.

Hervy
 gladly
obeys;

"For good is
the fellow-
ship of good
men."

They start
for the city,

where Cleo-
dalis is up-
holding the
battle against
king Sorta-
rins' men.

These fight
dispersedly,

ever thinking
the Chris-
tians will sur-
cumb.

14803. MS. Atlhe. 14806. hym added in the left margin.
14810. they added in the right margin.
as hit hem Semede, jn-to the Skyhe, 397
that al the eyr semede on fyre there;
Swith wondris they syen that per were.
And whanne that the ladyes vppon pe cyte walle
behelden merlynes Bauere alle,
anon they cryden to Cleodalys,
that vndir the walles fawht, j-wys:
"ha, Cleodalis, of good comfort thou be,
For here cometh socour anon to the!"

And whanne Cleodalis herd hem so crye
that on the walles stooden an hye,
he loked anon toward the valeye,
and beheld where thanne comen theye.
Thanne wyste he wel that jn tyme comenge
that sone scholde he hauen Socoureng,
and thankede God omnipotent,
that thider Socour hath hym sent.
Thanne clepede he his men jn vyrown,
that abowtis hym comen wel sor:
"now mowen 3e ben bothe glad & save,
For here comen they pat we desired haue."
thanne Cleodalis for gret joye of herte
Amonges the hethene than gan he sterte,
And His meyne Forth With hym;
thanne wax the bataylle wondir Grym.
with that cam on this othir meyne,
and of hem Slowen ful gret plente:
ccc. they Slowen atte ferste set
Jn here ferst comenge, with-owten let,
that neene to lyve restored ageyn
more thanne they that jn helle ben, certeyn;
Ne non departeson they maden, j-wys,
til they comen to pe steward Cleodalis.

Whanne they wereu entred alle jn fere,
anon merlyne gan forto ascryen there:
"haa, lordynges, knyhtes, & bachelere,
let se how 3e konne heren 3ow here.

14852. haa corrected from and (k added in the margin, d erased).
The battle at Toraise.

For 3e ben comen now to joure asay:
therfore let now se how 3e konne play.”
whanne that kyng Arthure herde this,
To kyng Ban & kyng Bors heseyde, j-wys,
ryght hertely lawghenge jn his manere,
to tho two kynges thanne seide he there
that—“neuere a bettere boorde was
thanne now is be-gonnen jn this plas.”
thanne seide merlyne to hem anoun:
“beleve joure boordlyng now everichon,
For al this wyke 3e moun jn fere
bothe Lawghen & boorden & make good chere.”
whanne they vndirstod merlyne So spake,
amonges here enemies gonne they reke
welful of jre and maultalent.
there began a gret Stour present:
the sorrest that was of al theke day,
at that tyme there began, jn fay.

Arthur excels.

Gonnaur and the other
ladies weepingly pray for his
saving,
the Christians being
so few and so young.

With his
sword Calibrand,
he kills

Arthur laughingly
calls this a good joke.

Merlin asks
them to stop
joking; there will be
time enough for that all
the week.

They dash
against the enemies.

For [with] his sword, that hyhte Calibrond,
whiche that he bar þere jn his hond,
bothe on þe ryhte syde & on the lefte
manye hedis & scholderis he hem berefte,

14878. See footnote to 1. 14142. 14889. MS. for his.
The battle at Toraise.

Legges, armes, & thyes also;
bothe knyhtes & hors to grownde goune go.
he made here helmes fleen into pe feld
and knyhtes ded fallen vndir here scheld.
Ek the Sercles, that weren mad of Stel,
aens his strok holden wyhten non del.
but evere abowtes hym good warde pere was
hym forto saven there ju that plas.
For aens kyng Bors and kyng Ban
non maner of armure wyhten dure than.
thanne so they wrowhten there ju fere,
that here strokis dorste non man abyden there,
what of hem of the rownde table
and of the xlij Sowdiowrs, with-owten fable.
For amongis hem was forzeten non thyng,
whanne that they comen to here bekeryng.

Ful strong was pe bataylle and the stowr
that to-forn pe cyte of Torayse was pat owr
(and every knyht In his owne degré
Ful boldly there hym bar, ful Sykirle),
and dured al the day, as j 3ow telle,
tyl that hit rang with evesong belle.
that So xygh they were to the cyte,
Not thens A stones cast, Sykerle.
but whanne hit cam to pe owr of noon tho,
of al that day fowhten they not So,
that xij thowsend Into xyne was browht;
at that tyme so sore the crystene pere fowht.

Whanne Sorpharynes Sawhe that hit wente so,
anon he his creauce Swor he tho
that he wolde neuere from that grownd gon,
tyl that he were venged of his fon.
Anon he clepede his kynnes-men than,
Sire Gaydone & also Sire Sotybran,
Sire Senebant & Sire Claryown,
Sire mallors & sire Freellent ju virown;
They weren knyhtes bothe goode & bolde,
The battle at Toraise.

as in this Storye here hit is told,
they dressed hem forth alle in fere
amonges theke worthy Sowdyowrs there.

hit happede kyng Sorpharyn to meten tho
Sire hevy the Ryvel, as hit gan go.
and Sire Ryvel he smot so sore that tyde,
that down to pe erthe gan he glyde.

and after Ancor he smot also,
that down to grownde thanne gan he go.

Thus Lucans, Kay, Bretel,
and several others
are thrown to the ground.

There is
great din
and blinding dust.

The unhorsed
knights
defend them-
selves on foot,

as in this Storye here hit is told,
they dressed hem forth alle in fere
amonges theke worthy Sowdyowrs there.

hit happede kyng Sorpharyn to meten tho
Sire hevy the Ryvel, as hit gan go.
and Sire Ryvel he smot so sore that tyde,
that down to pe erthe gan he glyde.

and after Ancor he smot also,
that down to grownde thanne gan he go.

Sire Lucans pe botelers happed thanne thus,
Sire meraungis & sire Gorvayns Caradus,

Sire bloybers, sire caleys luchamous, as telleth this tale,
Sire kay pe steward & sire Guniret of lambale,

ek Sire Godam and Sire staungot,
the xithe was sire Bretel, wel j wot :
alle these in the feld j-feld they were.
but non man wystate the sothe there,
whethir be strok of lawnce hit was
or be defawt of here hors in that plas.

thanne a ful grete noysse there began
and a wondir grete dowst forsothe than,
that non of hem othir wyhten se,
as this storye reheerseteth certeyne.

but evere the hetene peynede hem caste
the cristene to distroyen In alle haste.
Anon these worthy nyne knyghtes
vpon here Feet keuerede anon ryhtes.

with here naked swordis on honde
Styly to-gederis gonne they stonde,
and Fowhten with hem with alle here myht

14932. jnot, m blotted (corrected from no ?).
The battle at Toraise.

For there began thanne a ful strong fyht. but lytel hit avayllede at that Tyde, For the jeauntes on hem ful sore gonnen abyde. thanne cam merlyne to here socour with his Baner on hande in that stowr. Anon kyang Sorpharynes, that jeaunt, tho To kyang leodagan thanne gan he go, and smot hym evene amyddis the scheld, that hors and man Fyl in the Feld. So lowe bar Sorpharynes his spere there : kyang leodagan[\text{\textsuperscript{\textdagger}}] hors Slowh he there, So that bothe they lyen atte crownde, kyang leodagan & his hors, that stownde. whazne they of the cyte behelden this, Gret sorwe they maden & cryden, j-wys, For they wendyn kyang leodagan hadde be ded ; So sore he Fyl there in that sted. thanne to here reskews eche man wente, and sore they fowhten with good entente.

whazne that kyang Artheur herde this of that stowt jeawnt & crym, j-wys, That feld hadde fowre so worthy men, kyang Artheur swor anon Ryht then that on peke jeaunt hym-self wolde asaye To Weten Whethyr of Hem Bettere cowde playe. Jnto that Reng kyang arthewr wente with a boystous spere on honde, veramente, the hed ful Scharpe and wel j-grownde, and forth he rod in that Stownde. hit happede that a\text{\textasterisk}ns hym cam kyng ban, and to kyang Artheur there seide he than : " with whom thenken 3e to josten here? not with this jeaunt ju non manere ! For to 3ow he is to strong in this Felde, For 3e ben 3it but of 3ong Eldes, but let now me a\text{\textasterisk}ns him go Forto asayen what j may do. For j am eldere of age than 3e

14978. MS. \textit{leodagan hors}. 14983. See footnote to l. 14142.
14998. to, MS. \textit{teo}.

MERLIN.—II
The battle at Toraise.  [CH. XIV.

and ek, j trowe, strengere, certeinle."

"Now god Forbede," quod kyng artheur tho,
"that evere ony man but j hym go to.
For the more pat dowted the jeaunt Js,
the sonnere asayen hym j schal, j-wys.
For elles my-selve j scholde neuere knowe
what j myhte don anothyr throwe."

Whanne merlyne Sawh Arthewr Taryen So,
wondirly he ascryede hym anou tho :
"what Taryest thou here, pou fowle coward?
dredyst thou the jeaunt jn this part?
Go, coward, and do as thou scholdest do."
and whanne kyng Artheur herde merlyne speken so,
and that coward he clypede hym thanne,
Ful sore aschamed was pat worthy manne.

Anon he prekede jnto that pres,
that for nou thing ne wolde he ses.
thanne anon bespak kyng Ban,
and pere to merlyne seyde he than :
"me thynketh hit is not ryht wel do
to chargen Artheur forto don so,
So jong a man as Arthewr now js
a3eins that gret devel to josten, j-wys."
"there-offen non ware," quod merlyn tho,
"but tak 30ure spere and aftyr hym 3e go,
and 30ure brothir and V1phyn jn compenye;
aftyr hym faste that 3e don hye."

his comandement they fulfylden in haste,
also swithe as here hors myhten laste.

whanne kyng Sorpharynes Sawh Arthewr there,
anon a3eins hym he gan forto bere.
And whanne they of the reng behelden this,
thanne hoveden they alle stytle, j-wys.
For of Arthewr they hadden gret drede,
lest that the jeawnt hym scholde oner-lede.
So sore to-gederis they metten atte laste,
that bothe here speres there al to-barste.

15011. MS. my felvel.  15017. and, a corrected from d.
15036. And, corrected from and
15040. haste corrected from hye.  15042. MS. alto barfte.
The battle at Toraise.

Sorparhynes Artheur jn pe flanke hyrte,
that a lytel hit gan hym smerte.
and Artheur smot him so sore ageyn
thorw Scheld and hauberk, jn certeyn,
that thorwgh the chyne the spere owt glod
an arme lengthe behynde, er hit with-stod,
that bothe hors and man to grownde they wente
evene tope ouer tayl thanne, veramente.

These Justes beheld this lady gonne,
the dowhter of kyng Leodegan, pat was thore,
as sche atte a fenestre wyidowe lay;
sche beheld al theke batayle that day,
and vereylyde what this Bacheler was,
that there so wel bar hym jn that plas.
Non wyht his name cowde telle that owr,
but that hit was on a worthy sowdiowr—
"that soure fadyr hath now with-holde;
what so evre he be, he is a man ful bolde."

"Sertes," quod the mayden tho,
"From goode men nedis cam he fro.
For but 3if of hygh blood that born he were,
he cowde neure so handelen neper scheld ne spere."
So that al thyke day jnto the ende
of the sowdioners to speken sche wolde not lende.

Anon kyng Bors and kyng Ban
Jnto that Reng anon entred than,
eche of Hem With a spere Bothe myhty and strong,
with hedis scharpe j-grownden, bothe stordy and long.
There kyng Bors smot Sottybran,
and kyng ban smot Claryel than;
Vilphynes smot Sire Gaydon jn pat plas,
that of his lyf bereft he was.
so that these jauntes to dethe weren browht;
thanne eche man his enemy owt perp sowht.
3it forthere these thre gonnen to ryde,
So that eche of hem anoper slowhe that tyde.
the ton slowh moras, the tother Lauadon,
the thrydde senebawnt he slowh anon,
15063 but added above the line.
The battle at Toraise.

So that stilty they leften there,
tyl that awey they were born on bere.

Anon kyng Artheur his swerd gan drawe,
For eft to fylten he was ful fawe.

Sire Mallore there he smot that day
thorwh-out the helm, the sothe to say,
For that he lay vppon kyn[g] Ban;
ful byterly he smot hym than,
and so he dede Sire Freelent,
that bothen purposeden with good entent
For to han had kyng bannes hed
Eventhe from the body in that sted.
For the ton his helm wolde han of drawe,
the toper with a mas wold han hym Slawe,
thazne lefte not kyng Artheur for non of this,
but welsone Mallore3 hed he hadde, j-wys,
and mad hit flen into the feld
bothe from body and ek from scheld.

Whanne Freelent Sawh his felawe ded,
that was his cosyn, in that sted,
his mas he gan lyften ful hye
kyng Artheur to han smeten, Sekerlye.

Artheur his scheld threw vpe anon,
that pe strok hym scholde not lythen vppon.

and so sore he smot in that tyde,
that into pe feld pe scheld gan glyde
and vppon the lefte scholdere decendyd adowne,
that on pe hors nekke hit stynte wel son.

and vpe azen freellent wolde han rekured his mas;
anothyr thowhte Artheur in that plas.
he smot his hors with his speres tho,
and azen to Freelent gan he go,
and vppon the helm hym hytte pere in hy,
that Into the gorget hit wente ful ny.
thanne the hethene gonnen forto crye,
For sore aferd weren they, sekerlye.

For socowr non hadden they thar

15087. MS. kyn. 15112. *Freellent, r corrected from c.*
15113. MS. an hy.
but only of Rauendolk, \& the baner bar.
to hym rod kyng Ban wel swithe,
and a good strok hym rawhte ful blythe,
that bothe the arm and baner also
junto the feld bothe flowen tho.
thussone welfaste þese theves gonne crye,
and aweyward faste they gonne hem hye,
haunze the chas so longe dyde laste,
yl thyke day was al apaste.
So that many men j-slayn ther were,
that of th[e] ix thousand þat were þere,
was left but v. thousand, þe sothe to say,
whiche that faste gonnen flen here way.
and to kyng nyown they wenten ful faste,
where as at þe sege he was ful preste,
and tolden kyng nyown everydel
how that be hem hit be-fyl,
and of the grete mortalite
that amonges hem was, ful sekerle.
haunze swor kyng nyown be his Sewrte
þat he wolde not owt of þat contre,
Tyl he hadde taken kyng Leodegan
And Jn His presown to Hauen Hym than.

Thanne sente kyng nyown jnto his lond
aftyr more meyne, as j vndirstond,
thorwh-owt denmark, al that contre,
bothe high & lowgh, of eche degre,
and viaunde jnowh with hem to brynge,
that may two zer to-gederis ben dureng
For cc thousand of Fyhtyng men;
that vytaylle mowe Suffices than.
For that werre he wolde begynnæ wel strong
and vigorously werren hem among.
So that they sensleden every day,
that with-june a monthe, [the sothe] forto say,
cc thousand and Fyfty men

Their banner-bearer is dislimbed by Ban.
Then they flee;
the others pursue.
Only 5000 escape;
they repair to king Rion, at the besieged city (ll. 1554-5), and tell him what has happened.
He swears not to leave the country, till he has captured king Leodegan.
King Rion sends to Denmark for more people
and two years' provision for 200,000 men.
Within a month 250,000 men are assembled.

15124. hem, MS. hym. 15128. MS. th ix.
15132. þe daubed. 15134. hem, e corrected from y.
15148. MS. monê. 15152. MS. mouth forto say.
withjuries that mouzthe weren sembled than,

of wheche xx kynges ther were

To kyng Ryown comen there.  

Gret karyage they brownten with hem also

of wynes, of vytaylle, as was forto do.

So that here ost they kepten jn fere,

that for non vyaunde ferreyzen scholde they there, but jf hit be jn-to on partye;

For plente of vyannde hadden they, Sekerlye.

Faste they asaylleden the cyte there,

but they with-jnue of hem hadden non fere,  

For the cyte was bothe byg and strong.

But skars of vytaylle was hem among,

that was here drede for enfamyneng,

lest the Sege were longe dureng.

thus cam Socour thanne every day

To kyng Ryown, the sothe to Say.

For welsore agravde he was

of the meyne he hadde lost jn that plas.  

Now leveth of this matere here,

Of kyng Ryown & of his ost jn fere

and of hem with-jnue the cyte.

And of kyng Arthewr speke now we

and of his felawes jn companye;

Now to that matere let vs faste hye.

This Storye here declareth a newe tale,

how these hethene jeauites weren browht in bale,  

and how glad that they of the cyte

and joyful weren, whanne they gonnen fle,

Ek that so lytel a compenye

hem hadde j-scomfyted, certeinlye,  

that jn al but vj thousand an ccc were;

ažens xv thousand they fowhten there.

and the scomfyture only hit was

be merlynes helpe and goddis gras.

whanne the hethen they hadde chased jnto þe nyht,

thanne to Torayse they torneden anon nyht,

where as was kyng leodagan;

Ful joyful and merye weren they than.
For leodagannes men hadde hym vp take,
whilles the Sowdiours wrohten the heten wrake.
And whanne Leodegan wiste the Sowdiours comenge,
aeten hem he wente in countrynge.

Wondir gret joye thanne made the kyng,
whanne they to-gederis comen in mytyng.
But Whanne Sire Antron And Girflet they founden here,
Sire kai & Sire Lucawns the Botelere,
and alle here oper Feleschepe, bothe hol & sownd,
thanne weren [they] joyful vppon that ground.
For they wenden, ded that they hadden be
oper ellis taken presoner, certeynle.
and they hadden woane good gret plente;
Anon kyng leodegan, Sekerle—
anon to the Sowdeowrs hit was to sent,
with that good hem forto present.
For better he wolde, and he bettere myhte do,
but natheles that thedyr sent he tho.

Whanne they seyen the grete curtesye
that kyng leodegan dede openlye,
they hym thankede a thousand Sythe,
and to that messenger seyden as blythe:
"we thanken the kyng of his gret sonde;
let hym depart yt forth Jn his londe!
and anothyr tyme, whanne we hanen xede,
we wylen rescyven that he vs bede."
thanne cam merlyne Faste anon,
and to the thre kynges gan he gon,
and bad hem Resceyven ouer alle thync
the presentes that to hem sente pe kyng.
So they hit took, as meriyn hem bad,
and amonges pe peple distribution they mad,
and lefent not the valw of ou peny
To here owne partis, ful Sekerly.

15196. _hem, e corrected from y_.
15200. _Lucawns, e more like an s._ At the end of the there is
something like a daubed a. 15202. _MS. weré joyful._
15207. _The first to added above the line._
15213. _MS. aknowled._ 15216. _MS. departyd._
15221. _MS. boden hem Reseveyed._
The soldiers are invited to the palace,

All praise the soldiers;

So that all men of that countre
Tho Sowdyowrs preysseden ful hertele.

So that the countre repleynschd was abowte
of pe goodis pat they 3oven, with-owten dowte.

For hem that the Sowdeours neuere Sye,
nochel worschepe hem spoken, certeynlye,

and al for here largeness & here good dede
thorwh-ownt the rem of hem gan sprede.

And al this was be merlynes cownsaille,
as j 3ow Seye with-owten faylle.

Arthur gives his host and hostess
money, clothing, and horses.

Arthure to his ost he 3af that day
bothe Richesse, and Robes, and many palfray;
that alle the dayes after of here lyve
moche bettere myhten they bothen thryve.

Whanne that kyng Arthur hadde thus j-do,
and alle the richesses departyd so,
that vppon the hethene they haddyn gete
(hit was departyd, er he wolde lete),

thanme they gotten entren juto pe town
with al here feleschepe jn virown.

thanme seide kyng Leodegan tho
to alle the Sowdiowrs, as they gonme go,
and wolde non Suffren with al his myhte
Jn that town there Forto alyhte
Sauf only at his owne pales ;
he hem besowhte, with-owten les.

Nether neuere owt of his compenye
he ne wolde not Suffren hem, trewelye,
but with the knyhtes of the rowndale
with hem jn compenye to ben, with-owten fable.

And whanne vnamned that they were,
kyng leodagan his dowhter to hem sente there
with the richest robes that he hadde,
dame gonmore, his dowhter, to hem hadde,
and hot water to waschen hem Jn
jn bacenis of gold bothe goode & fyn.

1528. hertele, the last e corrected from y.
1547. thane corrected from that.
15260. dowhter, r corrected from t.
but Artheur of hem wolde taken non Servys, Tyl kyng leodagan comaunderd jn alle wyse and meulyne Bad hem there also The Servys of hem to taken tho. So that the gentyl damysele anon whisch tho thre kynges be on and on, bothe Artheuris Body and his nekke also and face, & with a towaylle wypte hem tho. And ek bothe kynges jn the Same manere that gentyl gonnore wesch ryht There, and the tothyr gonnore, pat begetter was on cleodalis wyf with-jnue his plas, Servede al the tothyr compenye With Helpe of othere Damyslys, certeynlye, whanne that gonnore Leodaganes dowhtyr, J-wys, these thre kynges hadde Servyl thus, thanne hire owne fadyr, kyng leodagan, hym forto waschen this mayden gau than. and whanne that thus j-waschen they were, Gonnore to ech of hem a mentyl took there, kyng Arthweur was a man ful of bewte, and that beheld this mayden, ful certeynle. And kyng Artheur beheld hyre also ; So mochel of Bewte hadde sche tho. thanne so they spoken betwixen hem twayne, that to Arthour this damysele gan Seyne that glad jn herte sche was, Sekerle, of swich a worthy beloued to be.

Thanne whanne al this was J-do, on the morwe to mete scholden they go. So that they weschschen & seten a-down, these worthy thre kynges & amonges hem non. And alle the knyhtes of pe rownde table benethen the Sowdiows seten, sauns fable. but bothe kyng Bors and kyng Ban betwixen hem bothe setten Arthure than. For they deden hym ful grete honour,
Leodegan sits thoughtful at the repast. [CH. XIV.

For he was a man of great valour. 15300
kyng leodagan took gret kep tho
of the reverence they gone hym do,
and understood wel be here Servyse
that here souereyn he was in alle wyse,
and merveyled gretyly what he scholde be,
For fayn wolde he han wyst, Sykerle.
and to hym-Self he thowhte ryht there
that he hadde weddid his dowhter gommore.
For he saw neuer a man of swich entaylle,
but of hygh blood he were, saun3 faille.

"Or perhaps the Lord has sent me a
spirit in man's likeness,
for the sustenance of Christianity."
thus to hym-Self kyng Leodagan gan seyne.

Leodegan muses on his wonderful
rescue

At that mete mochel thowhte than
this worthy kyng Leodagan
how that he reskewed was, in feye,
with xlij felawes in the valeye,
that hym reskewed of v. hundred men,
which that to preson ward laden hym then,
and brownten hym a-geyn with gret richesse,
and Slowe in alle tho that weren in that pres.
So that for thowht that he was june ther,
nothyng he este at his deuer.
Thanne that aspyde hervy the Revelle,
and peere-offen hadde merveylle meredydelle.
Anon to the table to hym he wente,
and there hym aresoned, veramente.

he seide that neuer sethen he was bore—
"Say j 3ow neere of swich chere before,
ne neuer abasched So, in good fay,
as ye ben here this jlke day.

15303. vel, w corrected from an uncompleted b.
15312. thys, y corrected from e; man added above the line.
Hervy asks him to be cheerful.

For these owhten gret joye to make
only for these goode meunis sake; 15340
and these faren wondirly for the nones,
as though these weren not of these wones.”

Anon kyng leodegan hym bethowhte,
how merveillously this man hadde wrowhte,
and Seyde: “hervy, my dere Frende,
J thenke here of a wondyr ende,
of the beste dede of on worthy man,
that of al the world now tellen j kan.
wherfore j ne may not with-holden me,
but on hym to thenken, certeynle.
and therfore, goode Sire, so blame me nowht,
For this day for me hath he Sore wrowht.”

“Sire, sit may j that leven ryht wel,
But At this time 3e most leven hit eche del.
and whanne tyme cometh, thenk what 3e lyst,
For what now 3e thenken, may not be wyst.
but to hem maketh joye and ek Solas,
For 3e han gret cause here Jn this plas.
therfore abaschscheth noz thing 3oure chere,
For a3ens hem 3e mistaken 3ow here.”

“Sauf vostre grace,” quod kyng Leodagan tho,
“in non wise that wil j now do.
now goth and Sittyth down to 3oure mete,
and al pensifnesse now schal j lete.”

Thanne Sette hym sire hervy down to mete
amonges his felawes, with-owten lete,
and the kyng to tho Barowns spak ful meryely.
Thanne gonnere Leodagans dowhter, trewely,
of wyn Servyd hire fadir jn a cowpe of goold
and kyng Artheur on knees; pat lette sche nold.
kyng Artheur here beheld ryht wel,
and of alle hyre fetures hym lykede eche del.
hym thowhte sche was the fairest lady
of that Lond or of al breteygne, sekerly.
that mayden al dischevele sche wenet,
Gonnore and Arthur

CH. XIV.

Her figure, with strawht Sydes, & myddel ful gente. On hire hed a chapelet of gold was set
Ful of precyous stones, with-owten let. 15376

Her complexion.

Her yvyse was bothe Bryht and schene,
Entremellyd whyt and with red betwene
Ful naturally, as hit Scholde be,
Neper more ne lasse be quantyte; 15380

Her arms

Hire scholderis wel large, hyre armes ful gent,
bothe longe and smale, verament;
with a merveilous faire Schaben Body
and perto Fayre schaben loynes, Sekerly; 15384

Her feet

With smale feet wel schapen & gent:
Fairere cowde non man devysen, verament;
Hire handis white, fyngres longe and smale:
of hire bewte joye hit is to tellen ony tale. 15388

If that this mayde hadde al this Bewte,
3it hadde sche dubble fold moche more bownte,
bothe prowesses, largenesse, & kurtseye,
of gret wyt and valour, Sekerlye. 15392

Whanne kyng Artheur thus beheld this mayde,
as tofore this tyme j haue sow sayde,
He beheld hire pappes smale & gent,
bothe harde & rownde, verament; 15396

As two smale apples Semed the}^ there,
Hire Flesch was whyt and wondirly clere;
There nas neuer snow, pat sneu on grownde,
Whittere thanne hire flesch that stownde; 15400

And as bryht coloured forto se
As dropes of blod in snow, certeinle.
So that kyng Artheur, verament.

That mayden covetyde with al his entent,
And anon for love he tornde his chere;
but that perceyved not the two kynges there.

This lady hym proffered the wyn ryht thanne:
"drynketh, Sire Bachelor, and as a worthi manne! 15408

15377. hyre, y corrected from c.
15381. hyr', h corrected from a.
15388. is added above the line.—owt, o corrected from a.
15394. MS. tyme this tyme, the former tyme crossed out.
Sire, blameth me not of my Servyse,
For 3owre name knowe j not jn non wyse,
but oþer name of 3ow knowe j non,
and 3if that j dede, j wolde nehersen son.
nomore abasched be 3e of 3owre mete
thanne 3e ben 3owre armure to lete,
whiche was wel sene 3isterday
vppon the v. hundred jn þe valay,
From whom 3e reskewede my fadyr dere.
Sire, drynketh, j preye, & Maketh
good chere! "
he hym tornede anon gentylmanly wyse,
and seide: "damysele, graunt mercy of 3owre Servyse,
and graunt me grace, er that J dye,
thanne 3e gwerdoure to qwytten, as 3e ben worthye."
For What mown 3e more Don For me
thanne my fadir to reskewen from his Enyme?
what thorwgh 3ow & 3owre compenye
From preson 3e delinuered hym, treweleye,
and 3it more, sire Bachelor, dyden 3e
my fadyr, that whanne feld was he
aforn the 3ates of this towne,
Sone hym recouered with Renowne.
For 3e slowhen hym that him so bet,
that he lay ded there at his fet,
and putten 3owre-seluen jn aventure
of 3owre lyf, J 3ow ensure.
For so Sore 3e wrowhten jn that bataylle,
that alle they fledden, with-owten faylle."

In this maner spak this Maydyn 3yng
To that yönge bachelor, Artheur the kyng.
but non word he ne spak aȝeyn,
but took the cowpe & drank, certeyn,
and sethen that damysele to sitten commaundèd he,
that so longe to-forn hym kneled on hire kne;
Ban speaks with Leodegan about Gonnore. [CH. XIV.

For with alle reverence that he myhete do,
he wolde that Bacherel Servyd had be;
For his name knew he not, certeinle.

And whanne that the clothes J-drawn were,
and ik that they hadde waschen there,
thanne anon be-spak kyng Ban
To that kyng there, Leodagan.
thanne kyng Ban be-gan to spelle,
and to kyng leodagan he gan to telle:

"Sire, j me merveille mochel now, treweyle,
of on thyng that j se with myn eye,
and of 3ow, that ben so wys a man,
that 3oure dowhter Maryen 3e ne kan.
For sche hath age, wit, and discressiouen
to ben weddid to ony hygh man of renown,
that 3oure lond myhete helpe to defende,
Sethen god no mo children doth 3ow sende,
3oure eyr to ben aftyr 3oure day,
3oure lond to gouernen and hauen for ay."

"Now certis," seyde kyng Leodagan thoo,
"ne hadde pe ware pe j-ben, hit hadde be do ;
For hit ful sore hath greved me.
kynge of Yrland, Sykerle,
and of denmark also, the bolde,
thys vij 3er ware with me hath he holde,
and neuere j ne kan Bryngen hit to an ende.
for sethen but tyme non man hidir cam wende
to whom that j myhete my dowhter take
me to defenden, myn enemyes to wrake.
but so me god helpe, ful wytyrly : 
and ony worthy song bacherel fynden myhete j,
that jn armes were goode and Sure,
and that with travaylle he myhete endure
and my werres forto meynteyngne,
Swych on j wolde my dowhter hadde, certeyngne,
and al my Lound aftyr my decees,
that j myhte lyven jn rest & pes ;
al thowh he were of non hygh lynage,

15448. leo crossed out before Ban.
15454. telle, the first e corrected from an uncompleted h.
of hygnesse of Lordschepe, ne of gret parage. 15484  Could he have
and wolde god hit were now fullyche j-wrowht, his wish.
as that j now thynke in my thowht,
er that thre dayes fully don wende, the matter
that mater wolde j bryngen to an ende; would be
To ryht a fair long Bachelor; quickly
To hope the beste and p. worthiest settled
For j knowe ful wel, certeynly, with the best
that he is a mochel more heyghere man than j.’”
Anon toward kyng Bors loket merlyn than,
and to hym a signe sone make he be-gan
that for kyng Artheur spak he tho;
And certeynly so gan he do. 15492  Merlin gives
[leaf 116d]  Then they
where-offen Sory was Leodegan the kyng, begin to talk
that he ne spak no more of that matere; of other
Neper of whens they weren, cowde he not lere.
And xere he beheld with herte wel sadde
to what joye he sowdeours of Artheur made,
which that maden hym to smerte
and forto ben ryht hevy in herte.
For so worthy men these xlij Sowdiours were,
but abouen hem alle Artheur hadde most chere.
wherfore the kynges dowhter dame gonnore
Fulsore hire lone on hym caste thore,
and desired in herte ful pryvyle,
to hym j-weddid that sche myhte be
aboven alle tho that xere sche say;
thus this storye reherseth in fay.
Furthermore telleth hit this storye
that the fairest & wysest sche was, ytterlye,
of alle the ladies of Bloye bretaygne
and best beloved, in certeygne,
the fairest, the bryhtest of al that loud
Sauf Elayne Saus pere, j vudirstonde,
whiche was Percyes wif of pe Rous,
and sche p. dowhtyr of kyng Pellous,
15500  of the king
15504  Gonnore is
greatly in
love with
Arthur.
15512  In beauty,
wisdom, and
popularity,
15516  she is sur-
passed only
by Elaine.
15520  daughter of
king Pellous.
15512. thus corrected from this.
Merlin tells what has happened

and aftyr was sche wyf to kyng Alayn, that hurt was with þe veniable spere, certayn. 
Ek this Pellenors, that pellous calle[n] we, 
thorwgh bothe thyes j-maymed was he, 
as the seint Graal schal maken mynde, 
lyk as here-aftyr jn this storie scholen 3e fynde.

This mayden, of whiche 3e vndistond, 
was the fairest thorwh-owt ony Lond. 
Now seen we now of this matere, 
and til eftsones non more to speke þerof here, 
tyl that thaventuris of seint Graal 
holy discuren hit Somme an al. 
and spoken we forth of this meyne oure fille, 
that jn kyng leodagannes court abyden style.

ryaly at here Soper weren they dyht, 
as hit belongede to men of myht. 

And whanne that the tables j-drawen were, 
the thre kynges on syde merlyn took there, 
and openly he seide there to hem alle:
“wilen 3e now heren what is jn breteyne befalle?”
“þe certes,” quod kyng Artheur tho,
“that wolde ð weten, er that 3 go.”
“wile ðe weten,” quod merlyn, “with-owten fayle,
afore Londone hath ben ful gret Bataylle
agens the hethene, that there j-entríd Js 
and þat lond dispoillid han & robbed, J-wys,
So that with the pray that they hadden take,
Towardis douer here wyte gonne they make
into the ost to leden that cariage
with ten thousand men of gret parage.
thanne so hit behapped jn that tyde,
that ðyve of thy nevews comen þere Ryde,
thanjne how these forreyeris that they mette,
j schal jow tellen, with-owten ony lettre.

15529. here crossed out after we.
The Society intends to complete, as soon as its funds will allow, the Reprints of its out-of-print Texts of the year 1866, and also of nos. 20, 26, and 33. Dr. Otto Glanning has undertaken Scintes Mariherste; and Hali Maedheah is in type. As the cost of these Reprints, if they were not needed, would have been devoted to fresh Texts, the Reprints will be sent to all Members in lieu of such Texts. Though called 'Reprints,' these books are new editions, generally with valuable additions, a fact not noticed by a few careless receivers of them, who have complained that they already had the volumes.

A gratifying gift is to be made to the Society. The American owner of the unique MS. of the Works of John Metham,—whose Romance of Amoryus and Cleopas was sketched by Dr. Furnival in his new edition of Political, Religious and Love Poems, No. 15 in the Society's Original Series—has promised to give the Society an edition of his MS. prepared by Dr. Hardin Craig of Princeton, and it will be issued next year as No. 132 of the Original Series. The giver hopes that his example may be followed by other folk, as the support hitherto given to the Society is so far below that which it deserves.

The Original Series Texts for 1910 were No. 139, John Ardenne's Treatises on Fistula in Ana, &c., edited by D'Arey Power, M.D., English about 1425 from the Latin of about 1380 A.D.; No. 140, Capgrave's Lives of St. Augustine and St. Gilbert of Sempringham, A.D. 1451, edited by John Munro.

The Original Series Texts for 1911 were, No. 141, Earth upon Earth, all the known texts, edited by Miss Hilda Murray, M.A.; No. 142, The English Register of Goldstone Nunnyry, Part III, containing Forewords, Grammar Notes and Indexes, edited by Dr. Andrew Clark; and No. 143, The Warrs of Alexander, edited from the Thornton MS. by J. S. Westlake, M.A. (still at press).

The Original Series Texts for 1912 were, No. 144, The English Register of Osney Abbey, by Oxford, Part II, containing Forewords, Grammar, Notes and Indexes, edited by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark, and No. 145, The Northern Passion, Part I, containing the four parallel texts of the poem, with variants from other manuscripts, edited by Miss Frances A. Foster.

Mr. John Munro has at press a revised and enlarged edition of Original Series, No. 26, the shorter pieces from the Thornton Manuscript, originally edited by the Rev. G. G. Perry, and this will be sent out to all subscribers to the Original Series for 1913. A revised edition of Dr. MacCracken's Minor Poems of Lydgate, Part I, will be issued to subscribers of 1910.

The Texts for future years will be chosen from Part III of The Brut; Part III of the Alphabet of Tales, edited by Mrs. M. M. Banks; Part II of Mr. A. O. Belfour's Twelfth Century Homilies; and Part IV of Miss Dornier Harris's Coventry Leet Book. Later Texts will be Part I of Robert of Brunne's Handlyng Smyne, with a Glossary of Wm. of Waddington's French words in his Manuel des Pechis, and comments on them, by Mr. Dickson Brown; Part II of the Exeter Book—Anglo-Saxon Poems from the unique MS. in Exeter Cathedral—re-edited by Professor Gollance; Part II of Prof. Dr. Holthausen's Vice and Virtues; Part II of Jacob's Well, edited by Dr. Brandeis; the Alliterative Siege of Jerusalem, edited by the late Prof. Dr. E. Kolbing and Prof. Dr. Kaluza; an Introduction and Glossary to the Minor Poems of the Vernon MS. by H. Hartley, M.A.; Alain Chartier's Quadrilogue, edited from the unique MS. Univ. Coll. Oxford No. 85, by Prof. J. W. H. Atkins; and the Early Verse and Prose in the Harleian MS. 2253, re-edited by Miss Hilda Murray. Canon Wordsworth of Marlborough having given the Society a copy of the Legfric Canonical Rule, Latin and Anglo-Saxon, Parker MS. 191, C. C. Cambridge, Prof. Napier will edit it, with a fragment of the englisht Capitula of Bp. Theodulf: it is now at press.

The Extra Series Texts for 1910 were No. CVI, Lydgate's Troy Book, Part III, containing Books IV and V, completing the text, edited by Hy. Bergen, Ph.D.; and No. CVII, Lydgate's Minor Poems, Part I, Religious Poems, with the Lydgate Canon, edited by H. N. MacCracken, Ph.D.

The Extra Series Texts for 1911 were, No. CVIII, Lydgate's Siege of Thebes, Part I, the text, edited from the MSS. by Dr. A. Erkinn; and No. CIX, Partonope, Part I, edited from its 3 MSS. by Dr. A. T. Boötker.

The Extra Series Texts for 1912 were, No. CX, Caxton's Mirror of the World, edited with reproductions of all the woodcuts, by Dr. O. H. Prior, M.A., and No. CXI, Caxton's History of Jason, Part I, the text, edited by Mr. John Munro (both at press).

Future Extra Series Texts will be Lydgate's Minor Poems, Part II, Secular Poems, ed. by Dr. H. N. MacCracken; Lydgate's Troy Book, Part IV, edited by Dr. Hy. Bergen; De Medicina, re-edited by Prof. Delcourt; Lancelot's Romance of Merlin, re-edited by Prof. E. A. Kock, Part II; Miss Eleanor Plummer's re-edition of Sir Goether and Sir Perceval; Miss K. B. Lecock's re-edition of Hylton's Ladder of Perfection; Miss Warren's two-text
edition of The Dance of Death from the Ellesmere and other MSS.; The Owl and Nightingale, two parallel Texts, edited by Mr. G. F. H. Sykes; Dr. Erbe's re-edition of Mick's Festival, Part II; Dr. M. Kounatz's re-edition of William of Shoreham's Poems, Part II; Professor Gallance's re-edition of two Alliterative Poems, Winner and Waster, &c.; about 1360; Dr. Norman Moore's re-edition of The Book of the Foundation of St. Bartholomew's Hospital, London, from the unique MS. about 1425, which gives an account of the Founder, Kahere, and the miraculous cures wrought at the Hospital; The Craft of Nowbruyne, with other of the earliest English Treatise on Arithmetic, edited by R. Steele, B.A.; and the Second Part of the prose Romance of Melusine—Introduction, with ten facsimiles of the best woodblocks of the old foreign black-letter editions, Glossary, &c., by A. K. Donald, B.A.

Later Texts for the Extra Series will include The Three Kings' Son, Part II, the Introduction, &c., by Prof. Dr. Leon Kellner; Part II of The Chester Plays, re-edited from the MSS., with a full collation of the formerly missing Devonshire MS., by Mr. G. England and Dr. Matthews; Prof. Jespersen's editions of John Hart's Orthographie (MS. 1551 A.D.; black-letter 1659), and Method to teach Reading, 1570; Deguilleville's Pilgrimage of the Soule, in English prose, edited by Mr. Hans Koenstner. (For the three prose versions of The Pilgrimage of the Life of Man—two English, one French—an Editor is wanted.) Members are asked to realise the fact that the Society has now 50 years' work on its Lists,—at its present rate of production,—and that there is from 100 to 200 more years' work to come after that. The year 2000 will not see finished all the Texts that the Society ought to print. The need of more Members and money is pressing. Offers of help from willing Editors have continually to be declined because the Society has no funds to print their Texts.

Before his death in 1895, Mr. G. N. Currie was preparing an edition of the 15th and 16th century Prose Versions of Guillaume de Deguileville's Pilgrimage of the Life of Man, with the French prose version by Jean Gallopes, from Lord Aldenham's MS., he having generously promised to pay the extra cost of printing the French text, and engraving one or two of the illuminations in his MS. But Mr. Currie, when on his deathbed, charged a friend to burn all his MSS. which lay in a corner of his room, and unluckily all the E. E. T. S.'s copies of the Deguilleville prose versions were with them, and were burnt with them, so that the Society will be put to the cost of fresh copies.

Guillaume de Deguileville, monk of the Cistercian abbey of Chaalis, in the diocese of Senlis, wrote his first verse Pelerinage de l'Homme in 1330-1 when he was 36. 1 Twenty-five (or six) years after, in 1355, he revised his poem, and issued a second version of it, 2 a revision of which was printed ab. 1500. Of the prose representative of the first version, 1330 1, a prose Englishing about 1430 A.D., was edited by Mr. Aldis Wright for the Roxburghe Club in 1869, from MS. Ff. 5. 30 in the Cambridge University Library. Other copies of this prose English are in the Hunterian Museum, Glasgow, Q. 2. 25; Sion College, London; and the Land Collection in the Bodleian, no. 740. 3 A copy in the Northern dialect is MS. G. 21, in St. John's Coll., Cambridge, and this is the MS. which will be edited for the E. E. Text Society. The Land MS. 740 was somewhat coarser and more modernised, in the 17th century, into MS. Ff. 6. 30, in the Cambridge University Library: "The Pilgrime or the Pilgrimage of Man in this World," copied by Will. Baspoole, whose copy "was verbatim written by Walter Parker, 1645, and from thence transcribed by G. G. 1649; and from thence by W. A. 1655." This last copy may have been read by, or its story reported to, Bunyan, and may have been the groundwork of his Pilgrim's Progress. It will be edited for the E. E. T. Soc., its text running under the earlier English, as in Mr. Herbage's edition of the Gesta Romanorum for the Society; in February 1648, Jean Gallopes—a clerk of Angers, afterwards chaplain to John, Duke of Bedford, Regent of France—added Deguilleville's first verse Pelerinage into a prose Pelerinage de la vie humaine. 5 By the kindness of Lord Aldenham, as above mentioned, Gallopes' French text will be printed opposite the early prose northern Englishing in the Society's edition.

The Second Version of Deguileville's Pilgrimage de l'Homme, A.D. 1555 or -6, was English in verse by Lydgate in 1426, and, thanks to the diligence of the old Elizabethan tailor and manuscript-lover, J. H. Stowe, a complete text of Lydgate's poem has been edited for the Society by Dr. Furnivall. The British Museum French MSS. (Harleian 4399, 7 and Additional 22,937 8 and 25,594 9) are all of the First Version.

1 He was born about 1295. See Abbé Gouyer's Bibliothèque française, Vol. IX, p. 73-4.—P. M. The Roxburghe Club printed the 1st version in 1893.
2 The Roxburghe Club's copy of this 2nd version was lent to Mr. Currie, and unluckily burnt too with his other MSS.
3 These 3 MSS. have not yet been collated, but are believed to be all of the same version.
4 Another MS. is in the Pepys Library
5 According to Lord Aldenham's MS.
6 These were printed in France, late in the 15th or early in the 16th century.
7 15th cent., containing only the Vie humaine.
8 16th cent., containing all the 3 Pilgrimages, the 3rd being Jesus Christ's.
9 14th cent., containing the Vie humaine and the 2nd Pilgrimage, de l'Ame; both incomplete.

Besides his first *Pelerinaige de l'homme* in its two versions, Duguilleville wrote a second, "de l'ame separate du corps," and a third, "de nostre seigneur Jesus." Of the second, a prose Englishing of 1413, *The Pilgrimage of the Soleile* (with poems, by Hoccleve, already printed for the Society with that author's *Regement of Prince*), exists in the Egerton MS. 615,1 at Hatfield, Cambridge (Univ. Kk. 1, 7, and Caini), Oxford (Univ. Coll. and Corpus), and in Caxton's edition of 1483. This version has 'somewhat of addicions' as Caxton says, and some shortenings too, as the maker of both, the first translator, tells us in the MSS. Caxton leaves out the earlier Englishier's interesting Epilogue in the Egerton MS. This prose englishing of the *Soleile* has been copied and will be edited for the Society by Mr. Hans Koestner. Of the Pilgrimage of Jesus, no englingis is known.

Members are reminded that *fresh Subscribers are always wanted*, and that the Committee can at any time, on short notice, send to press an additional Thousand Pounds' worth of work.

The Subscribers to the Original Series must be prepared for the issue of the whole of the Early English *Lives of Saints*, sooner or later. The Standard Collection of Saints' Lives in the Corpus and Ashmole MSS., the Harleian MS. 2277, &c., will repeat the Land set, our No. 87, with additions, and in right order. (The foundation MS. (Laud 108) had to be printed first, to prevent quite unwieldy collations.) The Supplementary Lives from the Vernon and other MSS. will form one or two separate volumes.

Besides the Saints' Lives, Trevisa's englishing of *Bartholomaeus de Proprietatibus Rerum*, the medieval *Cyclopedia of Science*, &c., will be the Society's next big undertaking. Prof. Napier of Oxford, wishing to have the whole of our MS. Anglo-Saxon in type, and accessible to students, will edit for the Society all the unprinted and other Anglo-Saxon Homilies which are not included in Thorpe's edition of *Elfric's prose*,2 Dr. Morris's of the *Blickling Homilies*, and Prof. Skeat's of *Elfric's Metrical Homilies*. The late Prof. Kölling left complete his text, for the Society, of the *Ancren Riwle*, from the best MS., with collations of the other four, and this will be edited for the Society by Dr. Thümmler. Mr. Harvey means to prepare an edition of the three MSS. of the *Earliest English Metrical Psalter*, one of which was edited by the late Mr. Stevenson for the Surtees Society.

Members of the Society will learn with pleasure that its example has been followed, not only by the Old French Text Society, which has done such admirable work under its founders Profs. Paul Meyer and Gaston Paris, but also by the Early Russian Text Society, which was set on foot in 1877, and has since issued many excellent editions of old MS. Chronicles, &c.

Members will also note with pleasure the annexation of large tracts of our Early English territory by the important German contingent, the late Professors Zupitza and Kolbing, the living Haukehnecht, Einenkel, Haenisch, Kalina, Hupe, Adam, Holthansen, Schick, Herzfeld, Brandes, Sieper, Konrath, Wülfing, &c. Scandinavia has also sent us Prof. Erdmann and Dr. E. A. Kock; Holland, Prof. H. Logeman, who is now working in Belgium; France, Prof. Paul Meyer—with Gaston Paris as adviser ( alas, now dead);—Italy, Prof. Latulpié; Austria, Dr. von Fleischhacker; while America is represented by the late Prof. Child, by Dr. Mary Noyes Colvin, Miss Rickert, Profs. Mead, McKnight, Triggs, Hulme, Bryce, Craig, Drs. Bergen, MacCracken, &c. The sympathy, the ready help, which the Society's work has cald forth from the Continent and the United States, have been among the pleasantest experiences of the Society's life, a real aid and cheer amid all troubles and discouragements. All our Members are grateful for it, and recognise that the bond their work has woven between them and the lovers of language and antiquity across the seas is one of the most welcome results of the Society's efforts.

---

**ORIGINAL SERIES.** (One guinea each year.)

1. Early English Alliterative Poems, ab. 1300 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 16s. 1864
4. Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight, ab. 1360, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s.
5. Hume's Orthographie and Congruitie of the Britan Tongue, ab. 1617, ed. H. B. Wheatley. 4s. 1865
7. Genesis & Exodus, ab. 1250, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 8s.
8. Morte Arthure, ab. 1410, ed. E. Brock. 7s.
9. Thynne on Speght's ed. of Chaucer, A.D. 1599, ed. Dr. G. Kingsley and Dr. F. J. Furnivall. 10s.
10. Merlin, ab. 1410, Part I, ed. H. B. Wheatley. 2s. 6d.

1 Ab. 1430, 106 leaves (leaf 1 of text wanting), with illuminations of nice little devils—red, green, tawny, &c.—and damnd souls, fires, angels, &c.
2 Of these, Mr. Harley is preparing a new edition, with collations of all the MSS. Many copies of Thorpe's book, not issued by the *Elfric Society*, are still in stock.

Of the Vercelli Homilies, the Society has bought the copy made by Prof. G. Lattanzi.
12. Wright's Chaste Wife, ab. 1462, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 1s.
15. Political, Religious, and Love Poems, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 7s. 6d.
16. The Book of Quinte Essence, ab. 1460-70, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 1s.
17. Parallel Extracts from 45 MSS. of Piers the Plowman, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 1s.
19. Lyndesay's Monarch, &c., Part II., ed. J. Small, M.A. 3s. 6d.
22. Partenay or Lysigyn, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 6s.
23. Dan Michele's Aye abite of Invyly, 1340, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s. 6d.
24. Hymns to the Virgin and Christ; the Parliament of Devils, &c., ab. 1430, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 3s.
25. The Staciones of Rome, the Pilgrims' Sea-voyage, with Clene Maydenhod, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 1s.
29. Old English Homilies (ab. 1220-50 A.D.), Series I, Part I. Edited by Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 7s. 6d.
30. Pierce the Ploughman's Crede, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 2s.
31. Myre's Duties of a Parish Priest, in Verse, ab. 1420 A.D., ed. E. Paceock. 4s. 1868
32. Early English Meters and Manners: the Boke of Norton of John Russell, the Boke of Keruyng.
Curtesy, and Desease, the Babees Book, Urbanitatis, &c., ed. F. J. Furnivall. 12s.
33. The Knight de la Tour Landry, ab. 1440 A.D. A Book for Daughters, ed. T. Wright, M.A. (Reprinting.
34. Old English Homilies (before 1300 A.D.), Series I, Part II., ed. R. Morris, LL.D. 8s.
35. Lyndesay's Works, Part III.; The Historie and Testament of Squyer Meldrum, ed. F. Hall. 2s.
40. English Gilds, their Statutes and Customs, 1389 A.D. Ed. Toulmin Smith and Lucy T. Smith, with an Essay on Gilds and Trades-Unions, by Dr. L. Brentano. 21s. 1870
42. Bernardus De Curia Rei Famiiliaris, Early Scottish Prophecies, &c., Ed. J. R. Lumby, M.A. 2s.
44. The Alliterative Romance of Joseph of Arimathie, or The Holy Grail: from the Vernon MS.;
45. King Alfred's West-Saxon Version of Gregory's Pastoral Care, edited from 2 MSS., with an
46. Legends of the Holy Rood, Symbols of the Passion and Cross Poems, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s.
47. Sir David Lyndesay's Works, Part V., ed. Dr. J. A. H. Murray. 3s.
48. The Times' Whistle, and other Poems, by R. C., 1616; ed. by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 6s.
49. An Old English Miscellany, containing a Bestiary, Kentish Sermons, Proverbs of Alfred, and
Religious Poems of the 13th cent., ed. from the MSS, by the Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. 10s.
53. Old-English Homilies, Series II., and three Hymns to the Virgin and God, 13th-century,
with the music to two of them, in old and modern notation; ed. Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. 8s.
54. The Vision of Piers Plowman, Text C: Richard the Redeleys (by William, the author of the Vision)
55. Generydes, a Romance, ab. 1440 A.D., ed. W. Aldis Wright, M.A. Part I. 3s.
56. The Gest Hystorial of the Destruction of Troy, in alliterative verse; ed. by D. Donaldson, Esq.,
and the late Rev. G. A. Panton. Part II. 10s. 6d.
57. The Early English Version of the "Cursor Mundi"); in four Texts, edited by the Rev. R. Morris,
M.A., LL.D. Part I, with 2 photolitographic facsimiles. 10s. 6d.
59. The "Cursor Mundi" in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris Part II. 15s.
60. Meditacuns on the Soper of our Lorde (by Robert de Brunne), edited by J. M. Cowper. 2s.
61. The Romance and Prophecies of Thomas of Erceldoun, from 5 MSS.; ed. Dr. J. A. H. Murray. 16s. 6d.
63. The Bloking Homilies, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part II. 7s.
64. Francis Thynne's Emblemes and Epigrams, A.D. 1600, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 7s.
66. The "Cursor Mundi," in 4 Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part IV., with 2 autotypes. 10s.
69. Adam Davie's 5 Dreams about Edward II., &c., ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 5s.
70. Generydes, a Romance, ed. W. Aldis Wright, M.A. Part II. 4s.
73. The Blokincg Homilies, 971 a.d., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Moriss, Part III. 10a. 1880
75. Catholicon Anglicum, an early English Dictionary, from Lord Monson’s MS. a.d. 1453, ed., with
  Introduction & Notes, by S. J. Hertrage, B.A. ; and with a Preface by H. B. Wheatley. 20a.
77. Beowulf, the unique MS. autotyped and transilluminated, edited by Prof. Zupitza, Ph. D. 25a.
78. The Fifty Earlist English Wills, in the Court of Probate, 1387-1439, ed. by F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 7a.
80. The Early English Life of St. Katherine and its Latin Original, ed. Dr. Einenkel. 12a.
84. Additional Anologos to ‘The Wright’s Chaste Wife,’ No. 12, by W. A. Clouston. 1a.
85. The Three Kings of Cologne, 2 English Texts, and 1 Latin, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 17a.
86. Prose Lives of Women Saints, ab. 1610 a.d., ed. from the unique MS. by Dr. C. Horstmann. 19a.
87. Early English Verse Lives of Saints (earliest version), Laud MS. 106, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 20a.
90. Anglo-Saxon and Latin Title of St. Benet, interlinear Glosses, ed. Dr. H. Logeman. 12a.
91. Two Fifteenth-Century Cookery-Books, ab. 1430-1450, edited by Mr. T. Austin. 10a.
95. The Old-English version of Bede’s Ecclesiastical History, re-ed. by Dr. Thomas Miller. Part I, § 1. 18a.
96. The Old-English version of Bede’s Ecclesiastical History, re-ed. by Dr. Thomas Miller. Pt. I, § 2. 15a.
100. Capgraves’s Life of St. Katharine, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann, with Forewords by Dr. Furnivall. 20a.
101. Cursor Mundi. Part VII. Essay on the MSS., their Dialects, &c., by Dr. H. Huyse. 1894
103. The Legend of the Cross, from a 12th century MS., &c., ed. Prof. A. S. Napier, M.A., Ph.D. 7a. 6d.
110. The Old-English Version of Bede’s Ecclesiastical History, ed. Dr. T. Miller. Part II, § 1. 15a.
111. The Old-English Version of Bede’s Ecclesiastical History, ed. Dr. T. Miller, Part II, § 2. 15a.
115. Jacob’s Well, edited from the unique Salisbury Cathedral MS. by Dr. A. Brandeis. Part I. 10a.
116. An Old-English Martyrology, re-edited by Dr. G. Herrfeld. 10a.
118. The Lay Folks’ Catechism, ed. by Canon Simmons and Rev. H. E. Nolleth, M.A. 5a.
119. Robert of Brunne’s Handlyng Synne (1393), and its French original, re-ed. by Dr. Furnivall, Pt. I. 10a.
120. The Rule of St. Benet, in Northern Prose and Verse, & Caution’s Summary, ed. Dr. E. A. Kock. 15a. 1902
122. The Laud MS. Troy-Book, from the unique Laud MS. 555, by Dr. J. E. Willing. Part II. 20a.
123. Robert of Brunne’s Handlyng Synne (1393), and its French original, re-ed, by Dr. Furnivall, Pt. II. 10a.
129. The English Register of Godstow Nunnery, ed. from the MSS. by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. Pt. I. 10a.
130. The English Register of Godstow Nunnery, ed. from the MSS. by the Rev. Dr. A. Clark. Pt. II. 15a.
132. John Metham’s Works, edited from the unique MS. by Dr. Hardin Cruig. 14a.
135. The Coventry Leet Book, edited from the unique MS. by Miss M. Durner Harris. Part II. 15a.
135b. Extra Issue. Prof. Manly’s Fiers Plowman & its Sequence, urging the fivefold authorship of the Vision.
The Extra Series of the "Early English Text Society."

The Publications for 1867-1910 (one guinea each year) are:


II. Early English Pronunciation with especial Reference to Shakspere and Chaucer, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part I. 10s. 1868

111. Caxton's Book of Curtesye, in Three Versions. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 5s. 1869


V. Chaucer's Boethius. Edited from the two best MSS. by Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 12s. 1871

VI. Cheveiere Assigne. Re-edited from the unique MS. by Lord Aldenham, M.A. 3s. 1872

VII. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part II. 10s. 1873

VIII. Queen Elizabeth's Achievement, ed. F. J. Furnivall. Essays on early Italian and German Books ofCourtesy, by W. M. Rossetti and Dr. E. Oswald. 13s. 1874

IX. Awdeley's Fraternity of Vacabondes, Harman's Cleave, &c. Ed. E. Viles & F. J. Furnivall. 5s. 1875

X. Andrew Boorde's Introduction of Knowledge, 1547, Dyctayre of Helth, 1542, Barnes in Defence of the Bare, 1542-5, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 18s. 1876

XI. Barbour's Bruce, Part I. Ed. from MSS. and editions, by Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 12s. 1877


XIII. A Supplication by the Beggers, by Simmon Fish, 1528-9 A.D., ed. F. J. Furnivall; with A Suppllication to our Most Soueraigne Lorde; A Supplication of the Poore Commons; and The Decaye of England by the Great Multitude of Sheep, ed. by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 6s. 1879

XIV. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Part III. 10s. 1880


XVII. The Complaynt of Scotlant, 1549 A.D., with 4 Tracts (1542-48), ed. Dr. Murray. Part I. 10s. 1883

XVIII. The Complaynt of Scotlant, 1549 A.D., ed. Dr. Murray. Part II. 8s. 1884

XIX. Our Ladies Myroure, A.D. 1530, ed. Rev. J. H. Blunt, M.A. 24s. 1885


XXI. Barbour's Bruce, Part II., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 4s. 1887

XXII. Henry Brinklow's Complaint of Roedergyk Mow (ab 1542): and The Lamentation of a Christian against the City of London, made by Roderigo Mow, A.D. 1545, ed. J. M. Cowper, 9s. 1888

XXXI. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part IV. 10s. 1889

XXIV. Lovelish's History of the Holy Grail, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part II. 10s. 1890


XXVI. Guy of Warwick, 15th-century Version, ed. Prof. Zipitza. Part II. 14s. 1892

XXVII. The English Works (died 1533), ed. by Prof. J. E. B. Mayor. Part I., the Text. 16s. 1893

XXVIII. Lovelish's Holy Grail, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part III. 8s. 1894


XXX. Lovelish's Holy Grail, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part IV. 18s. 1896

XXXI. The Alliterative Romance of Alexander and Dindimus, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 6s. 1897

XXXII. Starkey's "England in Henry VIII's time," Pt. I. Starkey's Life and Letters, ed. S. J. Herritage. 8s. 1898

XXXIII. Gesta Romanorum (english ab 1440), ed. S. J. Herritage, B.A. 15s. 1899

XXXIV. The Charlemagne Romances:—I. Sir Ferumbras. from Ashun, MS. 33, ed. J. Herritage. 15s. 1899

XXXV. Charlemagne Romances:—2. The Siege of Melayne, Sir Otuell, &c., ed. S. J. Herritage. 12s. 1899

XXXVI. Charlemagne Romances:—3. Lyf of Charles the Grete, Pt. I., ed. S. J. Herritage. 16s. 1899

XXXVII. Charlemagne Romances:—4. Lyf of Charles the Grete, Pt. II., ed. S. J. Herritage. 15s. 1899

XXXVIII. Charlemagne Romances:—5. The Sowde of Babylone, ed. Dr. Hauskinecht. 15s. 1899

XXXIX. Charlemagne Romances:—6. Rauf Coley, Roland, Othuel, &c., ed. S. J. Herritage, B.A. 15s. 1899

EARLY ENGLISH TEXTS PREPARING.

Besides the Texts named as at press on p. 12 of the Early English Text Society's last Announcements, the following Texts are also slowly preparing for the Society:—

ORIGINAL SERIES.

The Earliest English Prose Psalter, ed. Dr. K. D. Buelbring. Part II.
The Earliest English Verse Psalter, 3 texts, ed. Rev. R. Harvey, M.A.
Anglo-Saxon Poems, from the Vercelli MS., re-edited by Prof. I. Gollancz, M.A.
Anglo-Saxon Glosses to Latin Prayers and Hymns, edited by Dr. F. Holthansen.
All the Anglo-Saxon Homilies and Lives of Saints not accessible in English editions, including those of the Vercelli MS. &c., edited by Prof. Napier, M.A., Ph.D. *
The English Disciplina Clericalis, Worcester Cathedral MS. 172, ed. Prof. W. H. Hulme, Ph.D.
The Statutes of Black Roger, Worcester Cathedral MS. 172, ed. Prof. W. H. Hulme, Ph.D.
The Anglo-Saxon Psalms; all the MSS. in Parallel Texts, ed. Dr. H. Looman and F. Halsley, B.A.
Beowulf, a critical Text, &c., edited by a pupil of the late Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D.
Byrhtferth's Handebo, ed. by Prof. G. Hempl.
Early English Confessionals, ed. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.
The Seven Sages, in the Northern Dialect, from a Cotton MS., edited by Dr. Squires.
The Master of the Game, a Book of Huntynge for Hen. V. when Prince of Wales, ed. G. A. Beacock, B.A.
Ailred's Rule of Nuns, &c., edited from the Vernon MS., by the Rev. Canon H. R. Bramley, M.A.
A Lapidary, from Lord Tollemanche's MS., &c., edited by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.
Early English Deeds and Documents, from unique MSS., ed. Dr. Lorenz Morschach.
Gilbert Banastre's Poems, and other Occasional Englishing, ed. by Prof. Dr. Max Förster.
Lafranc's Cirurgie, ab. 1400 A.D., ed. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker, Part II.
William of Nassington's Mirror of Life, from Jn. of Waldby, edited by J. A. Herbert, M.A.
Alliterative Prophecies, edited from the MSS. by Prof. Brandl, Ph.D.
Miscellaneous Alliterative Poems, edited from the MSS. by Dr. L. Morschach.
Bird and Beast Poems, a collection from MSS., edited by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
Nicholas Trivet's French Chronicle, from Sir A. Acland-Hood's unique MS., ed. by F. W. Clarke, M.A.
Early English Homilies in Harl. 2256, &c., c. 1400, ed. J. Friedländer.
Extracts from the Registers of Boughton, ed. Hy. Littlehales, Esq.
The Pore Catif, edited from its MSS., by Mr. Peake.
Trevisa's English Vegetius on the Art of War, MS. 30 Magd. Coll. Oxf., ed. L. C. Wharton, M.A.
Poems attributed to Richard Maydeustone, from MS. Rawl. A 388, edited by Dr. W. Heuser.
Knighthood and Battle, a verse-Vegetius from a Pembroke Coll. MS., Camb., ed. Dr. R. Dyboski.
Othea and Hector, 3 texts—2 from MSS., 1 from Wyer's print, edited by Hy. N. MacCucken, Ph.D.
Minor Poems of the Vernon MS. Part III. Introduction and Glossary by H. Hartley, M.A.
Prayers and Devotions, from the unique MS. Cotton Tittus C. 19, ed. Hy. Littlehales Esq. [Copied.

EXTRA SERIES.

Sir Tristrem, edited from the unique Auchinleck MS., edited by George F. Black.
De Guillelville's Pilgrimage of the Sowie, edited by Mr. Hans Roestert.
Vicary's Anatomie, 1548, edited by F. J. & Percy Furnivall, Part II.
William S.anton's St. Patrick's Purgatory, &c., ed. Mr. G. P. Krapp, U.S.A.
Trevisa's Bartholomaeus de Proprietatibus Reorum, re-edited by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.
Bullen's Dialogue against the Feuer Pestilene, 1564, 1573, 1574. Ed. A. II. and M. Bullen. Part II.
Tae Romance of Buctus and Sidrac, edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
The Romance of Gloriados, and Sir Amadas, re-edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
Sir Degrevant, edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. Luick.
Robert of Brunne's Chronicle of England, from the Inner Tempie MS., ed. by Prof. W. E. Moud, Ph. D.
Maundeville's Voage and Travalie, re-edited from the Cotton MS. Tittus C. 16, &c. (Editor wanted.)
Awoyngwe of Arthur, re-edited from the unique Ireland MS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
Guy of Warwick, Gophand's version, edited by a pupil of the late Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D.
Awdelay's Poems, re-edited from the unique MS. Douce 302, by Prof. Dr. E. Wulfs."n.
The Wyse Clyde and other early Treatises on Education, Northwich School, Harl. 2099, &c., ed. G. Collar, B.A.
Caxton's Dictes and Sayengis of Philosophers, 1477, with Lord Tollemanche's MS. version, ed. S. I. Butler, Esq.
Lygade's Lyfe of oure Lady, ed. by Prof. Georg Fiedler, Ph.D.
Lygade's Life of St. Edmund. edited from the MSS. by Dr. Axel Erdmann.
Richard Coer de Lion, re-edited from Harl. MS. 4690, by Prof. Hausknecht, Ph.D.
The Romance of Athenelast, re-edited from a pupil of the late Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D.
Among the MSS. and old books which need copying or re-reading, are:

**ORIGINAL SERIES.**

- English Inventories and other MSS. in Canterbury Cathedral (5th Report, Hist. MSS. Com.).
- Maunmtrie, from Lord Tollemache’s MS.
- Biblical MS., Corpus Camb. 434 (ab. 1375).
- Hampole’s unprinted Works.
- Boethius de Consolatio, Pilgrim, 1146, &c., &c.
- Early Treatises on Music: Descent, the Gamme, &c.
- Skelton’s Englishing of Diodorus Siculus.
- Boethius, in prose, MS. Auct. P. 5, Bodley.
- Penitential Psalms, by R. Maydeweston, Brampton, &c. (Rawlinson, A. 359, Donne 323, &c.).
- Documents from the early Registers of the Bishops of all Dioceses in Great Britain.
- Ordinances and Documents of the City of Worcester.
- T. Breus’s Passion of Christ, 1422, Harl. 2338.
- Jn. Crophil or Crephill’s Tracts, Harl. 1775.
- Memoriale Credencium, &c., Harl. 2298.
- Early English Verse Lives of Saints, Standard Collection, from the Harl. MS.
- Early Norwich Wills.

**EXTRA SERIES.**

- Sir Eglinoure. Alexander.
- Orfeo Dicybe, 86.
- Dialogues between the Soul and Body.
- Barlaam and Josaphat.
- Amos and Amiloun.
- Sir Generics, from Lord Tollemache’s MS.
- The Troy-Book fragments once cited Harl. 389, in the Harl. Lib. Library and Donne MSS.
- Carols and Songs.
- Songs and Ballads, Ashmole MS.

The Subscription to the Society, which constitutes membership, is £1 1s. a year for the Original Series, and £1 Is. for the Extra Series, due in advance on the 1st of January, and should be paid by Cheque, Poste’s Order, or Money-Order, at the Union of London and Smiths Bank, to the Hon. Secretary, W. Caxton, Esq., 67, Victoria Road, Finchley Park, London. Members who want their Texts printed to them must add to their prepaid Subscriptions £1 for the Original Series, and Is. for the Extra Series, yearly. The Society’s Texts are also sold separately at the prices put after them in the Lists: but Members can get back-Texts at one-third less than the List-prices by sending the cash for them in advance to the Hon. Secretary.

Foreign Subscriptions can be paid, and the Society’s Texts delivered, through Asher & Co., 17, Bahrenbrasse, Bath.
The Publications for 1913 (one quarto) were:

CVIII. Lydgate's Siege of Thebes, re-edited from the MSS. by Prof. Dr. A. Erdmann. Part I, The Text. 15s.

CIX. Partonope, re-edited from its 3 MSS. by Dr. A. T. Bödiker. The Texts. 15s.

The Publications for 1912 (one quarto) were:

CX. Caxton's Mirror of the World, with all the Woodcuts, edited by O. H. Prior, M.A. 15s.


The Publications for 1913 (one quarto) were:

CXII. Love's Labour of Merlin, edited from the unique MS. by Prof. Dr. E. A. Kock. Part II. 15s.

CXIII. Poems by Sir John Salisbury, Robert Chester, and others, from Christ Church MS, 184, ed. by Dr. Carleton Brown. [At Press.]

The Publications for 1914 will be chosen from:

De Medicina, a 12th-century Englishing, re-ed. by Prof. Joseph Delcourt. [At Press.]


Lydgate's Troy Book, ed. by Dr. H. H. Burgess, Part IV, Introduction, Notes, &c. [At Press.]

Lydgate's Dance of Death, edited by the MSS. by Miss Florence Warren.

Lydgate's Siege of Thebes, re-edited from the MSS. by Prof. Dr. A. Erdmann. Part II, Notes, &c. [At Press.]

The Owl and Nightingale, 2 Texts parallel, ed. G. F. H. Sykes, Esq. [At Press.]

The Court of Sapience, once thought Lydgate's, ed. Dr. John Bruce. [At Press.]

Minstrelsy of the North, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. Elsb. Part II.

William of Shoreham's Poems, re-edited by Dr. M. Kourath. Part II.

Winner and Waster, &c., two Alliterative Poems, re-edited by Prof. I. Collance, Litt.D.

Melusine, the prose Romance, from the unique MS., ab. 1500, ed. A. K. Donald, B.A. Part II. [At Press.]

Secreta Secretorum: three prose Englishings, ab. 1440, ed. H. Steele, B.A. Part II. [At Press.]

The Chester Plays, Part II., re-edited by Dr. Matthews. [At Press.]

Lochfield His, ed. D. J. Furnivall; Introduction by Prof. E. C. K. Gomme. [Text done.]


The Three Kings' Sons, ed. Dr. E. L. Kellner. [At Press.]

The Ancien Rîvé, edited from its five MSS., by the late Prof. E. Kößling, Ph.D., and Dr. Thuillier.

Loveleigh's History of the Holy Grail, Part VI.

The Abbeville of Airhur, 2 Texts from the 3 MSS., edited by Wilhelm Wolff.

Caxton's Book of the Order of Chivalry, edited by Miss Alice H. Davies.

Early English Fabliaux, edited by Prof. George H. McKnight, Ph.D.


Piers Plowman, the A Text, re-edited from the MSS. by R. W. Chambers, M.A., Litt.D., and J. H. G. Grattan, M.A. [At Press.]

Caxton's Prolegomen, ed. by Henry Wheatley, Litt.D.